



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Kings

Version 62

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2022-06-27

Version: 62

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2022-06-27

Version: 37

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2022-06-27

Version: 36

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2022-06-06

Version: 2.1.25

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2022-06-06

Version: 0.25

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2022-06-27

Version: 29

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2022-06-27

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links

Date: 2022-06-27

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	11
2 Kings	11
Introduction to 2 Kings	12
2 Kings 1	14
2 Kings 2	35
2 Kings 3	61
2 Kings 4	92
2 Kings 5	137
2 Kings 6	168
2 Kings 7	205
2 Kings 8	228
2 Kings 9	261
2 Kings 10	305
2 Kings 11	345
2 Kings 12	375
2 Kings 13	402
2 Kings 14	428
2 Kings 15	464
2 Kings 16	508
2 Kings 17	537
2 Kings 18	579
2 Kings 19	619
2 Kings 20	657
2 Kings 21	679
2 Kings 22	706
2 Kings 23	730
2 Kings 24	776
2 Kings 25	797
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	828
Abstract Nouns	829
Active or Passive	831
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	834
Background Information	837
Biblical Distance	840
Biblical Money	843
Biblical Volume	845
Biblical Weight	849
Copy or Borrow Words	851
Direct and Indirect Quotations	853
Double Negatives	855
Doublet	858
Ellipsis	860
End of Story	863
Euphemism	865
First, Second or Third Person	867
Fractions	869
Hebrew Months	871
How to Translate Names	874

Hyperbole	878
Idiom	882
Introduction of a New Event	884
Irony	887
Merism	890
Metaphor	892
Metonymy	898
Numbers	900
Ordinal Numbers	903
Parallelism	906
Personification	909
Possession	911
Rhetorical Question	915
Simile	918
Symbolic Action	921
Synecdoche	923
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	925
abomination, abominable	926
Abraham, Abram	927
Adam	928
adversary, enemy	929
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	930
afflict, affliction, distress	931
Ahab	932
Ahaz	933
Ahaziah	934
Ahijah	935
altar	936
Amaziah	937
Amorite	938
Amoz	939
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	940
appoint, appointed	942
Arabah	943
Ararat	944
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of	945
Asaph	946
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	947
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	948
Athaliah	949
Baasha	950
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	951
barley	952
Bashan	953
Beersheba	954
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	955
Beth Shemesh	958
Bethel	959
bind, bond, bound	960
bless, blessed, blessing	961
blood	963
blot out, wipe out	965

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	966
bread	967
bridegroom	968
bronze	969
brother	970
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	971
burnt offering, offering by fire	972
bury, buried, burial	973
call, call out	974
camel	976
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	977
cedar, cedarwood	978
Chaldea, Chaldean	979
chariot, charioteers	980
cherub	981
chief, leader	982
children, child, offspring	983
clean, wash	985
column, pillar	987
command, commandment	988
confirm, confirmation, legal	989
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	990
consume, devour	991
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage,	992
court, courtyard	994
covenant	995
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	997
cry, cry out, outcry	998
curse, cursed, cursing	999
cut off, cut down	1001
David	1002
deceive, lie, deception, illusions	1003
declare, proclaim, announce	1004
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue	1005
descend, descendant	1006
destroy, destruction, annihilate	1007
devour	1008
die, dead, deadly, death	1009
donkey, mule	1011
drink offering	1012
earth, land	1013
Egypt, Egyptian	1014
elder, older, old	1015
Eliakim	1016
Elijah	1017
Elisha	1018
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1019
Ethiopia, Ethiopian	1020
Euphrates River, the River	1021
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1022
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1024
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1025

exile, exiled	1026
face, facial	1027
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	1029
famine	1031
favor, favorable, favoritism	1032
fear, afraid, frighten	1033
feast, feasting	1034
fig	1035
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1036
firstfruits	1037
flesh	1038
flock, herd	1039
forsake, forsaken, leave	1040
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	1041
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1043
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1044
Gilead, Gileadite	1045
Gilgal	1046
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt	1047
glean, gleanings	1048
God	1049
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1051
gold, golden	1053
good, right, pleasant, better, best	1054
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha	1056
grain offering	1057
grain, grainfields	1058
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1059
hand	1060
harvest, reap	1062
head	1063
heart	1064
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1065
Hebrew	1067
Hilkiah	1068
Hittite	1069
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1070
honey, honeycomb	1072
horse, warhorse, horseback	1073
horseman	1074
Hoshea	1075
house, household	1076
inherit, inheritance, heir	1078
iniquity	1080
innocent	1081
Isaiah	1082
Israel, Israelites	1083
Jacob, Israel	1085
Jehoiada	1086
Jehoiakim	1087
Jehoshaphat	1088
Jehu	1089

Jeremiah	1090
Jericho	1091
Jeroboam	1092
Jerusalem	1093
Jew, Jewish	1095
Jezebel	1096
Jonah	1097
Jordan River, Jordan	1098
Joshua	1099
Josiah	1100
Jotham	1101
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	1102
Judah	1104
Judea, Judah	1105
judge, judgment	1106
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1108
king, kingship	1110
kingdom	1112
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1114
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God	1116
Lebanon	1118
life, live, living, alive	1119
lord, Lord, master, sir	1121
messenger	1123
might, mighty, mighty works	1124
miracle, wonder, sign	1125
Mizpah	1127
Moab, Moabite	1128
Moses	1129
Naaman	1130
name	1131
Naphtali	1132
nation	1133
Nebuchadnezzar	1135
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1136
oil	1137
olive	1138
Omri	1139
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1140
oversee, overseer, keeper	1141
Passover	1142
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1144
people, people group	1145
perish	1147
Philistines	1148
pray, prayer	1149
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1150
priest, priesthood	1152
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials,	1154
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1155
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1157
prostrate, bow down, worship	1158

proud, pride, prideful	1159
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	1161
pure, purify, purification	1163
Ramah	1164
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1165
reign, rule	1166
remnant	1167
rest, rested, restless	1168
restore, restoration	1169
return, turn back	1170
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright,	1171
Rimmon	1173
robe, robed	1174
Sabbath	1175
sackcloth	1177
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1178
Samaria, Samaritan	1180
save, saved, safe, salvation	1181
scribe	1183
seed, semen	1184
seek, search, look for	1185
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	1186
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1189
sign, proof, reminder	1191
silver	1193
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1194
slaughter, slaughtered	1196
Solomon	1197
son	1198
spirit, wind, breath	1200
statute	1202
storehouse	1203
strength, strengthen, strong	1204
sword, swordsmen	1206
temple, house, house of God	1207
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	1209
thresh	1211
threshold, doorway	1212
throne, enthroned	1213
Tirzah	1214
tremble, stagger, shake	1215
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1216
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity	1217
true, truth	1218
trumpet, trumpeters	1220
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1221
unleavened bread	1222
Uriah	1223
vine	1224
vineyard	1225
virgin, virginity	1226
voice	1227

walk, walked	1228
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware	1229
wise, wisdom	1230
wrath, fury	1231
Yahweh	1232
Zadok	1234
Zechariah (OT)	1235
Zedekiah	1236
Zephaniah	1237
Zion, Mount Zion	1238
Contributors	1239
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1239
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1245
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1246
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1247
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1247
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors	1248



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Kings

Introduction to 2 Kings

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 2 Kings

The prophets Elijah and Elisha (1:1-8:15)

- Elijah brings Yahweh's judgment onto King Ahaziah (1:1–18)
- Elijah goes to heaven and Elisha replaces him (2:1–25)
- Elisha defends the northern kingdom against Moab (3:1–27)
- Elisha performs various miracles (4:1–44)
- Elisha heals Naaman the Syrian (5:1–27)
- Elisha acts in time of war against Syria (6:1–7:20)
- Elisha's reputation and prophecy about Hazael (8:1–15)

The history of Judah and Israel from Kings Jehoram and Joram to the fall of Israel (8:16–17:41)

The history of Judah from King Hezekiah to the fall of Judah (18:1–25:30)

What are the Books of 1 and 2 Kings about?

These books are about what happened to the people of Israel, from the time of King Solomon to the time both the northern and southern kingdoms were destroyed. These books describe how Israel split into two kingdoms after Solomon died. It also tells about all the kings that ruled over each kingdom after Solomon died.

In the southern kingdom, some kings did what Yahweh judged to be right. For example, King Josiah repaired the temple and reformed the worship of Yahweh. He responded to the high priest finding a copy of the Law of Yahweh in Jerusalem (2 Kings 22–23). However, all of the kings of the northern kingdom were wicked.

The Assyrians destroyed the northern kingdom in 722 B.C. The Babylonians destroyed the southern kingdom in 586 B.C.

How should the title of this book be translated?

The Books of 1 and 2 Kings were originally one book in Hebrew. They were separated into two books when translated into Greek. Translators might choose more meaningful titles such as “The First Book about the Kings” and “The Second Book about the Kings.”

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is the purpose of 1 and 2 Kings?

These books were probably finished during the exile, after the Babylonians had destroyed the temple. They show how being faithful to Yahweh results in his blessing and prospering his people. Worshipping idols and not being faithful result in their being punished and destroyed.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Why do the Books of 1 and 2 Kings refer to someone being addressed indirectly?

In the Bible, people often referred to themselves as “your servant” when speaking to anyone in a superior position to themselves. Indirectly addressing people in this way was intended to honor the one addressed. English sometimes uses the address “sir” in this way. But a translator should use whatever expressions that are natural in the project language in order to honor someone in a superior position.

What does the king “did what was right (or) evil in the eyes of Yahweh” mean?

The writer repeats this kind of expression throughout the Books of 1 and 2 Kings. Here “in the eyes of Yahweh” represents what Yahweh thinks about someone. If a king was faithful and obeyed the covenant, he did what was right according to Yahweh. If he was not faithful and disobeyed the covenant, he did what was evil according to Yahweh.

What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: [Israel, Israelites](#))

What does the phrase “to this day” mean?

This phrase was used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in 2 Kings 2:22; 8:22; 10:27; 14:7; 16:6; 17:23, 34, 41.

Can I translate 2 Kings before 1 Kings?

The Book of 1 Kings should be translated before 2 Kings, since 2 Kings continues from where 1 Kings ends.

2 Kings 1

2 Kings 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

2 Kings is a continuation of 1 Kings.

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's sovereignty

God is in control of the future. King Ahaziah sent messengers to ask the Philistine god if he would recover from his fall, but this god does not know the future. Because he asked another god instead of Yahweh, Elijah sent the messengers to tell Ahaziah that he would not recover. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

Elijah rebuked the king with a rhetorical question: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

2 Kings 1:1

Moab rebelled

Alternate translation: "The people who lived in Moab rebelled"

Translation Words - ULT

- Moab
- against Israel
- Ahab

Translation Words - UST

- King Ahab
- the country of Moab
- Israel

ULT

¹ Now Moab rebelled against Israel after the death of Ahab.

UST

¹ After King Ahab died, the country of Moab rebelled against Israel.

2 Kings 1:2

the lattice in his upper chamber

The upper room was built on the roof of the palace. The lattice was made of thin boards decoratively crossed over one another to form a balcony or window covering. Alternate translation: "the wooden boards around the flat roof of his palace" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Baal-Zebub

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaziah
- Then...fell
- messengers
- Go
- inquire
- the god of
- I will recover

Translation Words - UST

- One day, Ahaziah
- fell
- messengers
- Go
- and ask of
- the god of
- I will recover

ULT

² Then [Ahaziah fell](#) through the lattice in his upper chamber that was in Samaria, and he was injured. So he sent for [messengers](#) and he said to them, "[Go](#), [inquire](#) of Baal-Zebub, [the god of](#) Ekron, if [I will recover](#) from this injury."

UST

² [One day, Ahaziah](#), the new king of Israel, [fell](#) through the wooden slats in his upstairs room, in his palace in Samaria, and was injured. So he sent for his [messengers](#) and commanded them, "[Go and ask of](#) Baal-Zebub, [the god of](#) Ekron, whether or not [I will recover](#) from this injury."

2 Kings 1:3

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

the Tishbite

This refers to someone from the city of Tishbe. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This is irony because they are definitely aware of the God of Israel. Alternate translation: “You fools! You know there is a God in Israel, but you were acting as though you did not know when you sent men to consult Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

consult with Baal-Zebub

The word “consult” means to get the opinion of someone about a question.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [the messengers of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [God](#)
- [the god of](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [are going](#)
- [to inquire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But the angel from Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah, the prophet](#)
- [The king](#)
- [of Samaria](#)
- [is sending some messengers to](#)
- [God](#)
- [Baal-Zebub whether you will recover](#)
- [Israel that you wish](#)
- [Israel that you wish](#)
- [to ask](#)

ULT

³ But the messenger of [Yahweh](#) spoke to [Elijah](#) the Tishbite, “Arise, go up to meet [the messengers of the king of Samaria](#), and say to them, ‘Is it on account of there being no [God in Israel](#) you [are going to inquire](#) of Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?’

UST

³ But the angel from [Yahweh](#) said to [Elijah, the prophet](#) from the city of Tishbe, “[The king of Samaria is sending some messengers to](#) Ekron. Go and meet them and say to them, ‘Is it because there is no [God in Israel that you wish to ask Baal-Zebub whether you will recover?](#)’

2 Kings 1:4

Therefore Yahweh says

This is Yahweh's message to King Ahaziah. Alternate translation: "Therefore Yahweh says to King Ahaziah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

You will not come down from the bed to where you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. Alternate translation: "You will not recover and you will not get up from the bed on which you are lying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Then Elijah left](#)

ULT

⁴ Now therefore thus says [Yahweh](#), "The bed on which you have gone up there, you will not come down from it, for surely you will die." Then [Elijah](#) left.

UST

⁴ [Yahweh](#) says that you should tell King Ahaziah that he will not recover from his being injured; he will surely die." [Then Elijah left](#).

2 Kings 1:5

When the messengers returned to Ahaziah

After meeting with Elijah, the messengers returned to the king instead of going to Ekron. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [When...returned](#)
- [you have come back](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and they returned to the king instead of going to Ekron](#)
- [come back](#)

ULT

⁵ [When](#) the messengers [returned](#) to him, then he said to them, "What is this, [you have come back](#)?"

UST

⁵ So Elijah went to meet the messengers and told that to them, [and they returned to the king instead of going to Ekron](#). The king asked them, "Why have you [come back](#) so quickly?"

2 Kings 1:6

Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This is irony because they are definitely aware of the God of Israel. See how you translated a similar question in [2 Kings 3:3](#). Alternate translation: "You fools! You know there is a God in Israel, but you were acting as though you did not know when you sent men to consult Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. See how you translated this statement in [2 Kings 3:4](#). Alternate translation: "you will not recover and you will not get up from the bed on which you are lying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Go
- return
- the king
- Yahweh
- God
- the god of
- in Israel
- to inquire

Translation Words - UST

- Go
- back
- the king
- Yahweh
- no God
- Baal-Zebub whether you will recover
- in Israel
- that you wish to ask

ULT

⁶ Then they said to him, "A man came up to meet us and he said to us, 'Go, return to the king who sent you, and you must speak to him, "Thus says Yahweh: 'Is it on account of there being no God in Israel you are sending to inquire of Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore the bed that you have gone upon there, you will not go down from it, for you will surely die.'""

UST

⁶ They replied, "A man came to meet us and said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you and tell him that Yahweh says, "'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you wish to ask Baal-Zebub whether you will recover'? Go tell the king that he will not recover from being injured; instead, he will surely die.'""

2 Kings 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- was the manner of

Translation Words - UST

- what did he look like

ULT

⁷ So he spoke to them, "What **was the manner of** the man who came up to meet you and he spoke to you these words?"

UST

⁷ The king said to them, "The man who came to meet you and told that to you, **what did he look like?**"

2 Kings 1:8

He wore a garment made of hair

This could mean: (1) this is a metaphor that speaks of him being very hairy as if his hair were a garment. Alternate translation: "He was very hairy" or (2) "His clothes were made from animal hair" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a possessor of
- Elijah

Translation Words - UST

- He was wearing a cloak made from camel
- That must be Elijah

ULT

⁸ Then they replied to him, "A man, a possessor of hair, and a waist cloth of hide was belted around his sides." So he said, "He is Elijah, the Tishbite."

UST

⁸ They replied, "He was wearing a cloak made from camel hair and had a wide leather belt around his waist." The king exclaimed, "That must be Elijah!"

2 Kings 1:9

Then the king sent a captain with fifty soldiers to Elijah

The king sent the leader of the army with fifty men to bring Elijah back to him. Alternate translation: "Then the king sent a captain with fifty soldiers to seize Elijah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fifty soldiers

"50 soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a prince of
- the top of
- the true God
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- an officer
- the top
- Prophet
- the king

ULT

⁹ Then he sent to him a prince of 50 along with his 50, and he went up to him. Now here he was sitting on the top of the hill and he spoke to him, "O man of the true God, the king has spoken, 'You must come down.'"

UST

⁹ Then the king sent an officer with fifty soldiers to seize Elijah. They found Elijah sitting on the top of a hill. The officer called out to him, "Prophet, the king commands that you come down here!"

2 Kings 1:10

If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven

The captain had called Elijah a man of God, but the captain and the king did not show Elijah proper respect. Elijah said this so that fire would come down from heaven, and this would prove that Elijah really was a man of God and he deserved their respect. Alternate translation: "Since I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven" or "If I am a man of God as you have said, let fire come down from heaven"

from heaven

Alternate translation: "from the sky"

Translation Words - ULT

- Elijah
- the prince of
- God
- fire
- fire (2)
- the heavens
- the heavens (2)
- that it may consume
- and it consumed

Translation Words - UST

- Elijah
- the officer
- a prophet
- fire
- Immediately, fire (2)
- the sky
- the sky (2)
- and burn up you and your
- and completely burned up

ULT

¹⁰ However [Elijah](#) answered and he spoke to [the prince of](#) the 50, "Now if I am a man of [God](#), let [fire](#) come down from [the heavens](#), [that it may consume](#) you and your 50." Then [fire](#) came down from [the heavens and it consumed](#) him and his 50.

UST

¹⁰ But [Elijah](#) replied to [the officer](#), "I am [a prophet](#), so I command that [fire](#) come down from [the sky and burn up you and your](#) fifty soldiers!" [Immediately, fire](#) came down from [the sky and completely burned up](#) the officer and his fifty soldiers.

2 Kings 1:11

fifty soldiers

"50 soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So he repeated](#)
- [prince of](#)
- [the true God](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [another officer](#)
- [and the officer](#)
- [Prophet](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

11 [So he repeated](#) and he sent to him another [prince of](#) 50 and his 50, and he responded and he spoke to him, "Man of [the true God](#), thus says [the king](#), 'Quickly! You must come down!'"

UST

11 When the king found out about that, he sent [another officer](#) with fifty more soldiers. They went to where Elijah was, [and the officer](#) called out to him, "[Prophet](#), [the king](#) commands that you come down immediately!"

2 Kings 1:12

If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven

The captain had called Elijah a man of God, but the captain and the king did not show Elijah proper respect. Elijah said this so that fire would come down from heaven, and this would prove that Elijah really was a man of God and he deserved their respect. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 1:10](#). Alternate translation: “Since I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven” or “If I am a man of God as you have said, let fire come down from heaven”

fire of God

This means that the fire came from God. Alternate translation: “fire from God” (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [the true God](#)
- [God](#)
- [fire](#)
- [the fire of](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [the heavens](#) (2)
- [that it may consume](#)
- [and it consumed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But Elijah replied](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [from God](#)
- [fire](#)
- [Then a fire](#)
- [the sky](#)
- [the sky and killed](#) (2)
- [and kill you](#)
- [that officer](#)

ULT

¹² But [Elijah](#) answered and he spoke to them, “If I am a man of [the true God](#), let [fire](#) come down from [the heavens](#), [that it may consume](#) you and your 50.” So [the fire of God](#) came down from [the heavens](#) and it consumed him and his 50.

UST

¹² But [Elijah replied](#), “I am [a prophet](#), so I command that [fire](#) come down from [the sky and kill you](#) and your soldiers!” Then a fire from [God](#) came down from [the sky and killed that officer](#) and his soldiers.

2 Kings 1:13

fifty warriors

“50 warriors” or “50 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

implored him

Alternate translation: “begged him”

these fifty servants of yours

The captain says that his servants are Elijah’s servants to show him honor. AT “my fifty soldiers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

let my life and the life of ... be precious in your sight

Here Elijah’s “sight” represents him judgement or evaluation. The captain is pleading with Elijah to let them live. Alternate translation: “please consider my life and the life of ... as precious to you” or “consider my life and the life of ... to be of worth to you and do not kill us” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹³ [Still he repeated](#) and he sent [a prince of 50](#) a third time and his 50. So he went up, and the third [prince of 50](#) came and he bowed low on his knees in view of [Elijah](#), and he made repeated supplication to him and he spoke to him, “Man of [the true God](#), please may [my life](#) and the life of these 50 [servants of yours](#) be precious in your eyes.

UST

¹³ When the king heard about that, he sent [still another officer with fifty more](#) soldiers. They went to where Elijah was; [the officer](#) prostrated himself in front of [Elijah and said](#) to him, “[Prophet](#), I plead with you, be kind to me and my [fifty soldiers, and do not kill us!](#)”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Still he repeated](#)
- [a prince of](#)
- [prince of \(2\)](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [the true God](#)
- [my life](#)
- [servants of yours](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [still...more](#)
- [the officer \(2\)](#)
- [another officer with](#)
- [Elijah and said](#)
- [Prophet](#)
- [fifty soldiers, and do not kill us](#)
- [fifty soldiers, and do not kill us](#)

2 Kings 1:14

let my life be precious in your sight

Here Elijah's "sight" represents him judgement or evaluation. The captain is repeating his request for Elijah to show kindness to him and let him live. Alternate translation: "please be kind to me" or "please allow me to live" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fire
- the heavens
- and it consumed
- the...princes of
- my life

Translation Words - UST

- We know that...fire
- the sky
- and killed
- officers and
- So now, please be kind to me

ULT

¹⁴ Look, [fire](#) came down from [the heavens and it consumed](#) the first two [princes of](#) the 50 along with their fifties, but now may [my life](#) be precious in your eyes."

UST

¹⁴ [We know that](#) two times [fire](#) came down from [the sky and killed officers and](#) the soldiers with them. [So now, please be kind to me!](#)"

2 Kings 1:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh
- Elijah
- Do...be afraid
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- the angel
- Then...from Yahweh
- Elijah...and...him
- Do...be afraid of him
- the king

ULT

¹⁵ Then the angel of Yahweh spoke to Elijah, "Go down with him. Do not be afraid of his presence." So he rose up and he went down with him to the king.

UST

¹⁵ Then the angel from Yahweh said to Elijah, "Go down and go with him. Do not be afraid of him." So Elijah went with them to the king.

2 Kings 1:16

Is it because there is no God in Israel from whom you can ask for information?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This is irony because the king is definitely aware of the God of Israel. Alternate translation: "You must think there is no God in Israel whom you may ask for information!" or "You fool! You know there is a God in Israel to consult, but you acted as if you did not know." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

you will not come down from the bed where you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. See how you translated this statement in [2 Kings 3:4](#). Alternate translation: "you will not recover and you will not get up from the bed where you are lying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- messengers
- to inquire
- to inquire
- the god of
- God
- in Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- You...messengers
- to ask
- in Israel to consult
- God
- god, whether you would recover
- in Israel to consult

ULT

¹⁶ Then he spoke to him, "Thus says [Yahweh](#), 'By reason that you have sent [messengers to inquire](#) of Baal-Zebub, [the god of Ekron](#), was it on account of there being no [God in Israel to inquire](#) about his word? Therefore, the bed that you have gone upon there, you will not come down from it, for you will surely die.'"

UST

¹⁶ When Elijah arrived, he said to the king, "This is what [Yahweh](#) says: 'You sent [messengers](#) to go to Ekron [to ask](#) Baal-Zebub, their [god](#), [whether you would recover](#). You acted as though there is no [God in Israel to consult](#). So you will not recover from being injured; instead, you are going to die!'"

2 Kings 1:17

the word of Yahweh that Elijah had spoken

Alternate translation: "what Yahweh had told Elijah that Elijah had spoken"

in the second year of Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah

This describes the time that Joram began to reign over Israel by stating how long Jehoram had been reigning over Jerusalem.

Alternate translation: "in the second year that Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat was king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- So he died
- Yahweh
- Elijah
- Then...reigned
- the son of
- son
- Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- So Ahaziah...which is what Yahweh
- died
- Elijah
- Ahaziah's younger brother Joram
- Ahaziah's younger brother Joram
- son of Jehoshaphat, had been ruling Judah for almost
- became the new king
- Ahaziah's brother became the king
- Ahaziah

ULT

¹⁷ So he died according to the word of Yahweh that Elijah had spoken. Then Joram reigned in his place, in the second year of Jehoram, the son of Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, because there was no son for him.

UST

¹⁷ So Ahaziah died, which is what Yahweh told Elijah would happen. Ahaziah's younger brother Joram became the new king, at the same time that Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat, had been ruling Judah for almost two years. Ahaziah's brother became the king because Ahaziah had no son to become the king.

2 Kings 1:18

are they not written ... Israel?

This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they are written ... Israel." or "someone has written about them in ... Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahaziah](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Events of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

¹⁸ As for the rest of the matters concerning [Ahaziah](#) that he had done, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

¹⁸ If you want to know about all the other things that [Ahaziah](#) did, they are written in the Book of the [Events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 2

2 Kings 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story of Elijah and begins the story of Elisha.

Special concepts in this chapter

Elisha replaces Elijah as the chief prophet of God. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

2 Kings 2:1

So it came about

“So it happened.” This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

a whirlwind

a strong wind that spins around and around

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Elijah
- Elijah
- to the heavens
- with Elisha
- Gilgal

Translation Words - UST

- When Yahweh
- the prophet Elijah
- Elijah
- heaven
- and his fellow...were traveling south...Gilgal
- prophet Elisha

ULT

¹ Now it happened when Yahweh was about to take up Elijah by the whirlwind to the heavens, that Elijah went with Elisha from Gilgal.

UST

¹ When Yahweh was about to take the prophet Elijah up to heaven in a whirlwind, Elijah and his fellow prophet Elisha were traveling south from Gilgal.

2 Kings 2:2

As Yahweh lives, and as you live

"As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live." Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "I solemnly promise you that" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Bethel](#)
- [to Bethel](#)
- [to Bethel](#)
- [As...is alive](#)
- [you yourself](#)
- [I will...leave you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [But Elisha replied](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to the city of Bethel](#)
- [to the city of Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [lives](#)
- [Just as certainly as](#)
- [I will not leave you](#)

ULT

² Then [Elijah](#) said to [Elisha](#), "Stay here, please, because [Yahweh](#) has sent me even further [to Bethel](#)." However [Elisha](#) replied, "As [Yahweh is alive](#), and as [you yourself](#) are alive, surely [I will not leave you](#)." So they went down [to Bethel](#).

UST

² [Elijah](#) said to [Elisha](#), "Stay here, because [Yahweh](#) has told only me to go [to the city of Bethel](#)." But [Elisha](#) replied, "Just as certainly as [Yahweh lives](#) and you live, [I will not leave you](#)!" So they went down together to [Bethel](#).

2 Kings 2:3

The sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. Alternate translation: "A group of men who were prophets" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the prophets
- I...know
- were at Bethel
- were at Bethel
- Then...came out
- Elisha
- Yahweh
- your master
- away...your head

Translation Words - UST

- An association
- of prophets
- at Bethel
- at Bethel
- came
- Elisha, "Do you
- Yahweh is going
- your
- I know that
- about it

ULT

³ Then [the sons of the prophets](#) who [were at Bethel](#) came out to Elisha and they said to him, "Do you know that [Yahweh](#) is taking away [your master away](#) from over [your head](#) today?" So he replied, "Indeed, I myself [know](#). You all keep quiet."

UST

³ An association of prophets at Bethel came to Elisha and Elijah; they asked Elisha, "Do you know that [Yahweh is going](#) to take [your](#) master Elijah away from you today?" Elisha answered, "Certainly [I know that](#), but do not talk about it!"

2 Kings 2:4

As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you

“As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live, I will not leave you.” Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:2](#). Alternate translation: “I solemnly promise you that I will not leave you” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Jericho](#)
- [to Jericho](#)
- [As...is alive](#)
- [you yourself](#)
- [I will...leave you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elijah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Jericho](#)
- [to the city of Jericho](#)
- [But Elisha replied again](#)
- [lives](#)
- [Just as certainly as](#)
- [I will not leave you](#)

ULT

⁴ Next [Elijah](#) said to him, “[Elisha](#), stay here, please, because [Yahweh](#) has sent me [to Jericho](#).” But he replied, “As [Yahweh is alive](#), and as [you yourself](#) are alive, surely [I will](#) not [leave you](#).” So they came in [to Jericho](#).

UST

⁴ Then [Elijah](#) said to Elisha, “Stay here, because [Yahweh](#) has told only me to go [to Jericho](#).” But Elisha replied again, “Just as certainly as [Yahweh lives](#) and you live, [I will not leave you](#)!” So they went together [to the city of Jericho](#).

2 Kings 2:5

Then the sons of the prophets who were at Jericho came to Elisha and said to him

Alternate translation: "When Elijah and Elisha came near Jericho, the sons of the prophets who were from there said to Elisha"

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: "the group of men who were prophets" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the prophets
- were in Jericho
- Elisha
- Yahweh
- your master
- your head
- I...know

Translation Words - UST

- As they neared...of prophets
- Jericho
- another association
- Elisha
- Yahweh is going to
- your
- I know that
- about it

ULT

⁵ Then [the sons of the prophets](#) who [were in Jericho](#) came to [Elisha](#) and they said to him, "Do you know that [Yahweh](#) is taking away [your master](#) from over [your head](#) today?" So he replied, "Indeed I myself [know](#). You all keep quiet!"

UST

⁵ [As they neared Jericho, another association of prophets](#) who were from there came to [Elisha](#) and said to him, "Do you know that [Yahweh is going to take your master](#) Elijah away from you today?" He answered again, "Certainly [I know that](#), but do not talk [about it](#)!"

2 Kings 2:6

As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you

“As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live, I will not leave you.” Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:2](#). Alternate translation: “I solemnly promise you that I will not leave you” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to the Jordan](#)
- [As...is alive](#)
- [you yourself](#)
- [I will...leave you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elijah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [As certainly as Yahweh](#)
- [lives](#)
- [and you live](#)
- [I will not leave you](#)
- [to the Jordan River.” But again Elisha replied](#)

ULT

⁶ Next [Elijah](#) said to him, “Stay here, please, because [Yahweh](#) has sent me [to the Jordan](#).” However he replied, “As [Yahweh is alive](#), and as [you yourself](#) are alive, surely [I will](#) not [leave you](#).” So the two of them went.

UST

⁶ [Then Elijah](#) said to Elisha, “Stay here, because [Yahweh](#) has told only me to go to the Jordan River.” But again Elisha replied, “[As certainly as Yahweh lives and you live, I will not leave you!](#)” So they continued walking together.

2 Kings 2:7

fifty of the sons

"50 of the sons" (See: [Numbers](#))

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: "the group of men who were prophets" (See: [Idiom](#))

stood opposite them

This means that they were standing, facing them. Alternate translation: "stood facing them" or "stood watching them" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [went](#)
- [stood](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the association](#)
- [of prophets who were from Jericho](#)
- [also went](#)
- [as Elijah and Elisha stopped](#)
- [of the Jordan River](#)

ULT

⁷ Now, 50 men [of the sons of the prophets went](#) and they stood at a standpoint opposite from a distance while the two of them [stood](#) along [the Jordan](#).

UST

⁷ Fifty men [from the association of prophets who were from Jericho also went](#), but they watched from a distance [as Elijah and Elisha stopped](#) at the edge [of the Jordan River](#).

2 Kings 2:8

cloak

outer piece of clothing used as a covering

The river divided on both sides so that the two of them walked over on dry ground

Alternate translation: "The water of the Jordan River opened up so there was a dry path for Elijah and Elisha to cross over to the other side"

on both sides

"to the right and the left." This refers to the right and the left of where Elijah struck the water.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [So...crossed over](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elijah](#)
- [walked across](#)

ULT

⁸ Then [Elijah](#) took his mantle, and he folded, and he struck the waters and they were divided here and there. [So](#) the two of them [crossed over](#) on the dry ground.

UST

⁸ [Then Elijah](#) rolled up his cloak and struck the water with it. A path opened up for them through the river, and they [walked across](#) as though they were on dry ground.

2 Kings 2:9

It came about

Alternate translation: "it happened"

crossed over

This refers to crossing the Jordan River. Alternate translation: "crossed over the Jordan River" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

before I am taken from you

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "before Yahweh takes me from you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a double portion of your spirit

Here Elijah's spirit refers to his spiritual power. Alternate translation: "twice as much of your spiritual power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- that Elijah
- Elisha
- Elisha
- of your spirit

Translation Words - UST

- When they...Elijah
- Elisha...I am
- Elisha...I want
- you to enable me to very powerfully continue your ministry

ULT

⁹ Now it happened at their crossing over, that Elijah said to Elisha, "Ask what I should do for you before I will be taken away from with you." So Elisha replied, "Indeed, please may a double portion of your spirit be with me."

UST

⁹ When they came to the other side, Elijah said to Elisha, "What do you want me to do for you before I am taken away?" Elisha replied, "I want you to enable me to very powerfully continue your ministry."

2 Kings 2:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁰ So he replied, "You have shown tenacity by asking. If you see me being taken away from beside you, so it will happen for you, but if not, it will not happen."

UST

¹⁰ Elijah replied, "You have asked for something which is difficult for me to make happen. But if you see me when I am taken from you, you will get what you are requesting. But if you do not see me, then you will not get it."

2 Kings 2:11

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

a chariot of fire and horses of fire

Here the phrase “of fire” means that these were surround by fire. Alternate translation: “a chariot surrounded by fire pulled by horses surrounded by fire” (See: [Possession](#))

went up by a whirlwind into heaven

“was carried into the sky by a whirlwind.” Translate the word “whirlwind” the same as you did in [2 Kings 2:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [were walking](#)
- [going along](#)
- [fire](#)
- [fire](#)
- [and horses of](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [into the heavens](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [walking](#)
- [walking](#)
- [surrounded by fire, appeared](#)
- [surrounded by fire](#)
- [pulled by horses](#)
- [Then Elijah](#)
- [heaven](#)

ULT

¹¹ Now it happened they [were walking](#), [going along](#) and speaking, when look, a chariot of [fire and horses of fire](#), and they caused a separation between the two of them. Then [Elijah](#) went up in a whirlwind [into the heavens](#).

UST

¹¹ As they were [walking](#) and talking, suddenly a chariot [surrounded by fire pulled by horses surrounded by fire](#), [appeared](#). The chariot driver drove the chariot between Elijah and Elisha and separated them. [Then Elijah](#) was taken up to [heaven](#) in a whirlwind.

2 Kings 2:12

My father, my father

Elisha is calling Elijah his respected leader.

tore them into two pieces

People would often tear their clothes as a sign of great sadness or grief. Alternate translation: "ripped them in two pieces to show his great sadness" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then Elisha
- was crying out
- My father
- my father
- Israel
- and its horsemen

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- He cried out
- My father
- My father
- The Israelite
- and their drivers have taken my master away

ULT

¹² Then Elisha was looking and he was crying out, "My father, my father, the chariotry of Israel and its horsemen!" But he did not see him any longer, so he took hold of his garments and he tore them into two pieces.

UST

¹² Elisha saw it. He cried out, "My father! My father! The Israelite chariots and their drivers have taken my master away!" They disappeared into the sky, and Elisha never saw Elijah again. Then Elisha tore his own robe into two pieces to show that he was deeply saddened.

2 Kings 2:13

cloak

The cloak was the outer clothing of a prophet. It was the sign of his job. When Elisha took Elijah's cloak he was saying he was taking Elijah's place as prophet.

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he picked up
- Elijah
- and he turned back
- the Jordan

Translation Words - UST

- Elijah's
- was taken away
- and returned
- of the Jordan River

ULT

¹³ Then he picked up the mantle of Elijah that had fallen from upon him, and he turned back and he stood along the edge of the Jordan.

UST

¹³ Elijah's cloak had fallen off when he was taken away, so Elisha picked it up and returned to the bank of the Jordan River.

2 Kings 2:14

Where is Yahweh, the God of Elijah?

Elisha is asking if Yahweh is with him as he was with Elijah. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, the God of Elijah, are you here with me?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they divided on both sides and Elisha crossed over

The river separated and Elisha walked to the other side on dry ground, the same way he did previously when he was with Elijah.

on both sides

"to the right and the left." This refers to the right and the left of where Elijah struck the water.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [so...crossed over](#)
- [Elisha](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He rolled up the cloak](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Is Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [and Elisha](#)
- [went across](#)

ULT

14 Then he took the mantle of [Elijah](#) that had fallen from upon him and he struck the waters and he said, "Where is [Yahweh, the God of Elijah](#), indeed, he?" When he struck the waters, then they were divided in half, here and there, [so Elisha crossed over](#).

UST

14 [He rolled up the cloak](#) and struck the water with it, and cried out, "[Is Yahweh, the God of Elijah](#), here with me, too?" Then the water separated, and a path opened up for him, [and Elisha went across](#).

2 Kings 2:15

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

bowed themselves to the ground before him

They are showing him deep respect and acknowledging him as their new leader.

The spirit of Elijah does rest on Elisha

Here Elijah’s “spirit” refers to his spiritual power. This speaks of Elisha having this spiritual power as if it were something that physically rested upon him. Alternate translation: “Elisha does have the same spiritual power that Elijah did” or “The spiritual power Elijah had is now with Elisha” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁵ When [the sons of the prophets](#) who [were in Jericho](#) saw him from afar, then they said, “[The spirit of Elijah rests on Elisha!](#)” So they came to meet him, [and they bowed themselves to the ground](#) to him.

UST

¹⁵ When [the association of prophets from Jericho](#) saw what happened, they exclaimed, “[The Spirit of God has now given the same ability to Elisha that Elijah had!](#)” They walked over to [Elisha and bowed down](#) in front of him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [were in Jericho](#)
- [The spirit of](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [rests](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [and they bowed themselves](#)
- [to the ground](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When the association of prophets](#)
- [When the association of prophets](#)
- [from Jericho](#)
- [The Spirit of God](#)
- [has now given the same ability](#)
- [Elijah had](#)
- [to...Elisha](#)
- [and bowed down](#)
- [and bowed down](#)

2 Kings 2:16

See now, among your servants there are fifty strong men. Let them go

These men are referring to themselves when they say “fifty strong men.” Alternate translation: “See now, we are fifty strong men and we are now your servants. Let us go” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fifty strong men

“50 strong men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of
- strength
- with your servants
- let them go
- so they may search for
- your master
- the Spirit of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Sir...permit us...of our
- strongest men
- strongest men
- will go
- and search for
- your master
- the Spirit of
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁶ Then they said to him, “Look, please, there are 50 men, [sons of strength](#), [with your servants](#). Please, [let them go](#), [so they may search for your master](#), in case [the Spirit of Yahweh](#) has carried him and he has thrown him on one of the mountains or in one of the valleys.” However he replied, “Do not send forth.”

UST

¹⁶ One of them said, “[Sir](#), if you [permit us](#), fifty [of our strongest men will go and search for your master](#) on the other side of the river. Perhaps [the Spirit of Yahweh](#) has left him on some mountain or in some valley.” Elisha replied, “No, do not send them.”

2 Kings 2:17

But when they urged Elisha until he was ashamed

The sons of the prophets kept asking Elisha until he felt bad about saying “no.” Alternate translation: “They kept asking Elisha until he felt bad for denying their request, so” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shaming](#)
- [and they searched](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But they continued to urge him. Finally he was tired](#)
- [searched](#)

ULT

¹⁷ But they pressed upon him until [shaming](#), so he said, “Send forth!” Then they sent 50 men, [and they searched](#) three days, but they did not find him.

UST

¹⁷ [But they continued to urge him.](#) [Finally he was tired](#) of saying “No,” and he said, “Very well, send them.” So fifty men [searched](#) for three days, but they did not find Elijah.

2 Kings 2:18

Did I not say to you, 'Do not go'?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he had told them previously what would happen. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I told you that you should not go, because you would not find him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then they returned](#)
- [in Jericho](#)
- [you should...go](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They returned to](#)
- [Jericho](#)
- [go](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [Then they returned](#) to him while he was staying [in Jericho](#), and he said to them, "Did I not say to you, '[you should not go](#)'?"

UST

¹⁸ [They returned to Jericho](#), and Elisha was still there. He said to them, "I told you that you should not [go](#), because you would not find him!"

2 Kings 2:19

The men of the city

Alternate translation: "The leaders of the city"

the situation of this city is pleasant

This means that the city is located in a good place. Alternate translation: "this city is in a good place" or "this city is in a good location" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as my master can see

The men refer to Elisha here as "my master" to honor him.

fruitful

producing good crops

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- is good
- my master
- are worthless

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- One of them said, "Our master, we have a problem
- this is a very nice
- is bad, and as a result

ULT

¹⁹ Then the men of the city said to Elisha, "Please, look the site of the city **is good**, just as **my master** is seeing, but the waters **are worthless** and the land is unfruitful."

UST

¹⁹ Then the leaders of Jericho came to talk with Elisha. **One of them said, "Our master, we have a problem.** You can see that **this is a very nice** place to live in. But the water **is bad, and as a result,** crops will not grow on the land."

2 Kings 2:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and put

Translation Words - UST

- Put

ULT

²⁰ So he replied, "Take for me a new small jug and put some salt in there," so they took it to him.

UST

²⁰ Elisha said to them, "Put some salt in a new bowl and bring the bowl to me." So they brought it to him.

2 Kings 2:21

healed these waters

This speaks of Yahweh making the bad water pure as if he healed it. Alternate translation: “made the waters pure” (See: [Metaphor](#))

there will be no more death or unfruitful land

This refers to things caused by the bad water. This also can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “there will be no more death or problems with crops caused by this water” or “from now on this water will bring life and help the land become fruitful” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then he went out](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [out to](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

21 [Then he went out](#) to the source of the waters and he threw some salt in there. Then he said, “Thus says [Yahweh](#), ‘I have brought healing to these waters. There will not be death or being unfruitful from there any longer.’”

UST

21 Then Elisha went [out to](#) the spring from which the people in the town got water. He threw the salt into the spring. Then he said, “This is what [Yahweh](#) says: ‘I have made this water good. No one will die anymore because of bad water, and the land will grow fruitful crops.’”

2 Kings 2:22

the waters were healed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the waters have remained pure" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to this day,...spoke

This means that something remains in a certain condition until the present time. Alternate translation: "by the word which Elisha spoke, and have always remained pure since" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elisha](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [just as Elisha](#)

ULT

²² So the waters are healed to this day, according to the word of [Elisha](#) which he spoke.

UST

²² And the water became pure, [just as Elisha](#) said it would. Since that time it has always remained pure.

2 Kings 2:23

went up from there to Bethel

The phrase “went up” is used here because Bethel is higher in elevation than Jericho.

Go up

The young boys wanted Elisha to go away from them and expressed this by saying “go up.” Alternate translation: “Go away” (See: [Idiom](#))

baldhead

A bald person does not have any hair on their head. The young boys were mocking Elisha for having a bald head.

Translation Words - ULT

- to Bethel
- to Bethel
- when some...boys
- came out

Translation Words - UST

- Bethel
- Bethel
- a group of...boys
- Go

ULT

²³ Then he went up from there to Bethel, and he was going up along the road, when some young boys came out from the city. Now they were making fun of him among themselves. Then they said to him, “Go up, bald one! Go up, bald one!”

UST

²³ Elisha left Jericho and went up to Bethel. As he was walking along the road, a group of young boys from Bethel saw him and started to make fun of him. They continued shouting, “Go away, you bald-headed man!”

2 Kings 2:24

forty-two of the boys

"42 of the boys" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he cursed them](#)
- [in the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Then...came out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and reprimanded them](#)
- [in the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Immediately...came](#)

ULT

²⁴ So he turned behind him and he saw them, [and he cursed them in the name of Yahweh](#). Then two female bears [came out](#) from the forrest and they tore up 42 of the boys among them.

UST

²⁴ Elisha turned around [and reprimanded them in the name of Yahweh](#). [Immediately](#) two female bears [came](#) out of the woods and mauled forty-two of them.

2 Kings 2:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- he returned
- to Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- returned
- of Samaria

ULT

²⁵ Then he went from there to Mount Carmel, and from there he returned to Samaria.

UST

²⁵ Elisha left Bethel and went to Mount Carmel, and after that he returned to the city of Samaria.

2 Kings 3

2 Kings 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elisha continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Victory and defeat

God is in control of victory and defeat. The armies of Israel, Judah and Edom united to attack Moab from the desert for failure to pay tribute. When they ran out of water, they were in desperate condition. Therefore, they asked Elisha (the prophet of God) what to do and he said God would give them water and victory over Moab. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

They described Elisha with the idiom, “who poured water on the hands of Elijah,” meaning “who served Elijah.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Anger

It is said that, “Anger came on Israel.” It is not clear who was angry or why they were angry.

2 Kings 3:1

in the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah

This describes the time that Joram began to reign by stating how long the current king of Judah had reigned. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “in the eighteenth year that Jehoshaphat was king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the eighteenth year

“year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Joram son of Ahab

Sometimes this man is referred to as “Jehoram.” This is not the same person as the man mentioned in [2 Kings 1:17](#) named “Jehoram.”

ULT

¹ Now Joram, [the son of Ahab](#), became king over [Israel](#) in Samaria in the 18th year [of Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah](#), and he reigned 12 years.

UST

¹ After Jehoshaphat had been ruling [Judah](#) for almost eighteen years, [Ahab's son](#) Joram became [the king of Israel](#). He ruled in the city of Samaria for twelve years.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [of Jehoshaphat](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and he reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Jehoshaphat had been ruling](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Ahab's](#)
- [son](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [He ruled](#)

2 Kings 3:2

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” refers to Yahweh’s thoughts or opinion. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” or “what is evil in Yahweh’s judgement” (See: [Metaphor](#))

but not like his father and his mother

This compares how much evil he did to being less than the amount that his parents did. Alternate translation: “but he did not do as much evil as his father and mother had done” (See: [Simile](#))

the sacred stone pillar of Baal

This pillar was used in the worship of Baal, though it is unknown what the pillar looked like. Alternate translation: “the sacred stone pillar for worshiping Baal” (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his father had made](#)

ULT

² He also did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), only not as his father or as his mother, for he removed the standing stone of the Baal that [his father](#) had made.

UST

² He did things that [Yahweh](#) said were evil, but he did not do as much [evil](#) as his father and mother had done, and he got rid of the stone pillar for worshiping Baal that [his father had made](#).

2 Kings 3:3

he held on to the sins

This is an idiom. Here “holding on” to something means to continue doing it. Alternate translation: “he continued to commit the sins” (See: [Idiom](#))

Nebat

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he did not turn away from them

“Turning away” from something is an idiom which means to stop doing it. Alternate translation: “he did not stop committing those sins” or “he continued committing those sins” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the sins of](#)
- [caused...to sin](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had committed](#)
- [committed the sins](#)
- [King Jeroboam](#)
- [King Jeroboam](#)
- [and which induced the Israelite people](#)

ULT

³ However he held fast [to the sins of Jeroboam, the son of Nebat](#), who [caused Israel to sin](#); he did not turn away from it.

UST

³ But he [committed the sins](#) that [King Jeroboam had committed and which induced the Israelite people](#) to sin, and he did not stop committing the same sins.

2 Kings 3:4

He had to give to the king of Israel 100,000 lambs and the wool of 100,000 rams

Mesha had to give these things to the king of Israel because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Every year he was forced to give 100,000 lambs and the wool from 100,000 rams to the king of Israel, because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

100,000 lambs...100,000 rams

“one hundred thousand lambs ... one hundred thousand rams” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the...of...king
- king...to the...of
- Moab
- and he would bring back
- Israel
- rams

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- to the king
- of Moab
- Every year he was forced to give
- from 100,000
- of Israel, because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel

ULT

⁴ Now Mesha, the [king](#) of [Moab](#), was a breeder of sheep, [and he would bring back to the king of Israel](#) 100,000 young rams and 100,000 [rams](#) with much wool.

UST

⁴ Mesha, [the king of Moab](#), raised sheep. [Every year he was forced to give](#) 100,000 lambs and the wool [from](#) 100,000 rams [to the king of Israel](#), [because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel](#).

2 Kings 3:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahab
- the king of
- against the king of
- Moab
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- King Ahab
- Mesha
- the
- king
- of Israel

ULT

⁵ Now it happened after the death of Ahab, that the king of Moab rebelled against the king of Israel.

UST

⁵ But after King Ahab died, Mesha rebelled against the king of Israel.

2 Kings 3:6

to mobilize all Israel for war

“to prepare the people of Israel for war.” Here “all Israel” refers to all of the Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: “to mobilize all of the Israelite soldiers for war” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...came out](#)
- [the King](#)
- [and he mobilized](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So King](#)
- [left...to call together](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to go to war](#)

ULT

⁶ [So the King](#), Joram, [came out](#) of Samaria on that day [and he mobilized](#) all [Israel](#).

UST

⁶ [So King](#) Joram [left](#) Samaria [to call together](#) soldiers from across all [Israel](#) [to go to war](#).

2 Kings 3:7

Will you go with me against Moab to battle?

The word “you” refers to Jehoshaphat, but refers to both him and his army. Here “Moab” stands for “the army of Moab.” Alternate translation: “Will you and your army go with me to fight against the army of Moab?” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

I will go

Jehoshaphat is saying that he and his entire army will fight with King Joram against Moab. Alternate translation: “We will go with you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

I am as you are, my people as your people, my horses as your horses

Jehoshaphat is letting Joram use himself, his people, and his horses for his purposes. He speaks of this as if they belonged to Joram. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “We are ready to do whatever you want us to. My soldiers and my horses are ready to help you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁷ Then he went and he sent to [Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah](#), saying, “[The king of Moab](#) has rebelled against me. Will you go with me to [Moab](#) to the battle?” and he replied, “I will go up. Truly I will as you will, [as my people](#) will [so your people will](#), as my horses will, so will your horses.”

UST

⁷ Then he sent this message to [Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah](#): “[The king of Moab](#) has rebelled against me. So will your army join my army and fight against [the army of Moab](#)?” Jehoshaphat replied, “Yes, we will help you. We are ready to do whatever you want us to. [My soldiers](#) and my horses are ready to help you.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [The king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [as my...will...people](#)
- [people...so your...will](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [The king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [of Moab](#)
- [the army of Moab](#)
- [My soldiers](#)
- [My soldiers](#)

2 Kings 3:8

By way of the wilderness of Edom

Alternate translation: "By going through the wilderness of Edom"

ULT

⁸ Then he said, "Where is this, the way we should go up?" and he replied, "The way of the wilderness of Edom."

UST

⁸ He asked, "On which road should we march to attack them?" Joram replied, "We will go south to Jerusalem, where your army will join us. Then we will all go south of the Dead Sea and then turn north through the wilderness of Edom."

2 Kings 3:9

the king of Israel went with the king of Judah and the king of Edom

This refers to the kings accompanied by their armies. Alternate translation: “the king of Israel and his army went with the king of Judah and his army and the king of Edom and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

They wandered around

This could mean: (1) the kings were not sure where they were going, and so they changed direction often or (2) the kings knew where they were going and they walked around Moab ([2 Kings 3:8](#)).

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- So the king
- of Israel and his army
- of Judah

ULT

⁹ So the king of Israel went along with the king of Judah and the king of Edom, and they wandered about on a journey for seven days, but there was no water for the army or for the cattle that were at their feet.

UST

⁹ So the king of Israel and his army went with the kings of Judah and Edom and their armies. They marched for seven days. Then there was no water left for their soldiers or for their animals that carried supplies.

2 Kings 3:10

What is this? Has Yahweh called three kings to give them into the hand of Moab?

The king uses a rhetorical question to emphasize how ridiculous and terrible their situation is. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "It looks like Yahweh will allow all three of us to be captured by Moab!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to give them into the hand of Moab

Here "Moab" refers to its army. Also, "the hand of Moab" refers to the "control" of Moab's army. Alternate translation: "to give us over to Moab's control" or "so the army of Moab will defeat us" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- kings
- Israel
- Yahweh
- has called
- into the hand of
- Moab

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- the three of us
- of Israel
- It seems that Yahweh will allow
- It seems that Yahweh will allow
- to be captured by the army
- of Moab

ULT

¹⁰ Then the king of Israel said, "Alas, for Yahweh has called for these three kings in order to give them into the hand of Moab!"

UST

¹⁰ The king of Israel exclaimed, "This is a terrible situation! It seems that Yahweh will allow the three of us to be captured by the army of Moab!"

2 Kings 3:11

Is there not here a prophet of Yahweh, that we may consult Yahweh by him?

Jehoshaphat uses a rhetorical question here to state that he is certain that there is a prophet there and to find out where he is. Alternate translation: "I am sure there is a prophet of Yahweh here! Tell me where one is, so we may consult Yahweh by him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Shaphat

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who poured water on the hands of Elijah

This idiom means that he was Elijah's helper. The phrase "poured water on the hands" is a description of one of the ways he served Elijah. Alternate translation: "who was a helper to Elijah" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoshaphat
- a prophet
- of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- of the king of
- Israel
- Elisha
- the son of
- the hands of
- Elijah

Translation Words - UST

- Jehoshaphat
- Is there a prophet
- Is there a prophet
- Yahweh
- Joram's army
- Joram's army
- Elisha
- son
- Elijah's
- was...assistant

ULT

¹¹ But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not here a prophet of Yahweh, that we might seek Yahweh by him?" Then one of the servants of the king of Israel answered and he said, "Elisha, the son of Shaphat is here, who has poured waters on the hands of Elijah."

UST

¹¹ Jehoshaphat said, "Is there a prophet here who can ask Yahweh for us what we should do?" One of Joram's army officers said, "Elisha son of Shaphat, is here. He was Elijah's assistant."

2 Kings 3:12

The word of Yahweh is with him

This means that he is a prophet and that Yahweh tells him what to say. Alternate translation: "He speaks what Yahweh tells him to say" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

went down to him

They went to see Elijah and to consult with him about what they should do. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "went to see Elisha to ask him what they should do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [and Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [So those three kings](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [So those three kings](#)
- [So those three kings](#)

ULT

¹² So [Jehoshaphat](#) replied, "The word of [Yahweh](#) is present with him." So [the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat](#), and the king of Edom went down to him.

UST

¹² [Jehoshaphat](#) said, "It will be good to ask him, because he speaks what [Yahweh](#) tells him to say." [So those three kings](#) went to Elisha.

2 Kings 3:13

What have I to do with you?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he and the king have nothing in common. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have nothing to do with you." or "I have nothing in common with you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to give them into the hand of Moab

Here the "hand of Moab" refers the Moab's "control." Alternate translation: "to give them over to the control of Moab" or "to allow them to be captured by the Moabite army" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- the king of
- the king of
- kings
- has called
- into the hand of
- Moab
- Israel
- Israel
- Go
- the prophets of
- the prophets of
- your father
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- the king
- the
- to capture us
- army of Moab
- to capture us
- of Israel
- But Joram
- Go and ask
- those prophets
- consulted
- that your father
- ask Yahweh
- Yahweh has brought us three kings together in order to allow

ULT

¹³ Then Elisha said to the king of Israel, "What do I have that is for you? Go to the prophets of your father and to the prophets of your mother." However the king of Israel said to him, "No, for Yahweh has called for these three kings in order to give them into the hand of Moab."

UST

¹³ Elisha said to the king of Israel, "Why do you come to me? Go and ask those prophets that your father and mother consulted!" But Joram replied, "No, we want you to ask Yahweh, because it seems that Yahweh has brought us three kings together in order to allow the army of Moab to capture us."

2 Kings 3:14

As Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely

"As I know that Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely."
Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty that, if it were not for Jehoshaphat being there, he would not pay attention to Joram. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "As surely as Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, I promise you, if it" (See: [Simile](#))

before whom I stand

Here serving Yahweh is spoken of as standing in his presence.
Alternate translation: "whom I serve" (See: [Metaphor](#))

were it not for the fact that I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, I would not pay any attention to you

This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: "I pay attention to you only because I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat

Here Jehoshaphat is referred to by his presence. Alternate translation: "I honor Jehoshaphat" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I would not pay any attention to you, or even look at you

These two phrases have similar meaning and are used together to emphasize that he would not pay any attention to Joram. Alternate translation: "I would not have anything at all to do with you" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- Yahweh of
- As...is alive
- I stand
- the presence of
- Jehoshaphat
- the king of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- I serve...the commander
- Yahweh
- As surely as he
- lives
- Jehoshaphat
- the king

ULT

¹⁴ But Elisha said, "As Yahweh of hosts is alive, whom I stand in his presence, surely except that I am respecting the presence of Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, I would not pay attention to you, or I would even look at you."

UST

¹⁴ Elisha replied, "I serve Yahweh, the commander of the armies of angels in heaven. As surely as he lives, if I did not respect Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, I would not even think about doing anything to help you."

- of Judah

2 Kings 3:15

Then it came to pass

Alternate translation: "And it happened that"

harpist

someone who plays the harp

the hand of Yahweh came upon Elisha

Here Yahweh's "hand" refers to his "power." Alternate translation: "the power of Yahweh came upon Elisha" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the hand of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gave this message to Elisha](#)

ULT

¹⁵ But now bring someone who plays a stringed instrument to me." Now it was when the one playing a stringed instrument played, [the hand of Yahweh](#) came upon him.

UST

¹⁵ But bring a musician to me." So they did that. When the musician played on his harp, [Yahweh gave this message to Elisha](#).

2 Kings 3:16

trenches

A trench is a long ditch that workers dig in the ground to collect water.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT

16 Then he said, “Thus says Yahweh, ‘This dry river valley will function as cisterns, cisterns.’

UST

16 He said, “Yahweh says that he will cause this dry streambed to be full of water.

2 Kings 3:17

this river valley will be filled with water

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will fill this river valley with water" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you will drink

This refers to drinking the water that Yahweh provides. Alternate translation: "you will drink the water" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- wind
- and your herds

Translation Words - UST

- The result will be
- The result will be
- and your animals that carry supplies and your

ULT

¹⁷ For thus says Yahweh, 'You will not see wind, and you will not see rain, but this dry river valley will be filled with waters, so that you may drink, you and your flocks, and your herds.'

UST

¹⁷ The result will be that your soldiers and your animals that carry supplies and your livestock will have plenty of water to drink.

2 Kings 3:18

This is an easy thing in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation.
Alternate translation: "Yahweh considers this as an easy thing to do" or "This is an easy thing for Yahweh to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Indeed...is an easy thing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [into your hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [for Yahweh](#)
- [But He will do more than that](#)
- [will also...to defeat](#)
- [the army of Moab](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [Indeed](#), this [is an easy thing](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), so he will give [Moab](#) [into your hand](#).

UST

¹⁸ That is not difficult [for Yahweh](#) to do. [But He will do more than that](#). He [will also](#) enable you [to defeat the army of Moab](#).

2 Kings 3:19

fortified city

A fortified city is well protected from enemies by such things as high walls or a easily defensible location.

ruin every good piece of land with rocks

This means to put rocks on the fertile land so that it is difficult to use. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "ruin every good piece of land by covering them with rocks" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- good

Translation Words - UST

- fruit
- their fertile fields

ULT

19 Therefore you will attack every fortified city and every choice city. Also every good tree you will make fall, and all springs of waters you will stop up, and all of the good portion of land you will mar with stones."

UST

19 You will conquer all their beautiful cities, cities that have high walls around them. You must cut down all their fruit trees, stop water from flowing from their springs, and ruin their fertile fields by covering them with rocks."

2 Kings 3:20

there came water

Alternate translation: "water began flowing"

the country was filled with water

Alternate translation: "and soon the country became filled with water"

country

land, ground

Translation Words - ULT

- the sacrifice
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- the sacrifices of grain
- the ground

ULT

²⁰ Now it happened in the morning at the offering up of the sacrifice, that, look, waters were coming from the way of Edom and the land was filled with the waters.

UST

²⁰ The next morning, at the time when they offered the sacrifices of grain, they were surprised to see water flowing from Edom and covering the ground.

2 Kings 3:21

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about the Moabite army preparing to meet the three kings and their armies in battle. (See: [Background Information](#))

all who were able to put on armor

Here “armor” represents ability to fight. Alternate translation: “all the men who could fight” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the kings had come

Here the word “kings” refers to both the kings and their armies. Alternate translation: “the kings had come with their armies” or “the kings and their armies had come” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)
- [the kings](#)
- [girding on](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When the people of Moab](#)
- [the three kings](#)
- [who were able to fight in battles](#)

ULT

²¹ Then all [Moab](#) heard that [the kings](#) had gone up to fight against them. So they were mobilized out of all [girding on](#) a warrior belt and upwards, and they stood along the border.

UST

²¹ [When the people of Moab](#) heard that [the three kings](#) had come with their armies to fight against them, all the men [who were able to fight in battles](#), from the youngest men to the oldest ones, were summoned, and they took their positions at the southern border of their land.

2 Kings 3:22

it looked as red as blood

This compares the red appearance of the water to the color of blood.
Alternate translation: "it was red like blood" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appeared...be as](#)

ULT

²² Now they rose up early in the morning and the sun shone on the waters. When [Moab](#) looked from the other side the waters were red like the blood.

UST

²² But when they rose early the next morning, they saw that the water across from them [appeared](#) to [be as](#) red as blood.

2 Kings 3:23

So now, Moab

The soldiers are referring to themselves here as “Moab.” Alternate translation: “soldiers of Moab” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

plunder them

“steal their belongings.” After an army defeated their enemies, they would often plunder their towns by stealing whatever was left of value.

Translation Words - ULT

- [is blood](#)
- [The kings](#)
- [Moab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It is blood](#)
- [The three enemy armies](#)
- [us](#)

ULT

²³ So they said, “This [is blood](#)! [The kings](#) have surely been destroyed, and each man has struck down his comrade. So now, [Moab](#), to the spoil!”

UST

²³ They exclaimed, “[It is blood](#)! [The three enemy armies](#) must have fought and killed each other! So let [us](#) go and take everything that they have left!”

2 Kings 3:24

camp of Israel

Here "Israel" refers only to the Israelite soldiers and not to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "the area where the Israelite soldiers had set up their tents" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the Israelites surprised

Here "Israelites" refers only to the Israelite soldiers and not to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "the Israelite soldiers surprised" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

fled before them

Alternate translation: "ran away from them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [Moab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israelite soldiers](#)
- [But when they...the area where the](#)
- [the soldiers from Moab](#)
- [from Moab](#)

ULT

24 When they came to the camp of [Israel](#), then [Israel](#) rose up and they struck [Moab](#). Then they fled away from their presence but they came into it, in order to strike [Moab](#).

UST

24 [But when they](#) reached [the area where the Israelite soldiers](#) had set up their tents, the Israelites attacked the soldiers [from Moab](#) and forced them to retreat. The Israelite soldiers pursued [the soldiers from Moab](#) and killed many of them.

2 Kings 3:25

Kir Hareseth

This is the capital of Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

was left with its rocks in place

The walls and buildings of the city were made of stones. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “still had its stone walls and buildings in place” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with slings

A “sling” is piece of animal skin with long cords at both ends in which a person can put a stone or other small, hard object and throw it a long distance.

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- good

Translation Words - UST

- Whenever they passed fertile
- the fruit

ULT

²⁵ Then they would tear down the cities, and every good portion each man would throw down his stone so they would fill it. Also they would stop up every spring of waters and they would make every good tree fall. As far as at the Kir Hareseth each allowed its stones to remain, but the slingers surrounded and they struck it.

UST

²⁵ The Israelites also destroyed their cities. Whenever they passed fertile fields, they threw rocks on those fields until the fields were covered with rocks. They stopped water from flowing from the springs and cut down the fruit trees. Finally, only the capital city, Kir Hareseth, remained. The Israelite soldiers who threw stones with slings surrounded the city and attacked it.

2 Kings 3:26

King Mesha

Translate the name of this king the same as you did in [2 Kings 3:4](#).

that the battle was lost

Alternate translation: "that his army was being defeated"

seven hundred swordsmen

"700 swordsmen" (See: [Numbers](#))

swordsmen

soldiers who fight with swords

break through

"force their way through." There were many soldiers fighting on the battlefield which made it difficult to move through the crowd.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [had grown stronger](#)
- [a sword](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Moab](#)
- [that](#)
- [who fought with swords, and they tried to force a way through the Israelite lines of soldiers to escape](#)

ULT

²⁶ When [the king of Moab](#) saw that the battle [had grown stronger](#) than him, then he took with him 700 men wielding [a sword](#) in order to break through to [the king of](#) Edom, but they were not able.

UST

²⁶ When [the king of Moab](#) realized [that](#) his army was being defeated, he took with him seven hundred men [who fought with swords, and they tried to force a way through the Israelite lines of soldiers to escape](#) to get help from [the king](#) of Edom, whom they hoped would join them, but they were unable to escape.

2 Kings 3:27

offered him as a burnt offering

King Mesha burned his son with fire until he died. He did this as an offering to Chemosh, the false god of Moab. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

So there was great anger against Israel

Here the word “anger” can be expressed as a verb. There are two possibilities for who is angry here: (1) The Moabite soldiers. Alternate translation: “So the Moabite soldiers were very angry with Israel” or (2) God. Alternate translation: “So God was very angry with Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his son](#)
- [as a burnt offering](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and they returned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [and...as a sacrifice](#)
- [the Israelite army](#)
- [and went back](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then he took [his son](#), the first-born who would have reigned in his place, and he offered him [as a burnt offering](#) upon the wall. As a result there was great wrath against [Israel](#), so they journeyed away from him [and they returned](#) to the land.

UST

²⁷ Then the king of Moab took his oldest [son](#), who would have become the next king, and killed him and offered him [as a sacrifice](#) to their god Chemosh, burning him on top of the city wall. Then God became very angry at [the Israelite army](#), so the army left [and went back](#) to their own land.

2 Kings 4

2 Kings 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elisha continues with a group of stories about the miracles Elisha did. (See: [2 Kings 4-6](#) and [miracle, wonder, sign](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Widow

Elisha helps a widow financially, and he correctly prophesies that a barren woman would conceive and have a baby by the next year. Later, when that child dies, Elisha miraculously causes him to come back to life. Also, Elisha causes a poisonous food to no longer be harmful, and he miraculously feeds 100 people with only 20 loaves of bread.

2 Kings 4:1

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

Your servant my husband

Alternate translation: “My husband, who was your servant”

creditor

person who lends other people money

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the prophets
- cried out
- Elisha
- Your servant
- your servant
- as slaves
- you...know
- a fearer of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- of Yahweh's prophets came
- of Yahweh's prophets came
- Yahweh very much. But now someone to whom he owed a lot of money has come to me
- Elisha
- and cried
- who worked with you
- out...him
- be his slaves
- out...him
- know

ULT

¹ Now a woman, one of the wives of the sons of the prophets cried out to Elisha, saying, “Your servant, my husband, has died, and you yourself know that your servant was a fearer of Yahweh. Now the money lender has come to take two of my children for himself as slaves.”

UST

¹ One day the widow of one of Yahweh's prophets came to Elisha and cried out to him, “My husband, who worked with you, is dead. You know that he revered Yahweh very much. But now someone to whom he owed a lot of money has come to me. I cannot pay him back, so he is threatening to take away my two sons to be his slaves as payment!”

2 Kings 4:2

Your servant has nothing

The woman refers to herself as Elisha's servant to show him honor.

nothing in the house, except a pot of oil

This is an exaggeration. The only valuable thing she had was a jar of oil. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elisha](#)
- [in the house](#)
- [in the house](#)
- [oil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha](#)
- [olive oil](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [We have](#)

ULT

² So [Elisha](#) said to her, "What should I do for you? Tell to me, what is there for you [in the house](#)?" Then she replied, "There is nothing for your maidservant at all [in the house](#), except for a flask of [oil](#)."

UST

² [Elisha](#) replied, "What can I do to help you? Tell me, what do you have in your house?" She replied, "We have only a container of [olive oil](#). [We have](#) nothing else."

2 Kings 4:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Go

Translation Words - UST

- Go to

ULT

³ Then he said, “Go, ask for vessels for yourself from the outside, from all of your neighbors, empty vessels. You should not collect a few.

UST

³ Elisha said, “Go to your neighbors and borrow from them as many empty jars as you can.

2 Kings 4:4

you must go inside

This means to go inside their house. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “you must go inside your house” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with your sons](#)

ULT

⁴ Then you should go in and you should shut the door behind you and behind [your sons](#), and you should pour into all those vessels. Then the full ones you should set aside.”

UST

⁴ Then take the jars into your house [with your sons](#). Shut the door. Then pour olive oil from your container into the other jars. When each jar is full, set it aside and fill another jar. Keep doing that until all the jars are full.”

2 Kings 4:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- her sons

Translation Words - UST

- Her sons kept bringing jars

ULT

⁵ So she went away from being with him and she shut the door behind her and behind her sons. They were bringing to her, and she continued pouring.

UST

⁵ So she did what Elisha told her to do. Her sons kept bringing jars to her, and she kept filling them.

2 Kings 4:6

the vessels

Alternate translation: "the jars"

Translation Words - ULT

- her son

Translation Words - UST

- one of her sons

ULT

⁶ Now it happened after the filling of the vessels that she said to her son, "Bring to me another vessel." But he replied to her, "There is not another vessel." Then the oil stopped.

UST

⁶ Soon all the jars were full. So she said to one of her sons, "Bring me another jar!" But he replied, "There are no more jars!" Right then the olive oil stopped flowing.

2 Kings 4:7

the man of God

This refers to Elisha. Alternate translation: “Elisha, the man of God”
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

live with your sons on the rest

This is an idiom. It means to use the money to buy the things that they need, such as food and clothing. Alternate translation: “use the rest of the money for you and your sons for what you need to live”
(See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Go](#)
- [along with your sons](#)
- [you can live](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha](#)
- [Now sell](#)
- [and there will be enough extra money to keep buying food](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁷ Then she came and she reported to the man of [God](#). So he replied, “[Go](#), sell the oil, and pay your debt, so you [along with your sons, you can live](#) on the rest.”

UST

⁷ When she told [Elisha](#) what had happened, he said to her, “[Now sell](#) the oil. And with the money you get, pay what you owe, [and there will be enough extra money to keep buying food](#) for yourself and your sons.” So she did that.

2 Kings 4:8

Shunem

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

she urged him to eat food with her

This means that she asked him to stop and have a meal at her house. Alternate translation: “she asked him to come to her house to have a meal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

passed by

Alternate translation: “traveled through Shunem”

Translation Words - ULT

- [when...passed over](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [bread](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha](#)
- [went](#)
- [for a meal](#)
- [to eat a meal](#)

ULT

⁸ Now the day came [when Elisha passed over](#) to Shunem and there was a prominent woman. Then she prevailed upon him to eat [bread](#). So it would happen whenever he passed by, he would turn in to there in order to eat [bread](#).

UST

⁸ One day [Elisha went](#) to the city of Shunem. There was a wealthy woman who lived there with her husband. One day she invited Elisha to her house [for a meal](#). Elisha went there, and from then on every time Elisha was in Shunem he went to their house [to eat a meal](#).

2 Kings 4:9

See, now I realize

Alternate translation: "Now I understand"

who is always passing by

Alternate translation: "who travels by regularly"

Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- holy
- God

Translation Words - UST

- I am sure
- is a prophet who brings messages
- from God

ULT

⁹ Then she said to her husband, "Look, please, I know that he is a holy man of God always passing by us.

UST

⁹ One day the woman said to her husband, "I am sure that this man who often comes here is a prophet who brings messages from God.

2 Kings 4:10

Let us

Here “us” refers to the important woman and her husband.

Translation Words - ULT

- and we will set up

Translation Words - UST

- and put

ULT

¹⁰ Please, let us make a little upper chamber in a wall and we will set up for him there a bed, and a table, and a chair, and a lampstand, so it will be upon his coming to us he may turn in to there.”

UST

¹⁰ I think we should make a small room for him on our flat roof, and put a bed, a table, a chair, and a lamp in it. If we do that, whenever he comes here, he will have a place to stay.” So they did that.

2 Kings 4:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹¹ Now the day happened when he came to there, and he turned in to the upper chamber and he took rest in there.

UST

¹¹ One day Elisha returned to Shunem, and he went up to that room to rest.

2 Kings 4:12

Gehazi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Call this Shunammite

“Call the Shunammite woman.” This refers to the woman from Shunem that Elisha was staying with.

Translation Words - ULT

- [his young man](#)
- [Call](#)
- [So he called](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his servant](#)
- [Tell](#)
- [So the servant went and told her](#)

ULT

¹² Then he said to Gehazi [his young man](#), “[Call](#) for this Shunammite woman.” [So he called](#) for her, and she stood in his presence.

UST

¹² He said to [his servant](#) Gehazi, “[Tell](#) the woman that I want to speak to her.” [So the servant went and told her](#). When she came to the doorway of Elisha’s room,

2 Kings 4:13

You have gone to all this trouble to care for us

The phrase “gone to all this trouble” is an idiom that means to make great effort to do something. Alternate translation: “You have made a great effort to care for us” or “You have worked very hard to take care of us” (See: [Idiom](#))

What can be done for you

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “What can we do for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Can we speak for you

Here Elisha is asking if she would like for him to speak to the king or army commander to make a request for her. The implicit meaning of this question can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Can we make a request for you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I live among my own people

The woman is implying that she does not need anything because her family cares for her needs. Alternate translation: “I live surrounded by my family, and because they take care of me, I have no needs” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the prince of
- I

Translation Words - UST

- go to the king or the army commander
- your master
- I

ULT

13 Then he said to him, “Please, say to her, ‘Look, you have worked tirelessly on our behalf by all this trouble. What is there to do for you, to speak on your behalf to [the king](#) or to [the prince of the army](#)?’” But she replied, “[I](#) am staying in the midst of my people.”

UST

13 Elisha said to Gehazi, “Tell her that we are both grateful for all the kind things that she has done for us. Then ask her what we can do for her. Ask, ‘Do you want me to [go to the king or the army commander](#) to request something for you?’” Gehazi gave her this message. She replied, “No, [your master](#) does not need to do that, because my family are able to give me what [I](#) need.”

2 Kings 4:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

¹⁴ So he said, "Then, what to do for her?" So Gehazi replied, "Actually, there is not a son for her, and her husband is old."

UST

¹⁴ Later, Elisha asked Gehazi, "What do you think that we can do for that woman?" He replied, "Well, she has no son, and her husband is an old man."

2 Kings 4:15

Call her

Alternate translation: "Ask her to come to see me"

When he had called her

Alternate translation: "When Gehazi had called her"

the door

This refers to the doorway. Alternate translation: "the doorway" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for her](#)
- [and he called](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Gehazi went and called her](#)
- [And when the woman returned](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Then he said, "Call [for her](#)," [and he called](#) for her. Then she stood at the entrance.

UST

¹⁵ Elisha told Gehazi, "Call her back again." [So Gehazi went and called her.](#) [And when the woman returned](#), as she stood in the doorway,

2 Kings 4:16

a son

Alternate translation: "your son"

my master and man of God

The woman uses both of these names to refer to Elisha.

your servant

The woman refers to herself as Elisha's servant to show him honor.

Translation Words - ULT

- At...appointed time
- revived
- a son
- my master
- the...God

Translation Words - UST

- next year
- your infant son
- in your arms
- God
- life, live, living, alive

ULT

¹⁶ Then he said, "At this appointed time, at the very time, revived, you will be embracing a son." However she replied, "No, my master, the man of God, do not lie to your bondservant."

UST

¹⁶ Elisha said to her, "About this time next year you will be holding your infant son in your arms." But she protested, "Oh, Sir, you are a prophet who brings messages from God, so please do not deceive me by saying things like that!"

2 Kings 4:17

at the same time in the following year

Alternate translation: "during the same season the next year"

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- at...appointed time
- revived
- Elisha

Translation Words - UST

- a son
- at that time the following year
- at that time the following year
- just like Elisha had predicted

ULT

¹⁷ So the woman became pregnant and she brought forth a son at this appointed time, at that very time, revived, that Elisha had spoken to her.

UST

¹⁷ But a few months later, the woman became pregnant, and she gave birth to a son at that time the following year, just like Elisha had predicted.

2 Kings 4:18

When the child had grown

Alternate translation: "When the child was older"

Translation Words - ULT

- the boy
- that he went out
- his father
- the harvesters

Translation Words - UST

- the child was growing up
- he went out
- see his father
- harvesting grain

ULT

¹⁸ When the boy had grown, then the day happened that he went out to his father, to the harvesters.

UST

¹⁸ When the child was growing up, one day he went out to the fields to see his father, who was working with the men who were harvesting grain.

2 Kings 4:19

My head, my head.

The child said this because his head hurt. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "My head hurts! My head hurts!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his father
- My head
- my head
- the young man

Translation Words - UST

- My head hurts! My head hurts
- My head hurts! My head hurts
- His father
- one of the servants

ULT

¹⁹ Then he said to his father, "My head, my head." So he said to the young man, "Carry him to his mother."

UST

¹⁹ Suddenly the boy exclaimed, "My head hurts! My head hurts!" His father said to one of the servants, "Carry him home to his mother!"

2 Kings 4:20

the child sat on her knees until noon and then died

Here the woman's knees refer to her lap. She held her son in her lap until he died. Alternate translation: "she held him on her lap until noon and then he died" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [when he died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the boy died](#)

ULT

²⁰ So he carried him and he brought him to his mother. Then he sat on her knees until high noon [when he died](#).

UST

²⁰ So the servant carried him home, and his mother held him on her lap. But at noontime [the boy died](#).

2 Kings 4:21

on the bed of the man of God

This was the bed in the room she had prepared for Elisha when he traveled through Shunem. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the man of God

Alternate translation: "Elisha, the man of God"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [and she went out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to the prophet's room](#)
- [She left him there and went out and](#)

ULT

²¹ So she got up and she laid him on the bed of the man of [God](#). Then she shut him in, [and she went out](#).

UST

²¹ She carried him up the steps [to the prophet's room](#) and laid him on the bed. [She left him there and went out and](#) shut the door.

2 Kings 4:22

that I may hurry to the man of God and then come back

The woman told her husband she was going to see Elisha but she did not say that she was going because their son had died. This implicit information may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that I may hurry to the man of God and then come back." But she did not tell her husband that their son had died" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then she called
- the young men
- God
- and I may return

Translation Words - UST

- servants
- to the prophet, and then
- come back
- But she did not tell her husband that their son had died

ULT

²² Then she called to her husband, and she said, "Please send to me one of the young men and one of the donkeys so that I may rush to the man of God and I may return."

UST

²² She then called out to her husband, saying, "Send to me one of the servants and a donkey so that I can ride on it quickly to the prophet, and then come back!" But she did not tell her husband that their son had died.

2 Kings 4:23

It will be all right

The woman states this, knowing this will be the case if her husband does as she requests. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Everything will be all right if you do as I ask" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are...going
- a Sabbath
- Peace

Translation Words - UST

- the day when we celebrate the festival of the
- replied, "Just do what I requested and everything will be all right
- walk, walked

ULT

²³ Then he said, "Why are you [going](#) to him today? It is not a new moon nor a [Sabbath](#)." However she replied, "[Peace](#)."

UST

²³ Her husband called out to her and said, "Why do you want to go today? This is not [the day when we celebrate the festival of the](#) new moon, and it is not a Sabbath day!" But she only [replied, "Just do what I requested and everything will be all right."](#)

2 Kings 4:24

she saddled a donkey

The woman did not saddle the donkey, rather the servant would have saddled it for her. Alternate translation: “she had her servant saddle a donkey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [her young man](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [her servant](#)

ULT

²⁴ Then she saddled the donkey and she said to [her young man](#), “Lead on and go! Do not hold back on account of me to ride except if I order to you.”

UST

²⁴ So she saddled the donkey and said to [her servant](#), “Lead the donkey! Do not slow down for me unless I tell you to do so!”

2 Kings 4:25

So she went and came to the man of God at Mount Carmel

Alternate translation: "So she traveled toward Mount Carmel where Elisha, the man of God, was"

So when the man of God saw her in the distance

Alternate translation: "While she was still far off, and Elisha saw her coming"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- his young man

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha was
- in the distance
- Gehazi

ULT

²⁵ So she went and she came to the man of **God** at Mount Carmel. Now it happened upon the man of **God** seeing her from afar that he said to Gehazi **his young man**, "Here is this Shunammite woman."

UST

²⁵ As they approached Mount Carmel, where **Elisha was**, Elisha saw her **in the distance**. He said to **Gehazi**, "Look, the woman from Shunem is coming!"

2 Kings 4:26

It is alright

Alternate translation: "It is well" or "Yes, everything is fine"

Translation Words - ULT

- Peace

Translation Words - UST

- Yes, everything is fine

ULT

²⁶ Now please run to meet her and say to her, 'Is there tranquility for you? Is there tranquility for your husband? Is there tranquility for the boy?'" Then she replied, "**Peace.**"

UST

²⁶ Run to her, and ask her if everything is all right with her and her husband and with her child!" So Gehazi ran to her and asked her, but she said nothing to Gehazi except, "**Yes, everything is fine.**"

2 Kings 4:27

the mountain

Alternate translation: "Mount Carmel"

she caught hold of his feet

This implies that she knelt or laid on the ground in front of him and grabbed his feet. Alternate translation: "she dropped down on the ground in front of him and put her hands around his feet" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Yahweh has hidden the problem from me, and has told me nothing

Elisha can see that the woman is upset but Yahweh has not revealed to him the cause of her problem.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- her temperament
- however Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha was
- but Elisha
- Do not push her away
- but Yahweh has

ULT

²⁷ When she came to the man of God, to the mountain, then she held on to his feet. Then Gehazi approached in order to push her away but the man of God said, "Let loose of her, for her temperament is bitter for her, however Yahweh has concealed from me, and he has revealed nothing to me."

UST

²⁷ But when she came to where Elisha was, she prostrated herself on the ground in front of Elisha and took hold of his feet. Gehazi started to push her away, but Elisha said, "Do not push her away! Something is troubling her very much, but Yahweh has not told me what it is."

2 Kings 4:28

Did I ask you for a son, my master? Did I not say, 'Do not deceive me'?

The woman uses these rhetorical questions to show that she is upset about what has happened. She is speaking about her conversation with Elisha when he told her that she was going to have a son. These questions may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I did not ask you to give me a son, but I did ask you not to lie to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a son](#)
- [my master](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [O sir](#)
- [a son](#)

ULT

²⁸ Then she said, "Did I ask for [a son](#) by the help of [my master](#)? Did I not say, 'Do not give me a false hope?'"

UST

²⁸ Then she said to Elisha, "[O sir](#), I did not request you to enable me to give birth to [a son](#), but I did say, 'Do not lie to me.'"

2 Kings 4:29

Dress for travel

Alternate translation: "Get ready to travel"

If you meet any man, do not greet him, and if anyone greets you, do not answer him

Elisha wanted Gehazi to travel as quickly as possible, without even stopping to talk to anyone.

Translation Words - ULT

- Gird up
- in your hand
- you should...bless him
- should bless you
- do...answer him
- Then you should set
- the face of
- the young man

Translation Words - UST

- Get ready to leave immediately
- my staff stick
- Do not stop to talk to anyone on the way
- Do not stop to talk to anyone on the way
- Go quickly to where her son is
- Go quickly to where her son is
- the child's
- face. If you do that, perhaps Yahweh will cause him to live again

ULT

²⁹ So he said to Gehazi, "Gird up your loins and take my staff in your hand, then go. Even if you should find anyone, you should not bless him, and if anyone should bless you, do not answer him. Then you should set my staff on the face of the young man."

UST

²⁹ Then Elisha realized that something must have happened to her son. So he said to Gehazi, "Get ready to leave immediately. Take my staff stick and go to her home. Do not stop to talk to anyone on the way. Go quickly to where her son is and lay the staff on the child's face. If you do that, perhaps Yahweh will cause him to live again."

2 Kings 4:30

As Yahweh lives, and as you live

This shows that the mother is taking an oath. The mother compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elisha are alive to the certainty of what she is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live" or "I solemnly promise that"

Translation Words - ULT

- the young man
- Yahweh
- As...is alive
- you yourself
- I would leave you

Translation Words - UST

- But the boy's
- Just as certain as Yahweh
- lives
- live
- I will not go home if

ULT

³⁰ Then the mother of the young man said, "As Yahweh is alive and as you yourself are alive, if ever I would leave you." So he rose up and he went after her.

UST

³⁰ But the boy's mother said, "Just as certain as Yahweh lives and you live, I will not go home if you do not go with me." So Elisha returned with her to her home.

2 Kings 4:31

but the child did not speak or hear

This means that the child was not alive. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “but the child did not show any signs of being alive” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

has not awakened

Here being dead is spoken of as being asleep. Alternate translation: “is still dead” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and he set
- the face of
- the young man
- The young man
- So he returned

Translation Words - UST

- When he got to the woman's home, he laid the staff
- the child's
- but the child
- The child is still dead
- So Gehazi returned

ULT

³¹ Now Gehazi passed by ahead of them and he set the staff on the face of the young man, but there was not a sound nor was there attentiveness. So he returned to meet him and he told to him saying, “The young man has not awakened.”

UST

³¹ But Gehazi hurried quickly ahead. When he got to the woman's home, he laid the staff on the child's face, but the child did not move or say anything. So Gehazi returned to meet Elisha along the road, and told him, “The child is still dead.”

2 Kings 4:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- to the house
- the young man

Translation Words - UST

- When Elisha
- the house
- he saw that the boy was

ULT

³² When Elisha came in to the house, then here, the young man was dead, laid on his bed.

UST

³² When Elisha reached the house, he saw that the boy was lying dead on his bed.

2 Kings 4:33

So Elisha went in and shut the door on the child and himself

Alternate translation: "So Elisha went by himself into the room where the child lay, closed the door"

Translation Words - ULT

- and he prayed
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- prayed
- Yahweh

ULT

³³ So he went in and he shut the door behind the two of them, and he prayed to Yahweh.

UST

³³ Elisha went into the room by himself and shut the door and prayed to Yahweh.

2 Kings 4:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the boy
- the boy
- and he put
- his palms
- the flesh of

Translation Words - UST

- boy
- Then the boy's
- and put
- body
- hand

ULT

³⁴ Then he went up and he lay on the boy, and he put his mouth on his mouth, and his eyes on his eyes, and his palms on his palms. Then he prostrated himself over him, and grew warm the flesh of the boy.

UST

³⁴ Then he lay down on the boy's body, and put his mouth on the boy's mouth, and put his eyes on the boy's eyes, and put his hands on the boy's hands. Then the boy's body started to become warm!

2 Kings 4:35

stretched himself out on the boy

Alternate translation: "laid on top of the boy again"

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he returned
- around the house
- the young man
- the young man

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha got up and...back
- in the room several times
- the boy's body
- Then he

ULT

³⁵ Then he returned and he walked around the house once here and once there. Then he went up and he prostrated himself on him. Next the young man sneezed, even seven times, and the young man opened his eyes!

UST

³⁵ Elisha got up and walked back and forth in the room several times. Then he stretched his body on the boy's body again. The boy sneezed seven times and opened his eyes!

2 Kings 4:36

the Shunammite

Alternate translation: "the Shunammite woman"

Translation Words - ULT

- So he called
- So he called her
- Call
- your son

Translation Words - UST

- summoned
- and called her
- Call
- your son

ULT

³⁶ So he called to Gehazi and he said, "Call to this Shunammite woman!" So he called her. When she came to him, then he said, "Take up your son."

UST

³⁶ Then Elisha summoned Gehazi. He said, "Call the boy's mother." So Gehazi went and called her, and when she came in, Elisha said, "Here, take your son."

2 Kings 4:37

Then she lay facedown on the ground at his feet and bowed to the ground

The woman bowed down before Elisha as a sign of great respect and appreciation. Alternate translation: "Then she bowed in front of Elisha with her face to the ground to show him her gratitude" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [indeed she fell down](#)
- [and she bowed down](#)
- [to the ground](#)
- [her son](#)
- [and she went out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [She gratefully prostrated herself](#)
- [She gratefully prostrated herself](#)
- [at](#)
- [Then she](#)
- [her son and...him downstairs](#)

ULT

³⁷ When she came in, [indeed she fell down](#) at his feet [and she bowed down to the ground](#). Then she took up [her son](#) and [she went out](#).

UST

³⁷ [She gratefully prostrated herself at](#) Elisha's feet. [Then she](#) picked up [her son](#) and carried [him downstairs](#).

2 Kings 4:38

the sons of the prophets

This is an idiom. It does not mean that they were actually the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of men who were prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

stew

This is a dish that is usually made of meat and vegetables cooked in a pot with liquid.

Translation Words - ULT

- Then Elisha
- returned
- to the Gilgal area
- and the sons of
- for the sons of
- the prophets
- the prophets
- to his young man

Translation Words - UST

- Then Elisha
- returned
- to Gilgal
- But at that time...in that area
- men
- One day as the association of prophets
- men
- his servant

ULT

38 Then Elisha returned to the Gilgal area. Now a famine was in the land, and the sons of the prophets were sitting in his presence. Then he said to his young man, “Set the large pot on the fire and boil soup for the sons of the prophets.”

UST

38 Then Elisha returned to Gilgal. But at that time there was a famine in that area. One day as the association of prophets was sitting in front of Elisha listening to what he was teaching, he said to his servant, “Put a large pot on the fire and make some stew for these men.”

2 Kings 4:39

wild gourds

These vegetables were growing wild, meaning someone had not planted them.

fill the fold of his robe

He lifted the bottom edge of his robe up to his waist to make a place to carry more gourds than he could carry with his hands only.

but did not know what kind they were

Since they did not know what kind of gourds they were they did not know whether or not they were safe to eat. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "but did not know if they were good or bad to eat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now...went out
- in order to gather
- So he gathered
- a vine in
- they did...know

Translation Words - UST

- gather
- and put them
- But he gathered
- and put them
- know

ULT

³⁹ Now one went out into the field in order to gather herbs, and he found a vine in a field. So he gathered from it a wild cucumber out of a field, the fullness of his garment. Then he came in and he sliced up into the pot of soup, for they did not know.

UST

³⁹ One of the prophets went out to the fields to gather some vegetables. But he gathered only some wild gourds and put them in his cloak and brought them back. He shredded them and put them in the pot, but he did not know that the gourds were poisonous.

2 Kings 4:40

they poured out the stew

Alternate translation: "they poured the stew into bowls"

there is death in the pot

This means that there was something in the pot that could kill them, not that there is something dead in the pot. Alternate translation: "there is something in the pot that will kill us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cried out](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cried out](#)
- [Our master](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ So they poured out for the men to eat. Now it happened when they were eating of the stew, that they [cried out](#) and they said, "Death is in the pot, O Man of [God](#)!" So they were not able to eat.

UST

⁴⁰ He served the stew to the prophets, but after the men had eaten only a couple bites, they [cried out](#), "[Our master](#), there is something in the pot that will kill us!" So they would not eat it.

2 Kings 4:41

He threw it into the pot

Alternate translation: "He added it to the stew in the pot"

Pour it out for the people

Alternate translation: "Serve it to the people"

Translation Words - ULT

- for the people
- so that they will eat
- harmful

Translation Words - UST

- It is all right now
- You can eat it
- And they

ULT

⁴¹ So he said, "Now bring some flour," and he threw into the pot. Then he said, "Pour out for the people, so that they will eat," and there was not anything harmful in the pot.

UST

⁴¹ Elisha said, "Bring me some flour." They brought him some, and he threw it in the pot and he said, "It is all right now. You can eat it." And they ate it, and it did not harm them.

2 Kings 4:42

Baal Shalishah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty loaves

“20 loaves” (See: [Numbers](#))

from the new harvest

Alternate translation: “made from the grain from the new harvest”

fresh ears of grain

“fresh heads of grain.” This refers to grain from the new harvest.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- bread
- loaves of...bread
- firstfruits
- barley
- to the people
- so they will eat

Translation Words - UST

- to Elisha
- barley
- made from the first
- made from the first
- grain
- the group of prophets
- so that they can eat it

ULT

⁴² Now a man came from Baal Shalishah and he brought to the man of God bread, firstfruits, 20 loaves of barley bread and produce in his sack. Then he said, “Give to the people so they will eat.”

UST

⁴² One day a man from the city of Baal Shalishah brought to Elisha a sack of freshly cut grain and twenty loaves of barley bread, made from the first grain that they had harvested that year. Elisha said to his servant, “Give it to the group of prophets, so that they can eat it.”

2 Kings 4:43

What, should I set this before a hundred men?

The man uses this rhetorical question to imply that this is not enough bread to feed 100 men. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "That is not enough to feed a hundred men!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

a hundred men

"100 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the one serving him](#)
- [to the people](#)
- [so they will eat](#)
- [Eat](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Do you think that we can feed](#)
- [of us prophets with only](#)
- [eat it](#)
- [there will be plenty for all of them](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁴³ However [the one serving him](#) said, "How do I set this in the presence of 100 men?" But he replied, "Give [to the people, so they will eat](#), for thus says Yahweh, 'Eat and have some leftover.'"

UST

⁴³ But his servant exclaimed, "[Do you think that we can feed](#) a hundred of us [prophets with only](#) that much? How can I place this before them all?" But Elisha replied, "Give it to the prophets so that they can [eat it](#), because Yahweh says that [there will be plenty for all of them](#), and there will be some left over!"

2 Kings 4:44

the word of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is referred to by what he said. This phrase is a metonym for Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they ate](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they ate all that they wanted](#)
- [just as Yahweh had promised](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ So he set in their presence [and they ate](#) and they had some leftover, according to the word of [Yahweh](#).

UST

⁴⁴ After his servant gave it to the prophets, [they ate all that they wanted](#), and there was food left over, [just as Yahweh had promised](#).

2 Kings 5

2 Kings 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

2 Kings 5:1

in his master's view

"sight." The king's "view" represents what he thinks about something.
Alternate translation: "in the king's opinion" (See: [Metonymy](#))

because by him Yahweh had given victory to Aram

Here "Aram" refers to the Aramean army. Alternate translation: "because through Naaman, Yahweh had given victory to the Aramean army"

Translation Words - ULT

- Now Naaman
- the prince of
- the king of
- his master
- in countenance
- Yahweh
- mighty
- in strength

Translation Words - UST

- named Naaman
- was the
- commander
- Yahweh
- and the king of Aram
- admired and honored
- Naaman was also a strong
- and brave soldier

ULT

¹ Now Naaman, the prince of the army of the king of Aram, was a great man in the presence of his master, and he was lifted up in countenance, because through him Yahweh had given deliverance to Aram. Also the man was mighty in strength although he had been stricken with leprosy.

UST

¹ A man named Naaman was the commander of the army of Aram. Yahweh had enabled him to win many victories, and the king of Aram admired and honored him. Naaman was also a strong and brave soldier, but he had leprosy.

2 Kings 5:2

The Arameans had gone out

Here the “Arameans” refer to the Aramean soldiers. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

raiding in bands

“in small groups attacking.” This means to go out attacking an enemy in small groups.

Translation Words - ULT

- [had gone out](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [a young...girl](#)
- [Naaman](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [and they had captured](#)
- [a...girl](#)
- [Naaman's](#)

ULT

² Now Aram [had gone out](#) in raids and they had taken captive from the land of [Israel a young](#) little [girl](#). Then she was in the presence of the wife of [Naaman](#).

UST

² Some time previously, groups of soldiers had invaded the land [of Israel](#), [and they had captured](#) a young [girl](#) and taken her to Aram. She became a servant for [Naaman's](#) wife.

2 Kings 5:3

The girl said to her mistress

The girl from Israel, who had been captured by the Aramean soldiers, spoke to Naaman's wife.

my master

Here "my master" refers to Naaman.

Translation Words - ULT

- my master
- the prophet
- he would restore

Translation Words - UST

- to see the prophet
- your husband
- from his leprosy

ULT

³ Then she said to her powerful woman, "O that my master was in the presence of the prophet who is in Samaria, since he would restore him of his leprosy."

UST

³ One day, that girl said to her, "I wish that my master would go to see the prophet in the city of Samaria. That prophet would heal your husband from his leprosy."

2 Kings 5:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel

ULT

⁴ So he came in and he reported to his master, saying “the young girl who is from the land of Israel had spoken as such and as such.”

UST

⁴ Naaman’s wife told her husband what the girl from Israel had said, and Naaman told that to the king.

2 Kings 5:5

I will send a letter

The king is going to give the letter to Naaman to take with him to the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "I will send a letter with you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ten talents of silver, six thousand pieces of gold

"10 talents of silver, 6,000 pieces of gold." This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "330 kilograms of silver, 6,000 pieces of gold" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

took with him ten ... clothes

This were gifts from the king of Aram for the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "took with him ten ... clothes, which were gifts for the king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of
- Go
- Israel
- in his hand
- silver
- in gold

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- gold, golden
- hand
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- silver
- walk, walked

ULT

⁵ So the king of Aram said, "Go, go on, and let me send a letter to the king of Israel." So he went and he took in his hand ten rounds of silver and 6,000 in gold, along with ten changes of garments.

UST

⁵⁻⁶ The king said to him, "Very well, go and see the prophet. I will write a letter for you to take to the king of Israel, saying that I sent you." The king wrote in the letter, "I am sending this letter with my army commander Naaman, who serves me faithfully. I want you to heal him of his disease." So Naaman, assuming that the king of Israel was the prophet, took the letter and 330 kilograms of silver, 66 kilograms of gold, and ten sets of clothing, to give to the king of Israel, and he went to Samaria, taking along several servants.

2 Kings 5:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- Naaman
- my servant

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Naaman
- king, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁶ So he brought the letter to the king of Israel, saying, "So now when this letter comes to you, look, I have sent to you Naaman, my servant, that you may restore him from his leprosy."

UST

⁵⁻⁶ The king said to him, "Very well, go and see the prophet. I will write a letter for you to take to the king of Israel, saying that I sent you." The king wrote in the letter, "I am sending this letter with my army commander Naaman, who serves me faithfully. I want you to heal him of his disease." So Naaman, assuming that the king of Israel was the prophet, took the letter and 330 kilograms of silver, 66 kilograms of gold, and ten sets of clothing, to give to the king of Israel, and he went to Samaria, taking along several servants.

2 Kings 5:7

he tore his clothes

Often people would rip their clothes if they were in great distress. Alternate translation: "he ripped his clothes to show his distress" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Am I God, to kill and to make alive, that this man wants me to cure a man of his leprosy?

The king uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that the request of the king of Aram is outrageous and something he cannot do. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "The king of Aram must think I am some sort of God, with the power over death and life! He wants me to cure this man of his leprosy, but I cannot do that." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

It seems he is seeking to start an argument with me

The king of Israel did not believe the request to heal Naamam was the real reason for the letter. He thought the real reason was to start a fight. Alternate translation: "It seems he is looking for an excuse to start a fight with me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Israel
- by killing
- know

Translation Words - UST

- gave the letter to the king
- of Israel. The king read the letter
- or to die
- to attack

ULT

⁷ Now it happened when [the king of Israel](#) was reading the letter, that he tore his garments and he said, "Am I God, [by killing](#) and by making alive, that this one is sending to me in order to restore a man from his leprosy? For surely please [know](#) and see that he is seeking to provoke a quarrel against me."

UST

⁷ When he arrived in Samaria, he [gave the letter to the king of Israel. The king read the letter](#). Then, being very dismayed, the king tore his clothes and said, "I am not God! I am not able to cause people to live [or to die](#)! Why does the one who wrote this letter request me to cure this man of his leprosy? I do not have power to cure leprosy. The king of Aram is merely looking for an excuse [to attack us](#)!"

2 Kings 5:8

General Information:

Elisha talks to the King of Israel about Naaman.

Why have you torn your clothes?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize to the king that he does not need to be distressed and tear his clothes. Alternate translation: "There is no need to be distressed and tear your clothes." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- God
- the king of
- the king
- Israel
- in Israel
- that he may know
- a prophet

Translation Words - UST

- The prophet
- Elisha
- the king
- the king
- of Israel
- Israel
- find out
- I...a true prophet in

ULT

⁸ So it happened upon [Elisha](#), the man of [God](#), hearing that [the king of Israel](#) had torn his garments, that he sent to [the king](#) saying, "Why have you torn your garments? Please, let him come to me, [that he may know](#) that there is a [prophet in Israel](#)."

UST

⁸ [The prophet Elisha](#) heard why [the king of Israel](#) had torn his robe, so he sent a message to [the king](#), saying, "Why are you upset? Send Naaman to me, and he will [find out](#) that I am [a true prophet in Israel](#)."

2 Kings 5:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Naaman
- with his horses
- the house
- of Elisha

Translation Words - UST

- Naaman
- to Elisha's
- house
- horse, warhorse, horseback

ULT

⁹ So Naaman came with his horses and with his chariots, and he stood at the entrance of the house of Elisha.

UST

⁹ So Naaman went with his horses and chariots to Elisha's house and waited outside the door.

2 Kings 5:10

your flesh will be restored

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "your flesh will be well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you will be clean

this means that he will no longer be unclean. A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. God considers a person who has leprosy as being defiled and unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- a messenger
- Go
- and you must wash
- in the Jordan
- your flesh
- that...may return
- then be clean

Translation Words - UST

- But Elisha did not
- a messenger to Naaman
- Go
- to the Jordan River
- into the water
- Then...skin will be well
- and you will...leprosy
- no longer have

ULT

10 Then Elisha sent a messenger to him, saying, "Go and you must wash in the Jordan seven times, that your flesh may return to you, then be clean."

UST

10 But Elisha did not come to the door. Instead, he sent a messenger to Naaman to tell him, "Go to the Jordan River and go down seven times into the water. Then your skin will be well, and you will no longer have leprosy."

2 Kings 5:11

Look

This word is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

the name of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is referred to by his name. Alternate translation: "Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

over the place

Alternate translation: "over the diseased area of my skin" or "over my leprosy"

Translation Words - ULT

- Naaman
- he would come out
- surely
- and he would call
- on the name of
- Yahweh
- his God
- his hand

Translation Words - UST

- But Naaman became
- his hand
- and pray to
- and pray to
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and heal
- and heal

ULT

11 But Naaman became angry so he went away and he said, "Look, I said to myself **surely he would come out** and he would stand **and he would call on the name of Yahweh his God**, and he would wave **his hand** to the place so he would restore the leprosy.

UST

11 But Naaman became very angry. He said, "I thought that surely he would wave **his hand** over the leprosy, **and pray to Yahweh, and heal me!**

2 Kings 5:12

Are not Abanah and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel?

Naaman uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that the Abanah and the Pharpar are better rivers than the Jordan. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "The Abanah and the Pharpar Rivers, in my home country of Aram, are much better than any of the rivers of Israel! (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Abanah and Pharpar

These are the names of rivers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Can I not bathe in them and be clean?

Naaman uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he could have bathed in the other rivers easily. He believes that bathing in them could heal him just as bathing in the Jordan could. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I should have just bathed in them and been healed!" or "I could just as easily have bathed in them and been healed!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

went away in a rage

Alternate translation: "was very angry as he walked away"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Are...better](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in order that I would be clean](#)
- [in a rage](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have better](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [and cleansed](#)
- [in great disgust](#)

ULT

¹² Are not Abanah and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, [better](#) than all the waters of [Israel](#)? Can I not bathe in them [in order that I would be clean](#)?" So he turned and he went away [in a rage](#).

UST

¹² Surely the Abana River and the Pharpar River in Damascus in my own country of Aram [have better](#) water than any [in Israel](#)! Can I not go into my rivers at home and be healed [and cleansed](#)?" So he turned and walked away [in great disgust](#).

2 Kings 5:13

My father

The servants were showing respect to Naaman by addressing him as "my father" or "sir."

would you not have done it?

The servant uses this question to carefully rebuke Naaman. Alternate translation: "you surely would have done it!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

How much rather then

The servant is comparing how much more willing Naaman should be to obey a simple command since he is willing to obey a difficult one. Alternate translation: "How much more willing you should be to obey" or "Should you not be even more willing to obey" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

How much rather then, when he says to you to simply, 'Dip yourself and be clean?

The servant uses this rhetorical question to emphasize to Naaman that he should obey Elisha's command. This question can be written as statement. Alternate translation: "You should be even more willing to obey when he says to you simply, 'Dip yourself and be clean.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹³ Then [his servants](#) approached and they spoke to him and they said, "[My father](#), had [the prophet](#) pronounced for you some great thing, would you not have acted? Now, how much rather that he said to you, 'Wash [and be clean](#)?'"

UST

¹³ [But his servants came to him](#), and one of them said, "[Sir](#), if that [prophet](#) had told you to do something difficult, you would certainly have done it. So why do you refuse to do such a simple thing he asks, when he says, 'Go down seven times in the water [and be clean](#)?'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [his servants](#)
- [My father](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [and be clean](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But his servants came to him](#)
- [Sir](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [and be clean](#)

2 Kings 5:14

the man of God

Alternate translation: "Elisha, the man of God"

His flesh was restored again like the flesh of a little child

This speaks how smooth Namaan's skin is after he is healed by comparing it to the skin of a young child. Alternate translation: "His flesh was restored again and was as soft as the flesh of a young child" or "His skin was well again and was smooth like a young child's skin" (See: [Simile](#))

His flesh

Alternate translation: "His skin"

he was healed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "his leprosy was gone" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the Jordan](#)
- [God](#)
- [his flesh](#)
- [as flesh of](#)
- [Then...turned back](#)
- [a young...boy](#)
- [and he was clean](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Naaman...to the Jordan River](#)
- [a young child](#)
- [as the prophet...and his...like the...of](#)
- [healthy](#)
- [skin](#)
- [became](#)
- [smooth skin](#)

ULT

¹⁴ So he went down and he dipped [in the Jordan](#) seven times, in accordance with the word of the man of [God](#). Then [his flesh turned back as flesh of a young little boy](#), and he was clean.

UST

¹⁴ So Naaman went down [to the Jordan River](#) and went into the water seven times, [as the prophet](#) had instructed, and his skin became healthy, [like the smooth skin of a young child](#).

2 Kings 5:15

Look

This word is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

there is no God in all the earth except in Israel

Alternate translation: "the only God in all the earth is in Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he returned
- God
- God
- I know
- the earth
- in Israel
- a blessing
- your servant

Translation Words - UST

- back
- to Elisha
- God
- Now I know
- anywhere else in the world
- here in Israel
- gifts
- I

ULT

15 Then he returned to the man of God, he and all of his company, and he came and he stood in his presence. Now he said, "Look, please, I know that there is no God in all the earth except only in Israel. So now, please receive a blessing even along with your servant."

UST

15 Then Naaman and those who were with him went back to talk to Elisha. They stood in front of him, and Naaman said, "Now I know that there are no real gods anywhere else in the world, but there is the true God here in Israel! So now please accept these gifts that I have brought to you!"

2 Kings 5:16

As Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I

"As surely as I know that Yahweh lives, before whom I stand." Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty that he will not receive any gifts from Naaman. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "As surely as Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I promise you that I" (See: [Simile](#))

before whom I stand

Here serving Yahweh is spoken of as standing in his presence. Alternate translation: "whom I serve" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will receive nothing

This means that he will not accept any gifts. Alternate translation: "I will not take any gifts" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [As...is living](#)
- [I stand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh, the one...I](#)
- [serve](#)
- [lives](#)

ULT

¹⁶ But he replied, "As [Yahweh is living](#), whom [I stand](#) in his presence, I would not take anything. Then he pressed upon him to receive but he refused.

UST

¹⁶ But Elisha replied, "Just as certainly as [Yahweh, the one](#) whom [I serve](#), [lives](#), I will not accept any gifts." Naaman kept urging him to accept the gifts, but Elisha kept refusing.

2 Kings 5:17

If not

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "If you will not take the gifts I have brought for you" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

let there be given to your servant

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "let me have" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

two mule loads of earth

Naaman is asking to take soil from Israel and place it in sacks for two mules to carry home with him. He then plans to build an altar on the soil. Alternate translation: "as much soil from Israel as two mules can carry, so that I can build an altar to Yahweh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

your servant

Naaman refers to himself as Elisha's servant to honor him.

will offer neither burnt offering nor sacrifice to any god but Yahweh

This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: "will not offer burnt offering or sacrifice to any god but Yahweh" or "will only offer burnt offerings and sacrifices to Yahweh" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Naaman](#)
- [a load of](#)
- [to your servant](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [a burnt offering](#)
- [to...gods](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Naaman](#)
- [but I have one request. This soil here in Israel is Yahweh's soil](#)
- [I](#)
- [and put it in sacks](#)
- [will offer sacrifices](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [god](#)

ULT

¹⁷ So [Naaman](#) said, "Although not, please may [a load of](#) soil from a team of mules be given [to your servant](#), for [your servant](#) will not make [a burnt offering](#) or a sacrifice to other [gods](#) any longer, but only [to Yahweh](#)."

UST

¹⁷ Then [Naaman](#) said, "Very well, [but I have one request. This soil here in Israel is Yahweh's soil](#), so please allow me to take some soil from this place [and put it in sacks](#) on two mules. Then I will take it back home with me and make an altar on this soil. From now on, [I will offer sacrifices to Yahweh](#) on that altar. I will not offer sacrifices to any other [god](#)."

2 Kings 5:18

when my king

This is referring to the king of Aram, the king that Namaan works for.

he leans on my hand

"he supports himself on my arm." This means that Naaman assists the king when he bows in the house of Rimmon because the king is either old or sick.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- to your servant
- to your servant
- my master
- the house of
- in the house of
- in the house of (2)
- Rimmon
- Rimmon
- my hand
- so that I might bow myself down

Translation Words - UST

- However, when my master
- the temple
- worship
- worship (2)
- me
- I
- of the god Rimmon
- worship
- worship
- to...him, I ask
- will forgive
- Yahweh

ULT

18 In this matter Yahweh will grant forgiveness to your servant, when my master is coming into the house of Rimmon to order to worship in there, and he is leaning himself on my hand so that I might bow myself down in the house of Rimmon, when I am bowing myself down in the house of Rimmon, please may Yahweh grant forgiveness to your servant in this matter."

UST

18 However, when my master, the king, goes into the temple of the god Rimmon to worship him, I ask that Yahweh will forgive me because I will have to bow down, too."

2 Kings 5:19

Go in peace

Alternate translation: "Go home and do not worry" or "Leave without fear"

Translation Words - ULT

- Go
- land

Translation Words - UST

- Go home
- home

ULT

19 Then he replied to him, "Go in peace." So he went away from him some distance of land.

UST

19 Elisha replied, "Go home, and do not worry about that." So Naaman and his servants started to travel home.

2 Kings 5:20

He had traveled

Alternate translation: "Naaman had traveled"

Gehazi

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Kings 4:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Look

This word is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

has spared this Naaman the Aramean

Alternate translation: "has let Naaman the Aramean leave too easily"

by not receiving

Alternate translation: "by not accepting"

from his hands

Here Naaman is referred to by his hands to emphasize the act of giving. Alternate translation: "from him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

As Yahweh lives

"As surely as Yahweh lives." Here Gehazi compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty of what he has decided to do. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "As Yahweh lives, I promise" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the young man of
- Elisha
- God
- my master
- has held back
- Naaman
- from his hand
- Yahweh
- As...is living

Translation Words - UST

- But then
- servant
- my master

ULT

²⁰ Then Gehazi, the young man of Elisha, the man of God, said, "Look, my master has held back Naaman, this Aramean, from taking from his hand what he had brought. As Yahweh is living, surely if I ran after him then I would take something from him."

UST

²⁰ But then Elisha's servant Gehazi said to himself, "It is not good that my master has allowed this Aramean man to leave like this. He should have accepted his gifts. So just as certainly as Yahweh lives, I will go and catch up with Naaman and get something from him."

- has allowed...to leave
- like this
- accepted
- as Yahweh
- lives
- with Naaman

2 Kings 5:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Naaman
- Naaman
- then he dismounted

Translation Words - UST

- When Naaman
- to...with Naaman
- jumped out

ULT

²¹ So Gehazi pursued after Naaman. When Naaman saw someone running after him, then he dismounted from upon the chariot in order to meet him. Then he said, "Is there peace?"

UST

²¹ So Gehazi hurried to catch up with Naaman. When Naaman saw Gehazi running toward him, he stopped the chariot in which he was riding, jumped out, and went to see what Gehazi wanted. He asked him, "Is everything all right?"

2 Kings 5:22

of the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “from among the prophets there” (See: [Idiom](#))

Please give them a talent of silver and two changes of clothes

Gehazi is asking Naaman to give these things to him so that he can take them and give them to the prophets. Alternate translation: “Please give me a talent of silver and two changes of clothes to give to them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

See

This word is used here to draw someone’s attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Listen”

a talent of silver

This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “33 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [There is peace](#)
- [My master](#)
- [young men](#)
- [from the sons of](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yes](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [the descendants](#)
- [of Ephraim](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [of silver](#)

ULT

²² Then he said, “[There is peace](#). [My master](#) has sent me, saying, ‘Look, now this, two [young men from the sons of the prophets](#) have come to me from the hill country of [Ephraim](#). Please give to them a round of [silver](#) and two changes of garments.’”

UST

²² Gehazi replied, “[Yes](#), but two young [prophets](#) from the hill country where [the descendants of Ephraim](#) live have just arrived. [Elisha](#) has sent me to tell you that he would like thirty-three kilograms of [silver](#) and two sets of clothing to give to them.”

2 Kings 5:23

two talents

This can be written in modern measurements. This talents are of silver. Alternate translation: "two talents of silver" or "66 kilograms of silver" (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

laid them on two

Alternate translation: "gave them to"

Naaman urged Gehazi

Naaman urged him to take gifts. Alternate translation: "Naaman urged Gehazi to take the gifts" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Naaman](#)
- [in silver](#)
- [his young men](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Naaman](#)
- [of silver](#)
- [two of his servants to carry back to Elisha](#)

ULT

²³ Then [Naaman](#) replied, "I am pleased! Take two rounds." So he pressed upon him and he bound two rounds [in silver](#) in two bags, along with two changes of garments. Then he gave to two of [his young men](#), and they carried in his presence.

UST

²³ [Naaman](#) replied, "Certainly! You can have sixty-six kilograms [of silver](#)!" He urged Gehazi to take it. He also gave him two sets of clothing. He tied up the silver in two bags and gave them to [two of his servants to carry back to Elisha](#).

2 Kings 5:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- from their hand
- and he deposited
- in the house

Translation Words - UST

- the silver and the clothes from Naaman's servants
- things into his house and
- hid them

ULT

²⁴ When he came in to the fortress, then he took from their hand and he deposited in the house. Then he sent the men away, and they went.

UST

²⁴ But when they arrived at the hill where Elisha lived, Gehazi took the silver and the clothes from Naaman's servants and sent the servants back to Naaman. Then he took those things into his house and hid them.

2 Kings 5:25

Your servant

Gehazi refers to himself here as Elisha's servant.

Translation Words - ULT

- his master
- Elisha
- Your servant
- has...gone

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- Elisha asked him
- I
- go anywhere

ULT

²⁵ When he came in and he stood beside **his master**, then **Elisha** said to him, "From where has Gehazi come?" But he replied, "**Your servant** has not **gone** here nor there."

UST

²⁵ When he went to **Elisha**, **Elisha asked him**, "Where did you go, Gehazi?" Gehazi replied, "**I** did not **go anywhere**."

2 Kings 5:26

Was not my spirit with you when the man turned his chariot to meet you?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that Yahweh allowed him to see what Gehazi had done. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have realized that my spirit could see you when Naaman stopped his chariot and talked to you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Is this a time to accept money ... female servants?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that this is not the time take gifts. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not the time to accept money ... female servants." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁶ Then he said to him, "Did not [my heart go](#) at the same time when a man turned from upon [his chariot](#) to meet you? Is it a time to take [the silver](#) and to take garments, [or olives and vineyards](#), [or sheep](#) and cattle, [or male servants](#) and maid servants?

UST

²⁶ Elisha asked him, "Do you not [realize that my spirit was there when](#) Naaman got out of his [chariot](#) to talk with you? This is certainly not the time to accept gifts of [money](#) and clothes [and olive groves and vineyards and sheep](#) and oxen [and servants](#)!

Translation Words - ULT

- [my heart](#)
- [Did...go](#)
- [his chariot](#)
- [the silver](#)
- [or olives](#)
- [and vineyards](#)
- [or sheep](#)
- [or male servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [realize](#)
- [that my spirit was there when](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [money](#)
- [and olive groves](#)
- [and vineyards](#)
- [and sheep](#)
- [and servants](#)

2 Kings 5:27

the leprosy of Naaman will be on you and your descendants

This speaks of Gehazi and his descendant getting leprosy as if Naaman's leprosy was taken from him and given to Gehazi. Alternate translation: "you and your descendants will have leprosy, just as Naaman had leprosy"

So Gehazi went out from his presence

The phrase "his presence" refers to the area where Elisha could see him. This means that he left the room where Elisha was. Alternate translation: "When Gehazi left the room, he was" (See: [Idiom](#))

as white as snow

Leprosy makes skin white. Here Gehazi's leprous skin is compared to the color of snow. Alternate translation: "with skin that was white like snow" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Naaman](#)
- [So he went out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [just like Naaman had](#)
- [When Gehazi left the room](#)

ULT

²⁷ So the leprosy of [Naaman](#) will cling upon you and upon your seed for forever." [So he went out](#) from his presence, one stricken with leprosy, as the snow.

UST

²⁷ Because you have done this, you and your children and all your descendants, forever, will have leprosy [just like Naaman had!](#) [When Gehazi left the room](#), he was a leper. His skin was as white as snow.

2 Kings 6

2 Kings 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Impossible actions

Elisha caused an iron ax head to float. He fooled the whole army of Aram that was sent to arrest him. When the king of Aram besieged the capital of Israel, the people became so hungry they started eating their children. Elisha told the king of Israel that there would be plenty of food the next day, but the king's counselor said it was impossible.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

The king's counselor expressed his unbelief in Elisha's prophecy of plenty of food: "See, even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven, can this thing happen?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) and [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

2 Kings 6:1

The sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “The group of prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [Elisha](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [One day the association of prophets](#)
- [One day the association of prophets](#)
- [Elisha](#)

ULT

¹ Now [the sons of the prophets](#) said to [Elisha](#), “Look, please, the place where we are living there in your presence is too cramped for us.”

UST

¹ [One day the association of prophets](#) said to [Elisha](#), “Look, this place where we meet together with you is very small.”

2 Kings 6:2

let us go to the Jordan

This refers to the area by the Jordan River. Alternate translation: “let us go beside the Jordan River” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- let us go
- Go ahead
- the Jordan

Translation Words - UST

- Allow us to go to
- go
- the Jordan River and...trees

ULT

² Please [let us go](#) as far as [the Jordan](#), and let each man take one beam from there, and let us make for ourselves there a place to dwell there.” So he replied, “[Go ahead](#).”

UST

² [Allow us to go to the Jordan River and](#) cut down some [trees](#) to make logs to build a new meeting place.” So Elisha said, “Very well, [go](#).”

2 Kings 6:3

your servants

Here one of the prophet refers to the of the sons of the prophets as Elisha's servants to show him honor.

Translation Words - ULT

- your servants
- I...will go

Translation Words - UST

- us
- will go with you

ULT

³ Then the one said, "Be willing, please, and go with **your servants**." So he replied, "I myself **will go**."

UST

³ One of them said to Elisha, "Please come with **us**." So Elisha replied, "Very well, I **will go with you**."

2 Kings 6:4

General Information:

Elisha goes with the prophets to cut trees.

Translation Words - ULT

- to the Jordan

Translation Words - UST

- the Jordan River

ULT

⁴ So he went with them. When they came to the Jordan, then they began to cut down the trees.

UST

⁴ So they went together. When they reached the Jordan River they cut down some trees.

2 Kings 6:5

the ax head fell into the water

The ax head refers to the blade of the ax. This means that the ax head came loose from its the handle and fell into the water. Alternate translation: "the ax head separated from the handle and fell into the water"

Oh no

The man said this to show that he was upset and frustrated. If you have a way of expressing these emotions in your language, you can use it here.

it was borrowed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I borrowed it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha](#)

ULT

⁵ Now it happened while the one was felling the beam, that the blade of the iron tool fell into the waters. So he cried out and he said, "Alas, [my master](#), for it was borrowed!"

UST

⁵ But while one of them was cutting down a tree, suddenly the axe head separated from the handle and fell into the water. He cried out to [Elisha](#), "O, Master, what shall I do? The axe is not mine. I borrowed it!"

2 Kings 6:6

So the man of God said

Alternate translation: "So Elisha, the man of God, asked"

He then cut off a stick, threw it in the water, and made the iron float

God uses Elisha to perform a miracle. The ax head rises to the surface of the water and it stays there so the prophet can pick it up.

made the iron float

Alternate translation: "caused the iron to float"

the iron

"the ax head." The ax head was made of iron.

Translation Words - ULT

- God

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha

ULT

⁶ Then the man of God said, "Where did it fall?" So he showed him the place. Then he chopped off a branch, and he threw to there, and the iron tool floated over.

UST

⁶ Elisha replied, "Where did it fall into the water?" After the man showed him the place, Elisha cut off a stick, threw it into the water, and the axe head rose to the water surface.

2 Kings 6:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his hand

Translation Words - UST

- his hand down and picked up the axe head

ULT

⁷ Then he said, "Lift up to yourself." So he stretched out his hand and he took it.

UST

⁷ Elisha said, "Take it out of the water." So the man reached his hand down and picked up the axe head.

2 Kings 6:8

Now the king of Aram was waging war against Israel

Alternate translation: "When the king of Aram was at war with Israel,"

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

saying, "My camp will be in such and such a place

The king of Aram was telling his counselors where to set up the camp. Here the phrase "such and such" is a way to refer to the information of the location of the camp without writing it out. If this phrase does not translate well into your language this may be written as indirect speech. Alternate translation: "and told them where his camp would be located" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

⁸ Now the king of Aram, he was battling [with Israel](#). [So he consulted together](#) with [his servants](#), saying, "My camp will be at a certain place as such."

UST

⁸ Whenever the king of Aram prepared to send his army to fight [against Israel](#), he [first consulted](#) his officers, [and then told them](#) where they should set up their tents.

Translation Words - ULT

- [with Israel](#)
- [So he consulted together](#)
- [his servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [against Israel](#)
- [first consulted...and then](#)
- [told them](#)

2 Kings 6:9

the man of God

Alternate translation: "Elisha the man of God"

Be careful not to pass that place, for the Arameans are going down there

Elisha knew the specific place that the Arameans were going to set up their camp and advised the king of Israel for his soldiers to avoid that area.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the king of
- Israel
- Be careful

Translation Words - UST

- But each time
- the king
- of Israel, telling him where the army of Aram was planning
- attack

ULT

⁹ So the man of God sent to the king of Israel, saying, "Be careful of passing by that place, for there Aram is descending."

UST

⁹ But each time Elisha would send a message to warn the king of Israel, telling him where the army of Aram was planning to attack them, saying, "Be sure that your army does not go near that place, because the army of Aram has set up their tents there."

2 Kings 6:10

to the place about which the man of God had spoken and warned him

This refers to the place that Elisha had warned the king about in [2 Kings 6:9](#).

More than once or twice, when the king went there, he was on his guard

Elisha would warn the king of where the Aramean army would attack so that he could alert the people before the attack happened.

Alternate translation: "Elisha warned the king of Israel in this way several times and the Israelites were able to stay safe" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So the king](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [messengers](#)

ULT

¹⁰ So [the king of Israel](#) sent to the place about which the man of [God](#) had said to him and he warned him. So he was guarded there not once and not twice.

UST

¹⁰ So [the king of Israel](#) would send [messengers](#) to warn the people who lived in that place, and the people would remain on guard. That happened several times.

2 Kings 6:11

Will you not tell me who among us is for the king of Israel?

The king of Aram assumes there is a traitor among his soldiers who is giving information to the Israelite king. He uses this rhetorical question to try to find out who that traitor is. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Tell me which of you is for the king of Israel!" or "Tell me which of you is revealing our plans to the king of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

is for the king of Israel

"To be for someone" means to be loyal to that person. In this case, it means that they would give information to help the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "is helping the king of Israel" or "is loyal to the king of Israel" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the heart of
- the king of
- the king of
- so he called
- his servants
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- The king of...was...about
- the king
- very upset
- so he summoned his army
- officers
- of Israel...is doing it

ULT

¹¹ As a result [the heart of the king of Aram](#) became furious about this thing, [so he called](#) to [his servants](#) and he said to them, "Will you not tell to me who of those among us is on the side of [the king of Israel](#)?"

UST

¹¹ [The king of Aram](#) was [very upset about](#) this, [so he summoned his army officers](#) and said to them, "One of you is revealing our plans to [the king of Israel](#). Which one of you [is doing it](#)?"

2 Kings 6:12

No

The servant is saying that none of the king's soldiers are giving information to the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "It is none of us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

my master, king

This refers to the king of Aram.

the words that you speak in your own bedroom

Alternate translation: "what you say in the privacy of your own bedroom"

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [O...king](#)
- [king...to the...of](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [is in Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Your](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [the](#)
- [and he tells the king...Israel everything](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [and he tells the king...Israel everything](#)
- [and he tells the king...Israel everything](#)

ULT

¹² So one of his servants replied, "None, [my master, O king](#), but [Elisha the prophet](#) who [is in Israel](#) tells [to the king of Israel](#) the things that you speak in the room containing your bed!"

UST

¹² One of his officers answered, "[Your Majesty](#), it is not one of us. [Elisha the prophet](#) knows what we plan to do, [and he tells the king of Israel everything](#). He even knows what you say in your own bedroom!"

2 Kings 6:13

I may send men and capture him

The king plans to send the men to capture Elisha for him. The king does not plan to capture him himself. Alternate translation: "I may send men to capture him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

See

This word is used here to draw the king's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

he is in Dothan

Alternate translation: "Elisha is in Dothan"

Dothan

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Go](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Go](#)

ULT

¹³ So he replied, "[Go](#) and see where he is so I might send out and I might seize him." Then it was told to him, saying, "Look, in Dothan."

UST

¹³ The king of Aram replied, "[Go](#) and find out where he is, and I will send some men there to capture him." Someone told him, "People say that he is in the city of Dothan, north of Samaria."

2 Kings 6:14

So the king

This refers to the king of Aram.

Translation Words - ULT

- horses

Translation Words - UST

- with horses

ULT

¹⁴ So he sent out to there horses and chariotry, along with a heavy army, and they came by night and they encircled around the city.

UST

¹⁴ So the king sent a large group of soldiers to Dothan with horses and chariots. They arrived at night and surrounded the city.

2 Kings 6:15

the man of God

Alternate translation: "Elisha" or "Elisha the man of God"

behold

The word "behold" here shows that the servant was surprised by what he saw.

had risen early and gone outside, behold

Alternate translation: "got up early in the morning and went outside, and he saw"

His servant said to him

The servant went back inside the house to tell Elisha what he had seen. Alternate translation: "The servant went back inside and said to Elisha" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the one attending
- his young man
- God
- to rise
- so he went out
- was an army
- along with horse
- my master

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha's
- servant
- and...the house
- got up
- went outside
- the soldiers of Aram
- horses
- to Elisha

ULT

¹⁵ Now [the one attending](#) the man of God had started early [to rise so he went out](#) and here [was an army](#) surrounding the city [along with horse](#) and chariot. So [his young man](#) said to him, "Alas, [my master](#)! What will we do?"

UST

¹⁵ Early the next morning, [Elisha's servant got up](#) and [went outside the house](#). He saw [the soldiers of Aram](#) with their [horses](#) and chariots surrounding the town. So he went inside the house and reported it [to Elisha](#) and exclaimed, "Oh, sir! What are we going to do?"

2 Kings 6:16

those who are with us are more than those who are with them

"To be with someone" in battle means to fight for their side.

Alternate translation: "those who are on our side in the battle are more than those who are on their side" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Do...fear](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be afraid](#)

ULT

¹⁶ So he replied, "Do not [fear](#), for more numerous are those with us than those with them."

UST

¹⁶ Elisha replied, "Do not [be afraid](#)! Those who are helping us are many more than those who are helping them!"

2 Kings 6:17

open his eyes that he may see

Elisha is asking that his servant may be able to see things that other people cannot see, namely the horses and chariots of fire that are around them. Alternate translation: “make him able to see” (See: [Idiom](#))

he saw. Behold

Alternate translation: “he could see. What he saw was that”

Behold

The word “Behold” here shows that the servant was surprised by what he saw.

the mountain was full of horses

Alternate translation: “the mountainside was covered with horses”

around Elisha

This refers to the city where Elisha is. Alternate translation: “around the city where Elisha was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elisha](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Then...prayed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the young man](#)
- [horses](#)
- [fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prayed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [So Yahweh...the](#)
- [I](#)
- [surrounding](#)
- [servant](#)
- [was a huge number of horses](#)
- [they seemed to be made of fire](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Then [Elisha prayed](#) and he said, “[Yahweh](#), please open his eyes that he will see.” So [Yahweh](#) opened the eyes of [the young man](#), and he saw. Now here, the mountain was full of [horses](#) and a chariot of [fire](#) encircling around [Elisha](#)!

UST

¹⁷ Then he [prayed](#), “[Yahweh](#), I request that you open my servant’s eyes in order that he can see what is out there!” So [Yahweh](#) enabled [the servant](#) to look out and see that [surrounding](#) the hill on which the town was built [was a huge number of horses](#) and chariots; [they seemed to be made of fire](#)!

2 Kings 6:18

these people

This refers to the Aramean soldiers.

Strike these people blind

"Cause these people to be blind!" This refers to Yahweh causing them to be unable to see clearly.

Translation Words - ULT

- so...prayed
- Elisha
- Elisha
- Yahweh
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- army of Aram
- Elisha
- his
- prayed again
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁸ Then they came down to him, so Elisha prayed to Yahweh and he said, "Please, strike this nation with blindness." So he struck them with blindness, in accordance with the word of Elisha.

UST

¹⁸ When the army of Aram prepared to attack Elisha, he prayed again, saying, "Yahweh, cause all these soldiers to become blind!" Yahweh answered his prayer and caused them to be unable to see clearly.

2 Kings 6:19

This is not the way, neither is this the city

Elisha confuses the Arameans by telling them that they are not at the city they are searching for. Alternate translation: “This is not the way, neither is this the city you are looking for” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- Walk
- you are seeking
- to Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- Then Elisha went
- I will take you
- are searching for
- city Samaria, the capital of Israel

ULT

¹⁹ Then [Elisha](#) said to them, “This is not the way, and neither is this the city. [Walk](#) after me, and let me bring you to the man whom [you are seeking](#).” Then he led them [to Samaria](#).

UST

¹⁹ Then [Elisha went](#) to them and said, “You are not on the right road. This is not the city that you are searching for. [I will take you](#) to the man whom you [are searching for](#).” But he led them to the [city Samaria, the capital of Israel](#).

2 Kings 6:20

It came about that

Alternate translation: "It happened that" or "Then,"

open the eyes of these men that they may see

Elisha is asking Yahweh to cause the men to see clearly again.

Alternate translation: "allow these men to see" (See: [Idiom](#))

Yahweh opened their eyes and they saw

Yahweh allowed the men to see clearly again. Alternate translation: "Yahweh took away their blindness" or "Yahweh allowed them to see clearly" (See: [Idiom](#))

behold

The word "behold" here shows that the Arameans were surprised by what they saw.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [As soon as they...Samaria](#)
- [that they were...Samaria](#)
- [Elisha prayed again, saying](#)
- [Yahweh, now...these soldiers](#)
- [see correctly again!" So Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now it happened upon their coming into [Samaria](#), that [Elisha](#) said, "Yahweh, open the eyes of these ones that they may see." So [Yahweh](#) opened their eyes and they saw, and look, in the midst of [Samaria](#).

UST

²⁰ [As soon as they](#) entered [Samaria](#), [Elisha prayed again, saying](#), "Yahweh, [now](#) enable [these soldiers](#) to [see correctly again!](#)" So [Yahweh](#) enabled them to see correctly, and they were surprised to see [that they were](#) inside [Samaria](#).

2 Kings 6:21

when he saw them

Alternate translation: "when he saw the Aramean soldiers"

My father

The king is speaking to Elisha the prophet and calling him "father" to show respect.

should I kill them? Should I kill them?

Here the king of Israel is referring to his army as himself. Alternate translation: "Should I order my army to kill these enemy soldiers?" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²¹ Then [the king of Israel](#) said to [Elisha](#), upon his seeing them, "Should I strike? Should I strike, [my father](#)?"

UST

²¹ [When the king of Israel](#) saw them, he said to [Elisha](#), "[Sir, shall I tell my soldiers](#) to kill them? Shall we kill all of them?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [my father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When the king](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Sir, shall I tell my soldiers](#)

2 Kings 6:22

Elisha answered

Elisha was replying to the king of Israel's question.

Would you kill those whom you had taken captive with your sword and bow?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to rebuke the king and tell him not to kill these men. The words “sword and bow” are a metonym for war in which soldiers use swords and bows and arrows. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “You would not kill men whom you had captured in war, so you should not kill these men.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Put bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink

Here “bread” refers to food in general. Alternate translation: “Give them food to eat and water to drink” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

go to their master

This refers to the king of Aram.

Translation Words - ULT

- [you had taken captive](#)
- [with your sword](#)
- [bread](#)
- [that they may eat](#)
- [their master](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [captured](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [in a battle](#)
- [something to eat and drink](#)
- [something to eat and drink](#)

ULT

²² Then he replied, “You must not strike down. If these [you had taken captive with your sword](#) and with your bow, would you strike down? Put [bread](#) and water in their presence, [that they may eat](#) and they may drink, and they may go to [their master](#).”

UST

²² Elisha replied, “No, you must not kill them. If your army [captured](#) many of [your enemies in a battle](#), you would certainly not kill them. Give these men [something to eat and drink](#), and then allow them to return to their king.”

2 Kings 6:23

So the king prepared much food for them

The king ordered his servants to prepare the food. He did not prepare the food himself. Alternate translation: "Then the king ordered his servants to prepare a lot of food for them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Those bands

Alternate translation: "Those groups"

did not return for a long time into the land of Israel

This means that they did not attack Israel for a long time. Alternate translation: "stopped attacking the land of Israel for a long time" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they ate](#)
- [their master](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So the king of Israel did that](#)
- [He told his servants to](#)
- [the king of Aram and told him what had happened](#)

ULT

²³ Then he prepared a great feast for them, [and they ate](#) and they drank. Then he sent away, and they went to [their master](#), and the raiding bands of Aram did not continue any longer to come into the land of [Israel](#).

UST

²³ [So the king of Israel did that](#). He told [his servants to](#) provide a big feast for them. And when they had eaten and drunk plenty, he sent them away. They returned to [the king of Aram and told him what had happened](#). So for a while after that, soldiers from Aram stopped raiding towns in Israel.

2 Kings 6:24

Ben Hadad

The name of the king of Aram. His name means “son of Hadad.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

attacked Samaria

The king and his army attacked Samaria. Alternate translation: “they attacked Samaria” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- Samaria and...the city for a long time

ULT

24 Now it happened after this that Ben Hadad, [the king of](#) Aram, assembled all of his camp and they came up and they layed seige to [Samaria](#).

UST

24 But some time later, Ben Hadad [the king](#) of Aram, assembled his entire army, and they went to [Samaria and](#) surrounded [the city for a long time](#).

2 Kings 6:25

Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

a donkey’s head was sold for

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “a donkey’s head cost” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

eighty pieces of silver

“80 pieces of silver” (See: [Numbers](#))

the fourth part of a kab

This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “a fourth part of a liter” or “a quarter of a liter” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

the fourth part

This is one part out of four equal parts. Alternate translation: “one fourth” or “a quarter” or “1/4” (See: [Fractions](#))

dove’s dung for

The words “was sold for” are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated here. Alternate translation: “dove’s dung was sold for” or “dove’s dung cost” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a...famine
- a head of
- a donkey
- silver rounds
- silver rounds

Translation Words - UST

- hardly any food left
- a donkey’s
- head, which was usually worthless
- of silver, and...of...cost...pieces
- of silver

ULT

²⁵ Also there was a great [famine](#) in Samaria, and look, they were besieging around it until [a head of a donkey](#) was being sold for 80 [silver rounds](#), and the fourth part of the qav measure in dung of doves in exchange for five [silver rounds](#).

UST

²⁵ Because of that, after a while there was [hardly any food left](#) inside the city, so that eventually [a donkey’s head, which was usually worthless](#), cost eighty pieces [of silver](#), and one cup of dove’s dung [cost](#) five [pieces of silver](#).

2 Kings 6:26

was passing by on the wall

Alternate translation: "walking on top of the city wall"

my master

The woman referred to the king by this name to show him respect.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- O king
- Israel
- cried out
- Help
- my master

Translation Words - UST

- One day when the king
- Your Majesty, help me
- of Israel
- cried out to him
- Your Majesty, help me
- Your Majesty, help me

ULT

²⁶ Then it happened when the king of Israel was passing by along the wall, that a woman cried out to him, saying, "Help, my master, O king."

UST

²⁶ One day when the king of Israel was walking on top of the city wall, a woman cried out to him, "Your Majesty, help me!"

2 Kings 6:27

He said

Alternate translation: "The king of Israel answered the woman,"

If Yahweh does not help you, how can I help you?

The king uses this rhetorical question to tell the woman that he cannot help her. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "If Yahweh is not helping you, then I cannot help you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Is there anything coming from the threshing floor or winepress?

The king uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that there is no food available. Here the threshing floor refers to grain and the winepress refers to wine. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nothing coming from the threshing floor or the winepress." or "There is no food to harvest or any grapes to make wine to drink." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁷ So he replied, "If [Yahweh](#) does not [intend to help you](#), from where [could I bring help for you](#)? From [the threshing floor](#) or from the winepress?"

UST

²⁷ He replied, "If [Yahweh will not help you](#), [I certainly cannot](#). I do not [have any wheat](#) or wine!"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [does...intend to help you](#)
- [could I bring help for you](#)
- [the threshing floor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh will not...you](#)
- [help](#)
- [I certainly](#)
- [cannot. I...have any wheat](#)

2 Kings 6:28

The king continued

"The king said." This means that they continued talking.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- your son
- my son
- so that we may eat him
- we will eat

Translation Words - UST

- What is...problem
- eat
- eat
- your son
- flesh...we can kill my son

ULT

²⁸ Then **the king** said to her, What is happening to you?" So she replied, "This woman said to me, 'Give up **your son**, **so that we may eat him** today, and **we will eat my son** tomorrow.'"

UST

²⁸ **What is** your **problem**?" She replied, "Several days ago, that women over there said to me, 'Because we have nothing left to **eat**, let us kill **your son** today, in order that we can **eat** his **flesh**. Then tomorrow **we can kill my son** and eat his flesh.'

2 Kings 6:29

we boiled

Alternate translation: "we cooked"

Translation Words - ULT

- my son
- your son
- her son
- and we ate him
- that we may eat him

Translation Words - UST

- So we killed my son and
- your son to me, in order that we can kill him
- But she has...her son
- ate
- eat it

ULT

²⁹ So we boiled my son and we ate him. Then I said to her on the next day, "Give up your son that we may eat him, but she has hidden her son."

UST

²⁹ So we killed my son and cut his body up and boiled his flesh and ate it. The next day, I said to her, 'Now give your son to me, in order that we can kill him and cook his flesh and eat it.' But she has hidden her son."

2 Kings 6:30

heard the words of the woman

The words “the words” are a metonym for what the woman said. Alternate translation: “heard the woman tell what she and the other woman had done” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he tore his clothes

The king ripped his outer garment to show his distress. Alternate translation: “he tore his clothes in grief” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

now he was passing by on the wall

He had been walking on the city wall when the woman called out to him in [2 Kings 6:24](#). Now he continued walking along it.

he had sackcloth underneath, against his skin

By wearing sackcloth even for his undergarments, the king showed that he was very sad and upset. Alternate translation: “he had sackcloth underneath his outer garment, against his skin” or “he was wearing sackcloth underneath his robe because he was very upset” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

ULT

³⁰ Now it happened upon [the king](#) hearing the words of the woman, that he tore his garments as he was passing by on the wall. When [the people](#) looked, now here was sackcloth against [his flesh, from inside](#).

UST

³⁰ [When the king](#) heard what the woman said, he tore his robe to show that he was very upset. The [people](#) who were standing close to the wall were able to see that the king was wearing rough cloth [underneath his robe](#) because he was very upset.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the people](#)
- [his flesh](#)
- [from inside](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When the king](#)
- [people](#)
- [underneath his robe](#)
- [underneath his robe](#)

2 Kings 6:31

May God do so to me, and more also

The king is saying he hopes God will punish him and even kill him if Elisha the prophet does not die because of the things that have happened in the city of Samaria. Alternate translation: "May God punish me and kill me" (See: [Euphemism](#))

if the head of Elisha son of Shaphat remains on him today

This refers to Elisha dying, specifically be being beheaded. Alternate translation: "if Elisha son of Shaphat is not beheaded today" or "if my soldiers do not behead Elisha son of Shaphat today" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the head of
- Elisha
- the son of
- remains

Translation Words - UST

- that God will strike me dead
- if I...not
- head
- of Elisha
- of Elisha

ULT

³¹ Then he said, "Thus should [God](#) do to me, and so he should continue even more, if [the head of Elisha, the son of Shaphat](#), [remains](#) on him today."

UST

³¹ The king exclaimed, "I wish [that God will strike me dead if I do not](#) cut off the [head of Elisha](#) today, because he is the one who has caused these terrible things to happen to us!"

2 Kings 6:32

The king sent a man from before him

"To be before the king" means to be one of his servants. Alternate translation: "The king of Israel sent one of his servants as a messenger" (See: [Idiom](#))

when the messenger came to Elisha, he said to the elders

Here Elisha is speaking to the elders right before the king's messenger arrived. Alternate translation: "when the messenger had almost arrived, Elisha said to the elders" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

See how this son of a murderer has sent to take away my head?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to draw attention to the king's messenger and to insult the king. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "See, this son of a murderer has sent someone to remove my head!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

son of a murderer

This means that the king of Israel has the characteristics of a murderer. Alternate translation: "this man who is like a murderer" or "that murderer" (See: [Idiom](#))

has sent to

It is understood that he sent a person. Alternate translation: "has sent someone to" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

to take away my head

This means to behead him. Alternate translation: "to cut off my head" or "to behead me" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Look, when

Elisha uses this word here to draw the elder's attention to what he says next. Alternate translation: "Listen to what I want you to do: when"

hold the door shut against him

If a door is shut against someone it means that it is closed and that they may not enter through it. Alternate translation: "hold the door shut so that he cannot come in" (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

³² However Elisha was sitting in his house, and the elders were sitting with him when he sent a man from before his presence. Even before the messenger would come to him, then he said to the elders, "Do you see that this son of a murderer has sent to take off my head? Look, as the messenger is coming, shut the door, and you should push him back with the door. Is there not the sound of the feet of his master behind him?"

UST

³² So the king sent an officer to get Elisha. Before the officer arrived, Elisha was sitting in his house with some Israelite elders who were talking with him. Elisha said to them, "That murderer, the king of Israel, is sending someone here to kill me. Listen. When he arrives, shut the door and do not allow him to come in, because the king will be coming right behind that officer!"

Is not the sound of his master's feet behind him?

Elisha uses this question to assure the elders that the king is coming not far behind him. This rhetorical question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The sound of his master's feet is right behind him." or "The king will be coming along soon after he arrives." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- However Elisha
- in his house
- and the elders
- the elders
- son of
- my head
- his master

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- house with some Israelite...who were talking
- elders
- Listen
- he
- him
- because the king will be...right behind that officer

2 Kings 6:33

behold, the messenger

The word “behold” alerts us to the arrival of the messenger.

the messenger came down to him

The messenger arrived, and so did the king, as Elisha had said he would. The phrase “came down to him” means that they arrived at the place where he was. Alternate translation: “the messenger and the king arrived” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Idiom](#))

Behold

Alternate translation: “Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

this trouble

“Indeed, this trouble.” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. The phrase “this trouble” refers to the famine in Samaria and the suffering it caused.

Why should I wait for Yahweh any longer?

This king use this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not believe that Yahweh is going to help them. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “Why should I continue to wait for Yahweh to help us?” or “I will not wait any longer for help from Yahweh!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It is Yahweh who is allowing us](#)
- [him to help us](#)
- [have all this trouble](#)

ULT

33 While he was still speaking with them, then here was the messenger coming down to him. Then he said, “Look, this [evil](#) is from [Yahweh](#). Why should I wait [for Yahweh](#) any longer?”

UST

33 And while he was still speaking, the king and the officer arrived. The king said, “[It is Yahweh who is allowing us to have all this trouble](#). I will no longer wait for [him to help us](#).”

2 Kings 7

2 Kings 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Fear

God caused the army of Aram to hear the sound of an enormous army approaching so they all ran away leaving all their food behind.

2 Kings 7:1

a measure of fine flour will be sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel

It is implied that the Israelites will be paying less money for these item than they had been. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people will sell a measure of fine flour for a shekel and two measures of barley for a shekel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

a measure of fine flour ... two measures of barley

Here the word “measure” translates the word “seah,” which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: “7 liters of fine flour...14 liters of barley” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: “about 11 grams of silver” or “one silver coin” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- barley grains
- in the gate of
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- Yahweh
- to what...He
- at the marketplace
- in Samaria, you will be able to buy
- and...of barley for

ULT

¹ However Elisha said, “Hear the word of Yahweh. Thus says Yahweh: ‘About this time tomorrow a seah measure of fine flour will be for a shekel, and two seah measures of barley grains will be for a shekel, in the gate of Samaria.’”

UST

¹ Elisha replied to the king, “Listen to what Yahweh says: ‘He says that by this time tomorrow, at the marketplace here in Samaria, you will be able to buy seven liters of the best flour for one piece of silver, and fourteen liters of barley for one piece of silver.’”

2 Kings 7:2

the captain on whose hand the king leaned

A high ranking captain who was the king's personal assistant is spoken of as if he was a person on whom the king leaned his hand. Alternate translation: "the captain who was close to the king" or "the captain who was the king's personal assistant" (See: [Metaphor](#))

even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven

Yahweh causing much rain to fall in order to make the crops grow is spoken of as if Yahweh were opening windows in heaven through which he pours down rain. Alternate translation: "even if Yahweh were to cause much rain to fall from heaven" (See: [Metaphor](#))

can this thing happen?

The captain asks this question to express his unbelief. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "this could never happen!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you will watch it happen with your own eyes

The phrase "with your own eyes" emphasizes that the captain will certainly see the things that Elisha prophesied. Alternate translation: "you yourself will watch these things happen" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

but you will not eat any of it

Alternate translation: "but you will not eat any of the flour or barely"

Translation Words - ULT

- [was on the side of the king](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in the heavens](#)
- [you will...eat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The officer accompanying the king](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Even if Yahweh himself...the](#)
- [would open](#)
- [of the sky and send grain down to us, that](#)
- [be able to eat any of the food](#)

ULT

² Then the third officer, who [was on the side of the king](#), on [his hand](#) he had been depending, answered the man of [God](#), and he said, "Look, even if [Yahweh](#) was making latticed openings [in the heavens](#), would this thing happen?" So he replied, "Though you are about to see with your eyes, but from there [you will](#) not [eat](#)."

UST

² [The officer accompanying the king](#) said to [Elijah](#), "That cannot happen! [Even if Yahweh himself would open the windows of the sky and send grain down to us, that](#) certainly could not happen!" Elisha replied, "Because you said that, you will see it happen, but you will not [be able to eat any of the food!](#)"

2 Kings 7:3

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the writer starts to tell a new part of the story.

Why should we sit here until we die?

Although there were four men, probably only one of them asks this question. The question is rhetorical and emphasizes that they should not do this. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Certainly we should not sit here until we die" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the gate](#)

ULT

³ Now there were four men stricken with leprosy at the entrance of [the gate](#), and they said, one man to his companion, "Why should we sit here until we have died?"

UST

³ That day there were four men who had leprosy who were sitting outside [the gate](#) of the city of Samaria. They said to each other, "Why should we wait here until we die?"

2 Kings 7:4

If they keep us alive, we will live, and if they kill us, we will only die

The four men with leprosy are saying that the Arameans might feed them so that they can live, or they might kill them, which would be no worse since they would die anyway.

Translation Words - ULT

- and we will die
- then we would die
- and we will die
- come
- let us fall
- they keep us alive
- we will live

Translation Words - UST

- we will die...because there is no
- will die
- we will not die
- So let us go
- So let us go
- remain alive
- remain alive

ULT

⁴ If we said we should go into the city, then the famine is in the city, **and we will die** there. But if we sat here, **then we would die**. So now, **come, let us fall** into the camp of Aram. If **they keep us alive, we will live**, but if not, they will kill us, **and we will die**."

UST

⁴ If we go into the city, **we will die** there, **because there is no** food there. If we remain sitting here, we **will die** here. **So let us go** to where the army of Aram has set up their tents. If they kill us, we will die. But if they allow us to **remain alive, we will not die**."

2 Kings 7:5

at twilight

This refers to the early evening after the sun has set, but before it is dark.

the outermost part

Alternate translation: "the edge"

ULT

⁵ So they rose up at the evening twilight in order to go into the camp of Aram. When they arrived at the edge of the camp of Aram, then look, not anyone was there.

UST

⁵ So when it was getting dark, those four men went to the camp where the army of Aram had set up their tents. But when they reached the camp, they saw that there was no one there.

2 Kings 7:6

**the Aramean army hear a noise of chariots,
and a noise of horses—the noise of another
large army**

The soldiers of the Aramean army heard noises that sounded like a large army approaching to battle them. This was not an actual army, but the Lord had made them hear these sounds.

they said to each other

Alternate translation: “the Aramean soldiers said to each other”

the kings of the Hittites and Egyptians

Here the word “kings” represents the kings and their armies.
Alternate translation: “the armies of the Hittites and the Egyptians”
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

to come against us

Alternate translation: “to fight us” or “to attack us”

Translation Words - ULT

- [a horse](#)
- [army](#)
- [his brother](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the Hittites](#)
- [the Egyptians](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [army marching](#)
- [and horses. So the soldiers](#)
- [to each other](#)
- [The king](#)
- [kings of](#)
- [the Hittites](#)
- [of Israel has hired the](#)
- [Egypt and](#)
- [the Hittites](#)

ULT

⁶ For Adonai had made the camp of Aram hear a sound of a chariot, a sound of [a horse](#), a sound of a great [army](#). So they said, each man to [his brother](#), “Look, [the king of Israel](#) has hired against us [the kings of the Hittites](#) and [the kings of the Egyptians](#) to come against us.”

UST

⁶ What had happened was that Yahweh had caused the army of Aram to hear something that sounded like a large [army marching](#) with chariots [and horses](#). [So the soldiers](#) said [to each other](#), “Listen! [The king of Israel](#) has [hired the kings of Egypt and the Hittites](#) and their armies, and they have come to attack us!”

2 Kings 7:7

General Information:

This is what happened after the Lord caused the Aramean soldiers to think they heard a large enemy army approaching their camp.

in the twilight

This refers to the early evening after the sun has set, but before it is dark.

Translation Words - ULT

- their horses
- their donkeys
- their lives

Translation Words - UST

- ran away...because they were afraid that they would die if they stayed there
- and their horses
- and donkeys there

ULT

⁷ So they had risen up and they fled in the twilight. Thus they had abandoned their tents, and [their horses](#), and [their donkeys](#), the camp just as it was, and they fled for [their lives](#).

UST

⁷ So they all [ran away](#) that evening at sundown and left their tents [and their horses and donkeys there](#), [because they were afraid that they would die if they stayed there](#).

2 Kings 7:8

plunder

This refers to items that a conquering army takes from another army that they have defeated. Here it refers to “silver and gold and clothes.”

Translation Words - ULT

- and they ate
- silver
- and gold
- Then they came back

Translation Words - UST

- So they ate
- the silver
- the gold
- Then they entered

ULT

⁸ When these who who were stricken with leprosy came in as far as the edge of the camp, then they went in to one tent and they ate and they drank. Then they carried away from there silver, and gold, and garments, and they went and they hid. Then they came back and they came in to another tent and they carried away from there and they went and they hid.

UST

⁸ When those four men with leprosy came to the edge of the area where the soldiers of Aram had set up their tents, they went into one tent and saw all the things that had been left there. So they ate and drank what was there, and they took the silver and the gold and clothes. Then they went outside the tent and hid those things. Then they entered another tent and took things from there, and then went outside and hid them, also.

2 Kings 7:9

until daybreak

Alternate translation: "until morning"

punishment will overtake us

Someone punishing the four men is spoken of as if punishment were a person who captures them. Alternate translation: "the people will punish us" or "someone will punish us" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

tell the king's household

Here the word "household" represents the people who live in the king's palace. Alternate translation: "tell the king and his people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [punishment](#)
- [go](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [punish us](#)
- [to the palace](#)
- [and tell it to](#)
- [the king's officials](#)

ULT

⁹ Then they said, each man to his companion, "It is not right we are doing. This day, it is a day of good news, but we are keeping quiet. So should we wait until the light of the morning, then [punishment](#) will find us. So, now, [go](#) and let us come in and let us tell [the house of the king](#)."

UST

⁹ But then they said to each other, "We are not doing what is right. We have good news to tell others today. If we do not tell it to anyone now, and if we wait until morning to tell it, the people will certainly [punish us](#). So let us go right now [to the palace and tell it to the king's officials](#)!"

2 Kings 7:10

as they were

The implicit information may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "as they were when the soldiers were still there" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and they called
- a man
- the horse
- was tied
- was tied

Translation Words - UST

- to the guards
- not see or hear anyone
- Their horses and...were still...but
- donkeys...tied up
- donkeys...tied up

ULT

¹⁰ So they went in and they called to the gatekeeper of the city. Then they declared to them, saying, "We came in to the camp of Aram. But look, not anyone was there, nor the sound of a man, but only the horse was tied, and the donkey was tied, and the tents just as they were."

UST

¹⁰ So they went to the guards at the city gates and called out to them, "We went to where the army of Aram had set up their tents, but we did not see or hear anyone there. Their horses and donkeys were still tied up, but their tents were all deserted!"

2 Kings 7:11

then it was told inside the king's household

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "then people told it inside the king's household" or "then people told it to the king and those in his palace" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...cried out](#)
- [the gatekeepers](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The guards](#)
- [and some people who heard it](#)
- [to the](#)
- [palace](#)

ULT

¹¹ [So the gatekeepers cried out](#), then they told [the house of the king](#) inside.

UST

¹¹ [The guards](#) shouted the news, [and some people who heard it](#) went [to the palace](#) and reported it there.

2 Kings 7:12

have done to us

Alternate translation: "are planning to do to us" or "have done to deceive us"

take them alive

This means that they would capture the people and not kill them.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- his servants
- They know
- they go forth
- so they have gone out
- alive

Translation Words - UST

- the king heard this news
- to his officials
- They know
- the city
- leave
- capture

ULT

¹² Now the king arose at night and he said to his servants, "Please, let me tell to you what Aram has done to us. They know that we are hungry, so they have gone out of the camp in order to hide themselves in the countryside, saying, 'When they go forth from the city, then we will capture them alive, so we may go into the city.'"

UST

¹² It was in the night that the king heard this news. He got up out of his bed and said to his officials, "I will tell you what the army of Aram is planning to do. They know that we have no food here, so they have left their tents and are hiding in the fields. They think that we will leave the city to find some food, and then they will capture us and capture the city."

2 Kings 7:13

the horses that remain, which are left in the city

Many of the horses belonging to the Israelites had died because of the famine. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “the horses in the city that are still alive” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

see

The implicit information about what he wanted to see may be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: “see if what these lepers have said is true” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the...horses
- Israel
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- are still alive
- our horses that are...to go and

ULT

¹³ Yet one of his servants answered and he said, “Now, please, let us take five of the remaining [horses](#), that were left in it. Look, they are like all the population of [Israel](#) who are left in it. Look, they are like all the population of [Israel](#) who are finished. So let us send that we may see.”

UST

¹³ But one of his officials said, “Many of our people have already died from hunger. If those of us who [are still alive](#) all stay here, we also will die anyway. So let us send some men with five of [our horses that are](#) still alive [to go and](#) see what has really happened.”

2 Kings 7:14

Go and see

The implicit information about what the king wanted them to see may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Go and see if what these lepers have said is true” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [horses](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Go](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [go...and find out what had happened](#)
- [chariots](#)
- [the](#)

ULT

¹⁴ So they took two chariot [horses](#), and [the king](#) sent after the camp of Aram, saying, “[Go](#) and see.”

UST

¹⁴ So they chose some men and told them to [go](#) in two [chariots and find out what had happened](#) to [the](#) army of Aram.

2 Kings 7:15

They went after them to the Jordan

Alternate translation: "They followed the path the Aramean army took all the way to the Jordan River"

all the road was full of clothes and equipment

This is an exaggeration that means the men saw these items scattered along the road as they traveled. Alternate translation: "there were clothes and equipment all along the road" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jordan](#)
- [Then...returned](#)
- [to the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [as the Jordan River](#)
- [So the men returned](#)
- [to the king...what they had seen](#)

ULT

¹⁵ So they went after them as far as [the Jordan](#), and look, all the road was full of garments and implements that Aram had cast away in their hurried alarm. Then the messengers [returned](#) and they explained [to the king](#).

UST

¹⁵ They went as far [as the Jordan River](#). All along the road they saw clothes and equipment that the soldiers from Aram had thrown away while they were running away. [So the men returned to the king](#) and reported [what they had seen](#).

2 Kings 7:16

plundered the camp

This refers to taking items from a defeated army.

So a measure of fine flour was sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "So people sold a measure of fine flour for a shekel and two measures of barley for a shekel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a measure of fine flour ... two measures of barley

Here the word "measure" translates the word "seah," which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: "7 liters of fine flour...14 liters of barley" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 11 grams of silver" or "one silver coin" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

just as the word of Yahweh had said

Here "word" represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: "just as Yahweh had said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...went out](#)
- [the people](#)
- [barley grains](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then many of the people](#)
- [went out](#)
- [of barley](#)
- [which was what Yahweh had said](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [So the people went out](#) and they plundered the camp of Aram. Then it happened, a seah measure of fine flour for a shekel, and two sheah measures of [barley grains](#) for a shekel, according to the word of [Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁶ [Then many of the people](#) of Samaria also [went out](#) of the city and went to where the army of Aram had set up their tents. They entered all the tents and took everything. So there was now plenty of everything! As a result people could buy seven liters of the best flour for one piece of silver, and fourteen liters [of barley](#) for one piece of silver, [which was what Yahweh had said](#) would happen!

2 Kings 7:17

the captain on whose hand he had leaned

A high ranking captain who was the king's personal assistant is spoken of as if he were a person on whom the king leaned his hand. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: "the captain who was close to the king" or "the captain who was the king's personal assistant" (See: [Metaphor](#))

trampled him down

The crowd of people were in such a rush to get to the food in the camp that they knocked over the man and trampled him to death.

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the king
- the king
- had appointed
- his hand
- the gate
- in the gate
- the people
- As a result he died
- God

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- the city trampled
- Elisha
- to supervise
- at the city gate
- at the gate
- But as he was standing...all the people
- on him, and he
- died, which was what

ULT

17 Now the king had appointed the third officer on whom he had been depending on his hand over the gate, but the people trampled him in the gate. As a result he died, just as the man of God had spoken, when he spoke when the king had come down to him.

UST

17 The king of Israel had ordered his assistant, the one who had spoken with Elisha, to supervise what was happening at the city gate. But as he was standing at the gate, all the people who were rushing outside the city trampled on him, and he died, which was what Elisha had said would happen to him.

2 Kings 7:18

General Information:

In this verse, the writer summarizes what happened by repeating the events that he described in [2 Kings 7:1](#). (See: [End of Story](#))

About this time

Alternate translation: "About this time tomorrow"

two measures of barley ... a measure of fine flour

Here the word "measure" translates the word "seah," which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: "14 liters of barley...7 liters of fine flour" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 11 grams of silver" or "one silver coin" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the king](#)
- [barley](#)
- [in the gate of](#)
- [Samaria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha had](#)
- [to the king...the](#)
- [plenty of food, with](#)
- [plenty of food, with](#)
- [of barley for](#)

ULT

¹⁸ So it happened as the man of [God](#) had spoken to [the king](#), saying, "Two seah measures of [barley](#) for a shekel, and a seah measure of fine flour for a shekel, it will happen about this time tomorrow [in the gate of Samaria](#),"

UST

¹⁸ [Elisha had](#) told [to the king](#) that by the next day there would be [plenty of food](#), [with the](#) result that anyone could buy fourteen liters [of barley for](#) one piece of silver, and seven liters of the best flour for one piece of silver.

2 Kings 7:19

General Information:

In this verse, the writer summarizes what happened by repeating the events that he described in [2 Kings 7:2](#). (See: [End of Story](#))

See

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven

Yahweh causing much rain to fall in order to make the crops grow is spoken of as if Yahweh were opening windows in heaven through which he pours down rain. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: "even if Yahweh were to cause much rain to fall from heaven" (See: [Metaphor](#))

can this thing happen?

The captain asks this question to express his unbelief. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: "this could never happen!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you will watch it happen with your own eyes

The phrase "with your own eyes" emphasizes that the captain will certainly see the things that Elisha prophesied. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: "you yourself will watch these things happen" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

but you will not eat any of it

Alternate translation: "but you will not eat any of the flour or barley"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in the heavens](#)
- [you will...eat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had answered, "That...Even if Yahweh himself](#)
- [would...the sky and send down some grain](#)
- [And Elisha had](#)
- [eat any of the food](#)

ULT

¹⁹ when the third officer had answered the man of [God](#) and he had said, "Look, even if [Yahweh](#) was making latticed openings [in the heavens](#), would this thing happen?" Then he had said, "Look, you are going to see with your eyes, but from there [you will not eat](#)."

UST

¹⁹ That officer [had answered](#), "[That](#) certainly cannot happen! [Even if Yahweh himself](#) would open [the sky and send down some grain](#), that could not happen." [And Elisha had](#) replied, "Because you said that, you will see it happen, but you will not be able to [eat any of the food!](#)"

2 Kings 7:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- in the gate
- and as a result he died

Translation Words - UST

- The people who
- of the city gate
- died

ULT

²⁰ So thus it happened to him, for the people trampled him in the gate, and as a result he died.

UST

²⁰ And that is what happened to him. The people who were rushing out of the city gate trampled on him, and he died.

2 Kings 8

2 Kings 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Kings

Elisha told Hazael that he would be king of Aram. Jehoram became king of Judah. He was evil so Edom and Libna revolted and chose their own kings. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

2 Kings 8:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

the woman whose son he had restored to life

The story of this woman and her son is found at [2 Kings 4:8](#).

he had restored to life

Alternate translation: "he had caused to become alive again"

Arise, and go

To arise here is for a person to stop what he is doing and begin to do what he needs to do. Alternate translation: "Do as I say, and go"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Elisha](#)
- [he had restored to life](#)
- [her son](#)
- [and your household](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [has called](#)
- [this land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Elisha had caused](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [with her family](#)
- [and live](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [was going to send](#)
- [land](#)

ULT

¹ [Now Elisha](#) spoke to the woman who [he had restored to life her son](#), saying, "Arise and go, you [and your household](#), and stay at wherever you can stay, because [Yahweh has called](#) for a famine and moreover it will come to [this land](#) seven years."

UST

¹ [After Elisha had caused the son of](#) the woman from the city of Shunem to become alive again, he had told her that she should leave [with her family and live](#) somewhere else for a while, because [Yahweh was going to send](#) a famine in the [land](#). He said that the famine would last for seven years.

2 Kings 8:2

the woman arose and she obeyed the word of the man of God

To arise here is for a person to stop what he is doing and begin to do what he needs to do. She may have been standing when she heard Elisha speak and decided to go.

the man of God

Alternate translation: "Elisha, the man of God"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- along with her household
- the Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- had done what Elisha...her
- her family
- in the...of Philistia

ULT

² So the woman arose and she did according to the word of the man of God. So she went, she along with her household, and she sojourned in the land of the Philistines seven years.

UST

² So the woman had done what Elisha told her to do. She and her family had gone to live in the region of Philistia for seven years.

2 Kings 8:3

to the king

This refers to the king of Israel.

for her house and for her land

While the woman was gone, her home and property were sieged. She is begging for them to be returned to her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “for her home and her property to be returned to her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [that...returned](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [Then she went forth](#)
- [the king](#)
- [her household](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they...to their](#)
- [returned](#)
- [returned](#)
- [the king](#)
- [that her house and her](#)

ULT

³ Now it happened at the end of seven years that the woman [returned](#) from the land of [the Philistines](#). [Then she went forth](#) to cry out to [the king](#) on behalf of [her household](#) and for her land.

UST

³ After the seven years were ended, [they returned to their](#) home. The woman went to [the king](#) to request [that her house and her](#) land be given back to her.

2 Kings 8:4

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells us background information about what the king was doing when the woman arrived. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the king
- the young man...of
- God
- Elisha

Translation Words - UST

- When she arrived, the king was talking
- Elisha's
- servant. The king was
- Elisha has

ULT

⁴ Now the king was speaking to Gehazi the young man of the man of God, saying, "Please tell to me all the great things that Elisha has done."

UST

⁴ When she arrived, the king was talking with Gehazi, Elisha's servant. The king was saying to him, "Tell me all the great things that Elisha has done."

2 Kings 8:5

had restored to life the child who was dead

Alternate translation: "had caused the child who was dead to become alive again"

for her house and land

While the woman was gone, her home and property were sieged. She is begging for them to be returned to her. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "for her home and her property to be returned to her" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to the king
- the king
- O King (2)
- he had restored...to life
- he had restored...to life
- restored to life
- her household
- My master
- Elisha
- the dead
- her...son
- son...is her
- crying out

Translation Words - UST

- telling
- the king
- the king (2)
- Elisha
- the son of
- son
- alive
- the son of
- alive
- alive
- requested
- get her house and
- Your

ULT

⁵ So it happened as he was telling to the king that he had restored the dead to life, and here was the woman who he had restored her son to life, crying out to the king on behalf of her household and about her field. Then Gehazi said, "My master, O King, this is the woman, and this is her son, who Elisha restored to life."

UST

⁵ While Gehazi was telling the king that Elisha had caused the son of a woman from Shunem to become alive again, that woman came in and requested the king to enable her to get her house and land back again. Gehazi exclaimed, "Your Majesty, this is the woman whose son Elisha caused to become alive again!"

2 Kings 8:6

about her son

This refers to the story of her son dying and Elisha bringing him back to life. The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “about what had happened to her son” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

all the harvests of her fields

This metonym refers to the amount of money that the harvests of her fields were worth while she was away. Alternate translation: “all the profit from the harvests of her fields” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Return back](#)
- [she left](#)
- [the land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When the king](#)
- [that what...had said was true. The king](#)
- [gets back](#)
- [everything](#)
- [while she was away from her...So the official did that](#)

ULT

⁶ So [the king](#) asked directly to the woman and she recounted to him. So [the king](#) granted for her one eunuch, saying, “[Return back](#) everything that belongs to her and all the production income of the field from the day [she left the land](#) even until now.”

UST

⁶ [When the king](#) asked her about it, she told him [that what Gehazi had said was true. The king](#) summoned one of his officials and said to him, “Make sure that this woman [gets back everything](#) that she owned in the past, including the value of all the crops that have been harvested during these last seven years [while she was away from her land.](#)” [So the official did that.](#)

2 Kings 8:7

Ben Hadad

This is the name of the king of Aram. His name means “son of Hadad.” See how you translated this man’s name in [2 Kings 6:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- the king of
- God

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- the king
- that Elisha was

ULT

⁷ Now Elisha came to Damascus when Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, was sick. Then it was told to him, saying, “The man of God has come to here.”

UST

⁷ Elisha went to Damascus, the capital of Aram, at the time when Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, was very sick. When someone told the king that Elisha was in Damascus,

2 Kings 8:8

Hazael

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Take a gift

Hazael was to take many gifts, not just one. Alternate translation: “take many gifts” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

in your hand

The phrase “in your hand” is an idiom meaning for him to take the gifts with him. Alternate translation: “with you” (See: [Idiom](#))

the man of God

Alternate translation: “Elisha, the man of God”

consult with Yahweh through him, saying

Alternate translation: “ask Elisha to ask Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [a gift](#)
- [in your hand](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king](#)
- [that prophet and](#)
- [a present](#)
- [with you](#)
- [Yahweh if](#)

ULT

⁸ So [the king](#) said to Hazael, “Take [a gift in your hand](#), and go to meet the man of [God](#). Then you must inquire of [Yahweh](#) through him, saying, ‘Will I recover from this sickness?’”

UST

⁸ [the king](#) told one of his officials named Hazael, “Go and talk to [that prophet and](#) take [a present with you](#) to give to him. Request him to ask [Yahweh if](#) I will recover from my illness.”

2 Kings 8:9

carried by forty camels

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "which forty camels carried"

forty camels

"40 camels" (See: [Numbers](#))

Your son Ben Hadad king of Aram

Ben Hadad was not actually Elisha's son, but Hazael called him that to show a close relationship between them. Alternate translation: "Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, who is like a son to you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a gift
- in his hand
- good thing of
- a burden of
- camels
- Your son
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- He took with him...that were carrying
- He took with him...that were carrying
- camels
- kinds of goods
- that were produced
- the king

ULT

⁹ So Hazael went to meet him and he took a gift in his hand, even every good thing of Damascus, a burden of 40 camels. Then he came in and he stood in his presence and he said, "Your son Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, has sent me to you, saying, 'Will I recover from this sickness?'"

UST

⁹ So Hazael went to talk with Elisha. He took with him forty camels that were carrying many kinds of goods that were produced in Damascus. When Hazael met him, he said to him, "Your friend Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, sent me to ask you whether you think he will recover from his illness."

2 Kings 8:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- Go
- surely
- You will...recover
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- Go and
- but Yahweh
- recovers
- recovers

ULT

¹⁰ Then Elisha said to him, "Go, say to him, 'You will surely recover,' but Yahweh has shown me that he will surely die."

UST

¹⁰ Elisha said to Hazael, "Go and say to him, 'Yes, you will certainly not die from this illness,' but Yahweh has shown me that he will certainly die before he recovers."

2 Kings 8:11

until he was ashamed

Alternate translation: "until Hazael felt uncomfortable"

Translation Words - ULT

- his face
- and he stayed put
- shaming
- God

Translation Words - UST

- Then Elisha
- That caused Hazael to feel uneasy
- That caused Hazael to feel uneasy
- suddenly...started

ULT

¹¹ Then he held his face still and he stayed put to the point of shaming, and the man of God wept.

UST

¹¹ Then Elisha stared at him and had a terrified look on his face. That caused Hazael to feel uneasy. Then suddenly Elisha started to cry.

2 Kings 8:12

my master

Hazael refers to Elisha this way to honor him.

Because I know

God has shown Elisha what will take place in the future.

you will do

The word “you” represents Hazael and refers to himself and the soldiers under his control when he is king. Alternate translation: “you will cause to happen” or “you will order your soldiers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

You will set ... you will kill

The word “you” represents Hazael but here refers to his soldiers and not to Hazael personally. Alternate translation: “You soldiers will set ... your soldiers will kill” (See: [Metonymy](#))

dash in pieces their little ones

“crush their little children.” This is a brutal description of the soldiers killing children.

kill their young men with the sword

This means that the men will be killed in battle. The sword was the main weapon used in battle. Alternate translation: “kill their young men in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

rip open their pregnant women

Specifically this refers to tear open their stomachs. Alternate translation: “rip open the stomachs of their pregnant women with swords” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [I know](#)
- [evil](#)
- [to the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [into the fire](#)
- [you will kill](#)
- [with the sword](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha](#)
- [to know the](#)

ULT

¹² So Hazael responded, “Why is [my master](#) weeping?” Then he replied, “Because [I know](#) that you will do [evil to the sons of Israel](#). Their fortifications you will send [into the fire](#), and their young men [you will kill with the sword](#). Also their infants you will hack to pieces, and their pregnant women you will split into pieces.”

UST

¹² Hazael said, “Sir, why are you crying?” [Elisha](#) replied, “Because Yahweh has enabled me [to know the terrible things](#) that you will do to the people [of Israel](#). [Your soldiers will burn their cities](#) that now have walls around them, [kill](#) their fine young men in battle, crush the heads of their children, and rip open the bellies of their pregnant women [with swords](#).”

- terrible things
- of Israel
- Your soldiers will
- burn their cities
- kill
- with swords

2 Kings 8:13

Who is your servant, that he should do this great thing?

Hazel refers to himself here as Elisha's servant. Hazel uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not think he could do the terrible things that Elisha has said. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I could never do such great things!" or "Who am I, that I would have the power to do such things?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

this great thing

"this terrible thing." Here the word "great" refers to something that has a large effect and is terrible.

He is only a dog

Hazael is talking about himself. He speaks of his low status and lack of influence by comparing himself to a dog. Here a dog represents a lowly animal. Alternate translation: "I am as powerless as a dog" or "I am as powerless as a lowly animal" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is your servant](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [will be king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [could I](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [Yahweh has also](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

¹³ However Hazael said, "But what [is your servant](#), the dog, that he should do this great thing? Then [Elisha](#) replied, "[Yahweh](#) has shown me you [will be king](#) over Aram."

UST

¹³ Hazael replied, "I am as powerless as a dog. How [could I](#) do such terrible things?" [Elisha](#) replied, "[Yahweh has also](#) revealed to me that you will become [the king](#) of Aram."

2 Kings 8:14

came to his master

The phrase “his master” refers to Ben Hadad.

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- Elisha
- his master
- surely
- you will recover

Translation Words - UST

- his master the king, who asked
- did Elisha say
- him
- recover
- recover

ULT

¹⁴ Then he went away from with Elisha and he came to his master. Then he said to him, “What did Elisha say to you?” So he replied, “He said to me surely you will recover.”

UST

¹⁴ Then Hazael left and returned to his master the king, who asked him, “What did Elisha say?” He replied, “He told me that you would certainly recover.”

2 Kings 8:15

face so that he died

This means that Ben Hadad suffocated under the wet blanket. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “face. Ben Hadad was unable to breathe through it, and so he died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his face
- so that he died
- Thus...became king

Translation Words - UST

- the king's face
- in order that he could not breathe, and he died
- became the king of Aram...Ben Hadad

ULT

15 Now it happened even the next day that he took the covering and he dipped in the waters, and he spread over his face so that he died. Thus Hazael became king in his place.

UST

15 But the next day, while the king was sleeping, Hazael took a blanket and soaked it in water. Then he spread it on the king's face in order that he could not breathe, and he died. Then Hazael became the king of Aram instead of Ben Hadad.

2 Kings 8:16

General Information:

Jehoram becomes king of Judah.

In the fifth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel

This describes the time that Jehoram began to reign over Judah by stating how long Joram, the current king of Israel, had been reigning. Alternate translation: “In the fifth year that Jorman son of Ahab was king of Israel” or “In year five of the reign of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fifth year

“year 5” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Jehoram began to reign

Jehoram, son of Jehoshaphat, became the king of Judah.

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Ahab
- the king of
- was king of (2)
- the king of
- Israel
- when Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- Judah
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- After King
- of Judah (2)
- the king
- son of Ahab
- had been ruling
- son Jehoram (2)
- in Israel
- Jehoshaphat's
- son Jehoram
- of Judah
- the king

ULT

¹⁶ Now in year five of Joram, the son of Ahab, the king of Israel, when Jehoshaphat was king of Judah, Jehoram, the son of Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, began to reign.

UST

¹⁶ After King Joram son of Ahab, had been ruling in Israel for almost five years, Jehoshaphat's son Jehoram became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 8:17

thirty-two years old

"32 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a son of
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- thirty
- in Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁷ He was a son of 32 years upon his beginning to reign, and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁷ He was thirty-two years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eight years.

2 Kings 8:18

Jehoram walked in the ways of the kings of Israel

Here “walking” is an idiom that refers to how he lived and reigned as king. At this time in history, the recent kings of Israel had been evil kings. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Jehoram was an evil king, just as other kings of Israel who ruled before him had been” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as the house of Ahab was doing

Here the “house” of Ahab refers to the members of Ahab’s family and his recent descendants. Ahab is Jehoram father-in-law. Alternate translation: “the same as the rest of the family of Ahab was doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for he had Ahab’s daughter as his wife

Jehoram had married king Ahab’s daughter.

what was evil in Yahweh’s sight

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the...of King Ahab](#)
- [family](#)
- [the evil things](#)
- [kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Now he walked in the way of [the kings of Israel](#), just as [the house of Ahab](#) did, for the daughter of Ahab was for him as wife. Indeed, he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁸ His wife was the daughter [of King Ahab](#). Like everyone in Ahab’s [family](#), he continually did [the evil things](#) that the previous [kings of Israel](#) had done. He did many things that [Yahweh](#) said were evil.

2 Kings 8:19

destroy Judah

Here “Judah” is a metonym for the people who live there. Alternate translation: “destroy the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

since he had told him that he would always give him descendants

“since Yahweh had told David that he would always give David descendants.” This refers to Yahweh’s promise to David that his descendants would always rule Judah. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “since he had told David that his descendants would always rule Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Judah
- David
- his servant
- through his sons

Translation Words - UST

- But Yahweh...want to get rid of
- the people of Judah
- David
- served him very well
- descendants

ULT

¹⁹ However, Yahweh did not want to annihilate Judah, for the sake of David his servant, just as he had said to him, in order to give to him a lamp through his sons all the days.

UST

¹⁹ But Yahweh did not want to get rid of the people of Judah, because of what he had promised David, who served him very well. He had promised David that his descendants would always rule Judah.

2 Kings 8:20

Edom revolted from under

Alternate translation: "Edom rebelled against"

the hand of Judah

Here the word "hand" refers to the control of Judah, and "Judah" refers specifically to the king of Judah. Alternate translation: "the control of the king of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they set a king over themselves

Alternate translation: "they appointed a king to rule over themselves"

ULT

²⁰ In his days, Edom rebelled from under [the hand of Judah](#), and they [seated a king to reign](#) over themselves.

UST

²⁰ During the time [that Jehoram ruled](#), [the king](#) of Edom rebelled against [Judah](#), and they appointed their own king.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the hand of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and they seated...to reign](#)
- [a king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Jehoram...the king](#)
- [ruled](#)
- [Judah, and they...their own king](#)
- [appointed](#)

2 Kings 8:21

Then Jehoram crossed over

What was “crossed over” can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Then Jehoram crossed the enemy lines” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...crossed over
- the princes of
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- So...went
- and the commanders
- get through the enemy lines

ULT

²¹ Then Jehoram **crossed over** to Zair along with all the chariotry with him. Now it happened he himself rose by night, and he struck Edom, who was encircling around him and **the princes of** the chariotry. But **the people** fled to their tents.

UST

²¹ **So** Jehoram **went** with his army and all their chariots to the city of Zair near the border of Edom. There the army of Edom surrounded them. But during the night, Jehoram **and the commanders** in their chariots were able to **get through the enemy lines** and escaped. And all his soldiers also fled to their homes.

2 Kings 8:22

General Information:

King Jehoram of Judah dies and his son Ahaziah becomes king.

So Edom has been in rebellion against the rule of Judah to this present day

Alternate translation: "So after that, Edom was no longer controlled by Judah, and it is still like that"

the rule of Judah

Here "Judah" refers to the king of Judah. Alternate translation: "the rule of the king of Judah" or "the authority of the king of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to this present day

to the time that this book was written

Libnah also revolted at the same time

Libnah rebelled against the king of Judah just as Edom had. Alternate translation: "During that same time, Libnah also rebelled against the king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Libnah

This is another city that was originally part of Judah. Here "Libnah" refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "the people of Libnah" (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the hand of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- So after that...was...Judah
- controlled by

ULT

²² Thus Edom rebelled from under the hand of Judah to this day. Then Libnah rebelled at that time.

UST

²² So after that, Edom was no longer controlled by Judah, and it is still like that. During that same time, the people of the city of Libnah also freed themselves from being controlled by Judah.

2 Kings 8:23

As for the other matters concerning Jehoram, all that he did

Alternate translation: "To read more about the history of Jehoram and what he did,"

are they not written ... Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Jehoram is in this other book. Alternate translation: "these things are written ... Judah." or "someone has written about them ... Judah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Events of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

²³ Now the rest of the matters of Jehoram, and all that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

²³ If you want to read about the other things that Jehoram did, they are written in Book of the [Events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 8:24

Jehoram rested with his fathers and was buried with them

Here “rested” is a polite way of referring to someone dying. After he died, his body was buried in the same place as the bodies of his forefathers. The phrase “was buried” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Jehoram died as his ancestors had died, and they buried him with his ancestors” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Then Ahaziah his son became king in his place

Alternate translation: “Then Ahaziah, Jehoram’s son, became king after he died”

ULT

²⁴ Then Jehoram slept with [his fathers](#) and he was buried with [his fathers](#) in the city of [David](#). Then [Ahaziah his son became king](#) in his place.

UST

²⁴ Jehoram died [and was buried](#) where [the other kings](#) of Judah had been buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city [of David](#). Then [Jehoram’s son Ahaziah became the king](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [his son](#)
- [Then...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the other kings](#)
- [and was buried](#)
- [of David. Then Jehoram’s](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [became the king](#)

2 Kings 8:25

General Information:

Ahaziah becomes king of Judah.

In the twelfth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel

This describes the time that Ahaziah began to reign as king of Judah by stating how long Joram, the current king of Israel, had reigned. Alternate translation: “in the twelfth year that Joram son of Ahab was king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

twelfth year

“12th year” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of
- Ahab
- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- Ahaziah
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- After Ahab's
- After Ahab's
- the king
- son
- son
- Israel
- Ahaziah
- of Judah

ULT

²⁵ During the year of year 12 of Joram, the son of Ahab, the king of Israel, Ahaziah, the son of Jehoram, the king of Judah, began to reign.

UST

²⁵ After Ahab's son Joram has been ruling in Israel for almost twelve years, Jehoram's son Ahaziah became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 8:26

twenty-two years

"22 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Athaliah ... Omri

Athaliah is the name of a woman. Omri is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaziah
- was a son of
- in Jerusalem
- was Athaliah
- Omri
- the king of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaziah
- was twenty-two
- in Jerusalem for only
- Athaliah
- King
- Omri
- of Israel

ULT

²⁶ Ahaziah was a son of 22 years upon his becoming king, and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. Now the name of his mother was Athaliah, the daughter of Omri, the king of Israel.

UST

²⁶ Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he started to rule. He ruled in Jerusalem for only one year. His mother's name was Athaliah, the daughter of King Ahab and the granddaughter of King Omri of Israel.

2 Kings 8:27

Ahaziah walked in the ways of

Here “walking” refers his behavior or the way in which he lived.
Alternate translation: “Ahaziah lived the same way as the others in”
(See: [Idiom](#))

the house of Ahab

Here the “house” of Ahab refers to his family. Alternate translation: “the family of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation.
Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a son-in-law to the house of Ahab

This explains Ahaziah’s family relationship to Ahab. Ahaziah’s father was married to Ahab’s daughter. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “the son of Ahab’s son-in-law” or “a grandson of King Ahab” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁷ Now he walked in the way of [the house of Ahab](#) and he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), [as the house of Ahab](#), for he was [a son-in-law of the house of Ahab](#).

UST

²⁷ [King Ahaziah](#) conducted his life just like the members of [Ahab’s family](#) had done. He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [as the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [a son-in-law of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Ahaziah](#) conducted his life just like the...of
- [that](#)
- [Ahab’s](#)
- [members](#)
- [family had done](#)
- [that](#)
- [members](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)

2 Kings 8:28

Ahaziah went with Joram son of Ahab, to fight against Hazael, king of Aram

The names of the three kings listed here are synecdoches and refer also to their armies that accompany them. Alternate translation: "Ahaziah's army joined the army of King Joram of Israel to fight against the army of King Hazael of Aram" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Ahab
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaziah's army...the army of King Joram
- Ahaziah's army...the army of King Joram
- King

ULT

²⁸ Then he went with Joram, [the son of Ahab](#), to battle against Hazael, [the king of Aram](#), at Ramoth Gilead, but Arameans struck Joram.

UST

²⁸ [Ahaziah's army](#) joined [the army of King Joram](#) of Israel to fight against the army of [King Hazael](#) of Aram. Their armies started fighting at the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead, and the soldiers of Aram wounded Joram.

2 Kings 8:29

to be healed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “to heal” or “to recover” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

against Hazael king of Aram

Here “Hazael” refers to himself and his army. Alternate translation: “the army of Hazael king of Aram” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Joram had been wounded

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the Arameans had wounded Joram” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁹ So Joram [the king returned](#) in order to heal himself in Jezreel from the wounds that Arameans had struck him [at Ramah](#), in his fighting against Hazael, [the king of Aram](#). [So Ahaziah, the son of Jehoram, the king of Judah](#), went down to see Joram, [the son of Ahab](#), in Jezreel because he was wounded.

UST

²⁹ King Joram [returned to the city](#) of Jezreel [in order to](#) recover from [his wounds](#). [King Ahaziah went to visit him there](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...returned](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#) (2)
- [Ahab](#)
- [at Ramah](#)
- [So Ahaziah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [returned](#)
- [to the city](#)
- [King Ahaziah went to visit him there](#)
- [King Ahaziah went to visit him there](#) (2)
- [of...in order to](#)
- [his wounds](#)
- [King Ahaziah went to visit him there](#)
- [his wounds](#)
- [King Ahaziah went to visit him there](#)
- [King Ahaziah went to visit him there](#)

2 Kings 9

2 Kings 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The life of Elisha continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

King Jehu

Elisha told a young prophet to go and tell Jehu that God had made him the new king. Jehu killed the kings of both Israel and Judah and Jezebel, the mother of the king. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

2 Kings 9:1

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of the prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

in your hand

The phrase “in your hand” refers to him taking the bottle with him. Alternate translation: “with you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Ramoth Gilead

Translate the name of this city the same as you did in [2 Kings 8:28](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now Elisha
- the prophet
- the prophets
- called
- the sons of
- Gird up
- in your hand

Translation Words - UST

- Meanwhile, the prophet
- prophets
- Elisha
- summoned
- prophets
- Get ready
- with you

ULT

¹ Now Elisha the prophet called to one of the sons of the prophets and he said to him, “Gird up your loins and take this flask of oil in your hand and go to Ramoth Gilead.

UST

¹ Meanwhile, the prophet Elisha summoned one of the other prophets. He said to him, “Get ready and go to the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead. Take this jar of olive oil with you.

2 Kings 9:2

Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi

This means that Jehoshaphat is Jehu's father and that Nimshi is Jehoshaphat's father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

companions

These are the people with whom Jehu was sitting.

conduct him to

Alternate translation: "go along with him to" or "take him along to"

an inner chamber

Alternate translation: "a private room"

Translation Words - ULT

- [for Jehu](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [his brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Jehoshaphat](#)
- [for a man named...son](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [of Jehoshaphat](#)
- [with him into](#)

ULT

² When you have come in to there, then look there [for Jehu, the son of Jehoshaphat, the son of](#) Nimshi. Then you must go in and you must make him rise up from the midst of [his brothers](#). Then you must bring him to a room within a room.

UST

² When you arrive there, search [for a man named Jehu son of Jehoshaphat](#) and grandson of Nimshi. Go [with him into](#) a room away from his companions,

2 Kings 9:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his head
- Yahweh
- as king
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- head. Then say
- Yahweh declares that he is appointing you
- be the king
- of Israel

ULT

³ Then you must take the flask of oil and you must pour out over his head and you must say, 'Thus says Yahweh: "I have anointed you as king over Israel."' Then you must open the door, and you must flee. So you must not tarry."

UST

³ and pour some of this oil on his head. Then say to him, 'Yahweh declares that he is appointing you to be the king of Israel.' Then open the door and run away as quickly as you can."

2 Kings 9:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the young man
- the...young man
- prophet

Translation Words - UST

- So the...prophet
- young
- young

ULT

⁴ So the young man, the prophet young man, went to Ramoth Gilead.

UST

⁴ So the young prophet went to Ramoth.

2 Kings 9:5

behold

The writer uses the word “behold” to direct attention to what follows. If you have a way of doing this in your language, you can use it here.

the captains of the army were sitting

Jehu was sitting among the captains. You may introduce Jehu to the story line here if this is necessary in your language. Alternate translation: “Jehu and some other army officers were sitting together” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

To which of us

The word “us” refers to Jehu and the other army captains.

Translation Words - ULT

- the princes of
- O prince
- O prince
- Jehu

Translation Words - UST

- the commanders
- Jehu
- replied...is the...for
- commander

ULT

⁵ Then he came in and look, the princes of the army were sitting. So he said, “A message to me concerning you, O prince.” Then Jehu replied, “To whom among all of us?” Then he said, “To you, O prince.”

UST

⁵ When he arrived, he saw that the commanders of the army were having a conference. He looked at Jehu and said, “Sir, I have a message for one of you.” Jehu replied, “Which one of us is the message for?” The young prophet replied, “It is for you, commander.”

2 Kings 9:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the house
- his head
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- Israel
- as king
- the people of

Translation Words - UST

- into a house. There the young prophet
- on Jehu's head and
- him, "Yahweh, the
- I
- God
- am appointing you
- Israelite
- be the king of my
- people

ULT

⁶ So he rose up and he came in to the house, and he poured out the oil over his head. Then he said to him, "Thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel: 'I have anointed you as king over the people of Yahweh, over Israel.

UST

⁶ So Jehu got up and went with the young prophet into a house. There the young prophet poured some olive oil on Jehu's head and said to him, "Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, declares this: 'I am appointing you to be the king of my Israelite people.

2 Kings 9:7

I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of Yahweh

Here the “blood” of the prophets and the servants refers to their deaths. Alternate translation: “I may avenge the deaths of my servants the prophets and all the servants of Yahweh” or “so that I may punish them for murdering my servants the prophets and all the servants of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the blood

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: “avenge the blood” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

who were murdered by the hand of Jezebel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whom Jezebel commanded her servants to murder” or “whose deaths were commanded by Jezebel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by the hand of Jezebel

This means that Jezebel commanded the people to be killed. Alternate translation: “by an order from Jezebel” or “by Jezebel’s command” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- Ahab
- your master
- the bloods of
- my servants
- the servants of
- the prophets
- Yahweh
- by the hand of
- Jezebel

Translation Words - UST

- kill
- your master King Joram
- and other people who served me
- son of Ahab, because
- son of Ahab, because
- I will...Ahab's wife
- and other people who served me
- Jezebel
- my prophets

ULT

⁷ Indeed, you must strike down [the house of Ahab, your master](#), that I may avenge [the bloods of my servants, the prophets](#), and the bloods of all [the servants of Yahweh, by the hand of Jezebel](#).

UST

⁷ You must [kill your master King Joram son of Ahab, because I will punish Ahab's wife Jezebel for murdering many of my prophets and other people who served me](#).

- and other people who served me

2 Kings 9:8

For the whole family of Ahab will perish, and I will cut off from Ahab every male child

Here to be “cut off” means to be killed. Alternate translation: “For the whole family of Ahab will perish, and I will cause every male child in his family to be killed” or “Every member of Ahab’s family will die, including every male child” (See: [Euphemism](#))

every male child

This phrase is used to refer to every male, but it specifies “child” to emphasize that it includes children. Alternate translation: “every male” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- Ahab
- from Ahab
- For...will perish
- and I will exterminate
- in Israel

Translation Words - UST

- kill
- of Ahab's
- in the family
- family
- I want to get rid of
- including young ones and old ones

ULT

⁸ For all of the house of Ahab will perish, and I will exterminate from Ahab anyone who urinates on a wall, so he is shut off and is abandoned in Israel.

UST

⁸ You must kill not only Joram but all of Ahab's family. I want to get rid of every male in the family, including young ones and old ones.

2 Kings 9:9

I will make the house of Ahab like

This means that God will destroy Ahab and his family just as he destroyed Jeroboam and Baasha and their families. Alternate translation: "I will get rid of the house of Ahab like I got rid of" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the house of

This phrase is used in this verse three times. Each time, the word "house" refers to the "family" of the man specified. Alternate translation: "the family of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Nebat ... Ahijah

These are the names of men. Translate the name "Nebat" the same as you did in [2 Kings 3:3](#). (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- as the house of
- Ahab
- Jeroboam
- the son of
- the son of
- Baasha
- Ahijah

Translation Words - UST

- I will get rid of Ahab's
- family, like I got rid of the...of two other kings of Israel
- I will get rid of Ahab's
- Jeroboam
- Jeroboam
- and Baasha
- and Baasha
- and Baasha

ULT

⁹ Thus I will give up the house of Ahab as the house of Jeroboam, the son of Nebat, and as the house of Baasha, the son of Ahijah.

UST

⁹ I will get rid of Ahab's family, like I got rid of the families of two other kings of Israel, Jeroboam and Baasha.

2 Kings 9:10

The dogs will eat Jezebel

This means that the dogs will eat her dead body. Alternate translation: "Dogs will eat the dead body of Jezebel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will eat
- Jezebel
- burying

Translation Words - UST

- And when Jezebel
- will not be buried
- will eat

ULT

¹⁰ Then the dogs [will eat Jezebel](#) in the territory of Jezreel, but there will be no [burying](#)." Then he opened the door and he fled.

UST

¹⁰ [And when Jezebel](#) dies, her corpse [will not be buried](#). Dogs [will eat](#) her corpse there in the city of Jezreel." After the young prophet said this, he left the room and ran.

2 Kings 9:11

the servants of his master

This refers to the other officers who were serving King Ahab.

mad fellow

Alternate translation: "crazy man"

You know the man and the kinds of things he says

Jehu says that he is a young prophet and they all are familiar with the kinds of things young prophets generally say. Alternate translation: "You know what kinds of things young prophets like him say"

Translation Words - ULT

- Then Jehu
- came out
- know
- the servants of
- his lords

Translation Words - UST

- When Jehu
- came
- know...young prophets like him say
- other commanders
- to him, "Is everything

ULT

¹¹ Then Jehu came out to the servants of his lords, and he said to him, "Is there peace? Why did this one who is mad come to you?" Then he replied to them, "You know the man and his babbling."

UST

¹¹ When Jehu came out of the room to where his other commanders were, they said to him, "Is everything all right? Why did that mad fellow come to you?" He replied, "You know what kinds of things young prophets like him say."

2 Kings 9:12

Tell us

Alternate translation: "Tell us what he said"

He said this and that to me

Alternate translation: "He talked about some things"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- as king
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- be the king
- of Israel

ULT

¹² However they said, "A lie! Please tell to us." So he replied, "He said like this and like that to me, saying, 'Thus says Yahweh: "I have anointed you as king over Israel."'"

UST

¹² They said, "You are lying. Tell us what he said!" He replied, "He told me several things, and then he told me that Yahweh said, 'I am appointing you to be the king of Israel.'"

2 Kings 9:13

took off his outer garment and put it under Jehu

In this culture, putting clothing on the ground was a way of honoring the king, so that his feet would not touch the dirty ground. Alternate translation: “took off their outer clothes and put them in front of Jehu for him to walk on” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They blew the trumpet and said

Not every man blew a trumpet. It is likely only one man blew a trumpet. Alternate translation: “One of them blew the trumpet and they all said” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they set](#)
- [with the shofar](#)
- [Jehu](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cloaks](#)
- [they blew trumpets](#)
- [Jehu is now the king](#)

ULT

¹³ So they hurried and they took, each one his garment [and they set](#) beneath him at the top of the steps. Then they blew [with the shofar](#) and they said, “[Jehu](#) has become king.”

UST

¹³ Then they all spread their [cloaks](#) on the steps of the building for Jehu to walk out on, and [they blew trumpets](#) and shouted, “[Jehu is now the king!](#)”

2 Kings 9:14

Nimshi

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [2 Kings 9:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Now Joram

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about how Joram was wounded and went to recover in Jezreel. (See: [Background Information](#))

all Israel

These refers only to the Israelite army and not to everyone who lives in Israel. Alternate translation: “he and his army” or “he and the Israelite army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hazael

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [2 Kings 8:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehu](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [guarding](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the king of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

ULT

14 Then [Jehu, the son of Jehoshaphat, the son of Nimshi](#), plotted together against Joram. Now Joram was [guarding](#) in Ramoth Gilead, he and all [Israel](#), from the face of Hazael, [the king of Aram](#).

UST

14-15 King Joram and his army had been defending Ramoth against the attacks by the army of the king of Aram. King Joram had returned to the city of Jezreel, to recover from being wounded in the battle against the army of Hazael, the king of Aram. And Jehu made plans to kill Joram. He said to his other commanders, “If you really want to help me, then make sure that no one leaves this city to go to warn the people of Jezreel about what I am planning to do.”

2 Kings 9:15

to be healed of

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “to recover from” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the wounds that the Arameans had given him

This means that he was wounded in battle with the Arameans. Alternate translation: “wounds that Joram got during the battle with the Aramean army” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

against Hazael king of Aram

This refers to Hazael and his army. Alternate translation: “against Hazael king of Aram and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Jehu said to the servants of Joram

This refers to the officers who were with Joram at Ramoth Gilead.

If this is your opinion

“If you are in agreement with me” Jehu uses this phrase to refer to if people are supportive of him being king and of his decisions. Alternate translation: “If you truly want me to be your king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in order to go tell this news in Jezreel

This refers to telling Joram and his army of Jehu’s plans. Alternate translation: “to warn king Joram and his army in Jezreel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- However...had returned
- the king
- the king of
- Jehu
- your mindset
- let...go out

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Jehu
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹⁵ However Joram the king had returned in order to get healed in Jezreel of the wounds that Arameans had stricken, when he was fighting with Hazael, the king of Aram. So Jehu said, “If it is your mindset, let not an escapee go out of the city, in order to go to report in Jezreel.”

UST

¹⁴⁻¹⁵ King Joram and his army had been defending Ramoth against the attacks by the army of the king of Aram. King Joram had returned to the city of Jezreel, to recover from being wounded in the battle against the army of Hazael, the king of Aram. And Jehu made plans to kill Joram. He said to his other commanders, “If you really want to help me, then make sure that no one leaves this city to go to warn the people of Jezreel about what I am planning to do.”

- [return, turn back](#)

2 Kings 9:16

Now Ahaziah

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about Ahaziah visiting Joram. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- So...rode
- Jehu
- Now Ahaziah
- the king of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Then Jehu and
- rode to
- And King
- Ahaziah
- of Judah

ULT

¹⁶ So Jehu rode and he went to Jezreel because Joram was resting over there. Now Ahaziah, the king of Judah, had gone down to see Joram.

UST

¹⁶ Then Jehu and his officers got into their chariots and rode to Jezreel, where Joram was still recovering. And King Ahaziah of Judah was there, visiting Joram.

2 Kings 9:17

watchman

guard

the company of Jehu as he came at a distance

Alternate translation: "Jehu and his men as they were still far away"

Translation Words - ULT

- was standing
- Jehu

Translation Words - UST

- was standing...in
- Jehu and

ULT

¹⁷ Now the watchman was standing on the tower in Jezreel, and he saw the company of Jehu at his coming. Then he said, "I am seeing a great company." So Joram said, "Take a rider, and send out to meet them and say, 'Is there peace?'"

UST

¹⁷ A guard was standing in the watchtower in Jezreel. He saw Jehu and his men approaching. He called out, "I see a lot of men who are approaching!" King Joram heard what the watchman said, so he said to his soldiers, "Send someone on a horse to go and find out if they are coming peacefully or in order to attack us."

2 Kings 9:18

What have you to do with peace?

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to tell the messenger that it is none of his concern if he comes in peace or not. Alternate translation: "It is not your concern if I have come in peace!" or "It is not for you to know if I have come in peace!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The messenger has met them, but he is not coming back

The watchman told King Joram that the man he sent out is not coming back with a reply to the king's question.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the horse](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [he has...returned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a man riding a horse](#)
- [The king wants to know if you are](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [but he was not returning alone](#)

ULT

¹⁸ So the rider of [the horse](#) went to meet him and he said, "Thus says [the king](#): 'Is there peace?'" Then [Jehu](#) replied, "What is there for you and for peace? Turn around to follow after me." Then the watchman informed, saying, "The messenger has come to them, but [he has](#) not [returned](#)."

UST

¹⁸ So [a man riding a horse](#) rode out to meet Jehu and said to him, "[The king wants to know if you are](#) coming peacefully." [Jehu](#) replied, "This is not the time for you to be concerned about peace! Turn around and come behind me!" So the guard in the watchtower reported that the messenger had reached the group that was approaching, [but he was not returning alone](#).

2 Kings 9:19

Then he sent out a second man on horseback, who came to them

Alternate translation: "Then king Joram sent a second messenger riding a horse, who went out to meet Jehu and his army"

a second man

Joram had already sent one man. This was the next. Alternate translation: "another man" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

What have you to do with peace?

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to tell the messenger that it is none of his concern if he comes in peace or not. See how you translated this question in [2 Kings 9:18](#). Alternate translation: "It is not your concern if I have come in peace!" or "It is not for you to know if I have come in peace!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a horse
- the king
- Peace
- Jehu

Translation Words - UST

- So King Joram
- another messenger...Jehu the same question
- Jehu
- concerned

ULT

¹⁹ So he sent out a second rider of a horse, and he came to them and he said, "Thus says the king: 'Peace.'" Then Jehu replied, "What is there for you and for peace? Turn around to follow after me."

UST

¹⁹ So King Joram sent another messenger who asked Jehu the same question. Again Jehu replied, "This is not the time for you to be concerned about peace! Turn around and follow me!"

2 Kings 9:20

For the way that the chariot is being driven is the way that Jehu son of Nimshi drives

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Because the driver of the chariot drives the same way that Jehu son of Nimshi drives" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he has...returned](#)
- [Jehu, the...of](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [back alone. And the leader of the group must be](#)
- [Jehu son of Nimshi, because...driving his chariot](#)
- [Jehu son of Nimshi, because...driving his chariot](#)

ULT

²⁰ So the watchman informed, saying, "He has come up to them, but [he has](#) not [returned](#), and the driving is as the driving of [Jehu, the son of](#) Nimshi, for with madness he drives."

UST

²⁰ Then the watchman reported again, "That messenger also reached them, but he is not coming [back alone](#). [And the leader of the group must be Jehu son of Nimshi, because](#) he is [driving his chariot](#) furiously, as Jehu does!"

2 Kings 9:21

each in his chariot

Alternate translation: "each in his own chariot"

They found him at

Alternate translation: "When they reached Jehu, he was at"

Naboth

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jezreelite

This refers to a person from Jezreel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Get harnessed](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#) (2)
- [Israel](#)
- [and Ahaziah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and...went forth](#)
- [thus they went forth](#)
- [Jehu](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Get](#)
- [did that](#)
- [ready](#)
- [Then King](#)
- [King](#)
- [Then King](#) (2)
- [King](#)
- [Ahaziah...Jehu, each one in his own chariot](#)
- [And it happened that](#)

ULT

²¹ Then Joram said, "[Get harnessed](#)." So he harnessed his chariot, and Joram, [the king of Israel and Ahaziah, the king of Judah, went forth](#), each man in his chariot, [thus they went forth](#) to meet [Jehu](#). Then they found him at the property of Naboth the Jezreelite.

UST

²¹ Joram said to his soldiers, "[Get](#) my chariot [ready](#)." So they [did that](#). [Then King](#) Joram and [King Ahaziah](#) both rode toward [Jehu, each one in his own chariot](#). [And it happened that](#) they met Jehu at the field that had previously belonged to Naboth!

2 Kings 9:22

What peace is there, when the idolatrous acts of prostitution and witchcraft of your mother Jezebel are so many?

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to state why he is not coming in peace. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "There can be no peace as long as your mother Jezebel practices and promotes so much idolatry in the form of prostitution and witchcraft." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehu](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Jezebel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehu](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Jezebel did](#)

ULT

²² Now it happened upon Joram seeing [Jehu](#), that he said, "Is there peace, [Jehu](#)?" Then he replied, "What is the peace, as long as continues the fornications of [Jezebel](#), your mother, and her many sorceries?"

UST

²² When Joram met [Jehu](#), he said to him, "Are you coming to act peacefully toward me?" [Jehu](#) replied, "How can there be peace while you and your people are bowing down to idols and practicing very much witchcraft like your mother [Jezebel did](#)?"

2 Kings 9:23

turned his chariot and fled

Alternate translation: "turned his chariot around to try to flee"

treachery

trickery or deception

Translation Words - ULT

- his hands
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaziah
- us
- and tried...flee

ULT

²³ So Joram turned his hands and he fled, and he said to Ahaziah, "Treachery, Ahaziah!"

UST

²³ Joram cried out, "Ahaziah, they have deceived us! They want to kill us!" So Joram turned his chariot around and tried to flee.

2 Kings 9:24

with his full strength

Alternate translation: “with all of his strength” or “with all of his power”

he sank down in his chariot

Joram died from being shot with arrow. Alternate translation: “Joram fell down dead in his chariot” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then Jehu
- his hand
- and...went out
- from his heart

Translation Words - UST

- But Jehu...with strength and
- But Jehu...with strength and
- went through
- and pierced Joram’s heart

ULT

²⁴ Then Jehu filled his hand with the bow and he struck Joram between his arms and the arrow went out from his heart. Then he sank down in his chariot.

UST

²⁴ But Jehu drew his bow with strength and shot an arrow that pierced Joram between his shoulder blades. The arrow went through Joram’s body and pierced Joram’s heart, and he slumped down dead in his chariot.

2 Kings 9:25

Bidkar

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pick him up and throw him

Alternate translation: "Pick up his dead body and throw it" or "Take his corpse and throw it"

Think about how

Alternate translation: "Remember"

after Ahab his father

This means that they rode in the chariot behind Ahab's chariot.
Alternate translation: "behind his father Ahab's chariot" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Yahweh placed this prophecy against him

Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this prophecy against Ahab"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahab](#)
- [his father](#)
- [when Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [father](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Yahweh said this about Ahab](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then he said to Bidkar, his third man, "Pick up and throw him in the portion of the field of Naboth the Jezreelite. For remember myself and you together riding as teams after [Ahab his father](#), [when Yahweh](#) raised this utterance against him:

UST

²⁵ Then Jehu said to his assistant Bidkar, "Take his corpse and throw it here into the field that belonged to Naboth. I am sure that you remember that when you and I were riding together in chariots behind King Joram's [father Ahab](#) that [Yahweh said this about Ahab](#),

2 Kings 9:26

I will surely make you pay for it

This means that he will punish Ahab as he deserves for the evil he has done. Alternate translation: "I will give you what you deserve for the evil you have done" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

pick him up and throw him on this field

Alternate translation: "take Joram's dead body and throw it into the field of Naboth"

according to the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "to fulfill the prophecy spoken to us"

Translation Words - ULT

- the blood of
- the blood of
- his sons
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- murder Naboth and his sons here
- murder Naboth and his sons here
- murder Naboth and his sons here
- that I will...him
- And I solemnly
- That will fulfill what Yahweh said

ULT

²⁶ 'Certainly, have I not seen [the blood of Naboth](#) and [the blood of his sons](#) yesterday, declaration of [Yahweh](#), indeed I will repay to you in this portion, declaration of [Yahweh](#). Therefore, now, pick up and throw him in the portion, according to the word of [Yahweh](#)."

UST

²⁶ 'Yesterday I saw Ahab [murder Naboth and his sons here](#). And I solemnly promise [that I will](#) punish [him](#) right here in this same field! So take Joram's corpse and throw it into that field! [That will fulfill what Yahweh said](#) would happen."

2 Kings 9:27

General Information:

This is the account of what happened to Ahaziah, the king of Judah, after Jehu killed Joram.

saw this

Alternate translation: "saw what happened to Joram"

Beth Haggan ... Gur ... Ibleam ... Megiddo

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

at the ascent of Gur

The word "ascent" means that they were going up hill while travelling on the road to Gur. Alternate translation: "on the road leading up to Gur" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [When Ahaziah](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [but he died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When King](#)
- [When King](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Beth](#)
- [of...But Jehu...him](#)
- [chariot...where he died](#)

ULT

²⁷ [When Ahaziah, the king of Judah](#), saw then he fled the way of [the house of](#) the garden. But [Jehu](#) pursued after him, and he said, "Also strike him down in the chariot along the ascent of Gur, which is near Ibleam." Thus he fled to Megiddo [but he died](#) there.

UST

²⁷ [When King Ahaziah](#) saw what happened, he fled in his chariot toward the city of [Beth Haggan](#). [But Jehu](#) pursued [him](#) and said to his other commanders, "Shoot him, also!" So they shot him with arrows while he was riding in his chariot on the road up to Gur, near the city of Ibleam. He continued going in his [chariot](#) until he reached the city of Megiddo, [where he died](#).

2 Kings 9:28

his fathers

Alternate translation: "his ancestors"

Translation Words - ULT

- his servants
- Then...carried...by chariot
- to Jerusalem
- his fathers
- David

Translation Words - UST

- His officials
- took
- back to Jerusalem
- of David
- ancestors

ULT

²⁸ Then his servants carried him by chariot to Jerusalem and they buried him in his tomb with his fathers in the city of David.

UST

²⁸ His officials took his corpse back to Jerusalem and buried it in the tombs in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, where his ancestors had been buried.

2 Kings 9:29

in the eleventh year of Joram son of Ahab

This describes the time that Ahaziah began to reign by stating how long the current king of Israel had reigned. Alternate translation: “in the eleventh year that Joram son of Ahab was king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

eleventh year

“11th year” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Ahab
- Ahaziah
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaziah
- had become the king of Judah when
- Joram had been...Israel
- Joram had been...Israel

ULT

²⁹ Now during the year of the 11th year of Joram, [the son of Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#) began to reign over [Judah](#).

UST

²⁹ [Ahaziah](#) had become the king of [Judah](#) when Joram had been ruling [Israel](#) for almost eleven years.

2 Kings 9:30

Painted her eyes, arranged her hair

Alternate translation: "put on makeup, made her hair look nice"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- then Jezebel
- So she applied
- her head

Translation Words - UST

- Then Jehu
- Jezebel
- she put
- toward the street below

ULT

³⁰ When **Jehu** came to Jezreel, **then Jezebel** heard. **So she applied** her eyes with mineral powder, and she made **her head** beautiful, and she looked down through the window.

UST

³⁰ **Then Jehu** went to Jezreel. When Ahab's widow **Jezebel** heard what had happened, **she put** paint on her eyelids, and combed her hair to make it beautiful, and looked out the window of the palace **toward the street below**.

2 Kings 9:31

Are you coming in peace, you Zimri, your master's murderer?

Jezebel uses this rhetorical question to accuse Jehu of not coming peacefully. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are certainly not coming in peace, you Zimri, your master's murderer!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you Zimri, your master's murderer

Here Jezebel calls Jehu "Zimri" to say that he is a murderer. Zimri was a commander of the army of Israel who murdered the king of Israel because he wanted to be king. Alternate translation: "you murdered your master, just like Zimri murdered his master" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Zimri

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [As Jehu](#)
- [in the gate](#)
- [murderer of](#)
- [his master](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [While Jehu was entering](#)
- [the city gate](#)
- [You are a murderer just like him](#)
- [I think you are certainly not](#)

ULT

³¹ [As Jehu](#) came [in the gate](#), then she said, "Is there peace, Zimri, [murderer of his master?](#)"

UST

³¹ [While Jehu was entering the city gate](#), she called out to him, "You are like Zimri! [You are a murderer just like him! I think you are certainly not](#) coming to act peacefully toward me!"

2 Kings 9:32

Who is on my side

To “be on someone’s side” means to be loyal to them and supportive of them. Alternate translation: “Who is loyal to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [looked up](#)

ULT

³² So he lifted up [his face](#) to the window and he said, “Who is with me? Who?” Then two, three eunuchs looked down towards him.

UST

³² Jehu [looked up](#) toward the window, and then he said, “Who is on my side? Anyone?” Two or three palace officials looked down at him from a window.

2 Kings 9:33

Throw her down

Jehu was telling the eunuchs to throw Jezebel out of the window.

So they threw Jezebel down

The eunuchs threw Jezebel out of the high window and she died when she hit the ground. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Jehu trampled her underfoot

This means that he drove his horses over her body. Alternate translation: "Jehu's horses that were pulling his chariot trampled her body under their feet" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the horses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [horses that were pulling the chariots](#)

ULT

³³ Then he said, "Throw her down." So they threw her down, and some of her blood splattered on the wall and on [the horses](#), and they trampled her.

UST

³³ Jehu said to them, "Throw her down here!" So they threw her down and Jehu ordered that his men drive their chariots and horses over her body, and that is how she was killed. Some of her blood splattered on the city wall and on the [horses that were pulling the chariots](#).

2 Kings 9:34

See now to

The phrase “see now to” means to give your attention to whatever is specified. Alternate translation: “Now go to” (See: [Idiom](#))

for she is a king’s daughter

Since Jezebel was the daughter of a king, it was necessary to bury her properly. Alternate translation: “because she is a king’s daughter and therefore should be buried properly” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he ate](#)
- [attend to](#)
- [a king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and ate and](#)
- [some of his men](#)
- [she is a king’s](#)

ULT

34 Then he went in, [and he ate](#) and he drank, and he said, “Please [attend to](#) this cursed woman and bury her, for a daughter of [a king](#) is she.”

UST

34 Then Jehu went into the palace [and ate and](#) drank. Then he said to [some of his men](#), “Take the corpse of that women whom Yahweh has cursed and bury it, because [she is a king’s](#) daughter and therefore should be buried properly.”

2 Kings 9:35

they found no more of her than

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "all they found that was left of her body were"

the palms of her hands

The palm is the inner part of the hand.

ULT

³⁵ So they went to bury her, but they did not find any of her except only the skull, and the feet, and the palms of the hands.

UST

³⁵ But when they went to get her corpse to bury it, all that was left was only her skull and the bones of her feet and her hands. Everything else was gone.

2 Kings 9:36

the Tishbite

This refers to someone from the city of Tishbe. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 1:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- So they returned
- Yahweh
- by the hand of
- his servant
- Elijah
- will eat
- the flesh of
- Jezebel

Translation Words - UST

- When they reported this to Jehu...said
- Yahweh
- servant
- servant
- Elijah
- will eat the
- flesh
- of Jezebel's corpse

ULT

³⁶ So they returned and they reported to him, and he said, "The word of Yahweh it is, that he spoke by the hand of his servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying, 'In the portion of Jezreel the dogs will eat the flesh of Jezebel,

UST

³⁶ When they reported this to Jehu, he said, "That is what Yahweh said would happen! He told his servant Elijah, 'In the city of Jezreel, dogs will eat the flesh of Jezebel's corpse.

2 Kings 9:37

the body of Jezebel will be like dung on the surface of the fields ... so that no one will be able to say

This speaks of the pieces of Jezebel's body being scattered in the field as if they were dung spread in the field. Since the pieces of her body were so small and spread out there was nothing that could be collected and buried. Alternate translation: "the pieces of Jezebel's body will be scattered like dung in the fields ... so that no one will be able to recognize them and say" (See: [Simile](#))

dung

manure, specifically dung used as a fertilizer

so that no one will be able to say, "This is Jezebel."

Alternate translation: "so that no one will be able to recognize her body." or "so no one will be able to tell this was Jezebel."

Translation Words - ULT

- Jezebel
- is Jezebel
- the surfaces of

Translation Words - UST

- will be able to recognize them and
- Jezebel
- These are Jezebel's bones

ULT

³⁷ and the remains of Jezebel will be as dung on the surfaces of the field in the portion of Jezreel, that they will not say, "This is Jezebel.""

UST

³⁷ Her bones will be scattered there in Jezreel like dung, with the result that no one will be able to recognize them and say, "These are Jezebel's bones.""

2 Kings 10

2 Kings 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's prophecy against the family of Ahab was fulfilled. Jehu killed all of Ahab's descendants and all the worshipers of Baal. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#))

2 Kings 10:1

seventy descendants

"70 descendants" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehu wrote letters and sent them to Samaria

This means that Jehu sent a messenger to deliver the letters.

Alternate translation: "Jehu wrote letters and sent a messenger to deliver them in Samaria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now Ahab
- for Ahab
- sons
- Jehu
- to Samaria
- the princes of
- the elders

Translation Words - UST

- There were...descendants
- of King Ahab who were living in
- Ahab's children
- Jehu...and made copies of it and
- of the city
- of the city
- the elders, and

ULT

¹ Now Ahab had 70 sons in Samaria. Meanwhile Jehu wrote letters that he sent to Samaria, to the princes of Jezreel, the elders and to the attendants for Ahab, saying,

UST

¹ There were seventy descendants of King Ahab who were living in Samaria. Jehu wrote a letter and made copies of it and sent them to the rulers of the city, to the elders, and to those who raised and tutored Ahab's children.

2 Kings 10:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- are the sons of
- your masters
- and the horses

Translation Words - UST

- ones who are taking care of the king's
- descendants
- horses

ULT

² "So, now, at the coming of this letter to you, and with you are the sons of your masters, and with you are the chariot and the horses, and a fortified city and the war equipment,

UST

² This is what he wrote: "You are the ones who are taking care of the king's descendants. You have chariots, horses, and weapons, and you live in cities that have walls around them. So as soon as you receive this letter,

2 Kings 10:3

set him on his father's throne

Here, sitting on the king's throne means to be appointed as king. Alternate translation: "make him king in his father's place" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for your master's royal line

"your master's descendants." Here the man that they selected to be king is referred to as Ahab's royal line of descendants. Alternate translation: "to defend your master's descendant" or "to defend him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the best
- among the sons of
- your masters
- your masters
- and you should install
- the throne of
- his father
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- choose one of the king's descendants
- be your king. Then
- choose one of the king's descendants
- the one who is the
- the one who is the
- best qualified
- and appoint him
- prepare to fight to defend him

ULT

³ so consider the best and the upright among the sons of your masters and you should install on the throne of his father, and fight on behalf of the house of your masters."

UST

³ choose one of the king's descendants, the one who is the best qualified, and appoint him to be your king. Then prepare to fight to defend him."

2 Kings 10:4

But they were terrified

Alternate translation: "Then they were very afraid"

the two kings

Alternate translation: "two kings, Joram and Ahaziah"

could not stand before Jehu

Here "stand" means to be able to endure under trouble. Alternate translation: "could not endure against Jehu" or "could not resist Jehu"

So how can we stand?

The descendants use the rhetorical question to imply that they cannot stand against Jehu. Alternate translation: "We cannot stand against him either!" or "We cannot resist him either!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- But they were...afraid
- the...kings
- did...stand
- will we stand

Translation Words - UST

- afraid
- King Joram and King Ahaziah could
- resist
- resist

ULT

⁴ But they were exceedingly exceedingly afraid, and they said, "Look, the two kings did not stand before his face. So how will we stand ourselves?"

UST

⁴ But when they got those letters and read them, they became very afraid. They said, "King Joram and King Ahaziah could not resist him; how can we resist him?"

2 Kings 10:5

the man who was over the city

Here to be “over” something means to have authority and responsibility over it. Alternate translation: “the man who was in charge of the city”

they who raised the children

This refers to the people who raised the king’s children. Alternate translation: “they who raised the king’s children” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Do what is good in your eyes

Here Jehu’s “eyes” refer to his “sight.” His “sight” refers to what he thinks. Alternate translation: “Do what you judge to be right” or “Do whatever you think is the best” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house
- and the elders
- Jehu
- your servants
- what is good

Translation Words - UST

- the officer
- palace
- Jehu
- you...us
- best

ULT

⁵ Then he who was over the house, and who was over the city, and the elders, and the attendants sent to Jehu, saying, “We are your servants, and all that you say to us we will do. We will not make anyone king. Do what is good in your eyes.”

UST

⁵ So the officer who was in charge of the palace and the mayor of the city sent a message to Jehu saying, “We want to serve you, and we are ready to do whatever you tell us to do. We will not appoint anyone to become our king. You do whatever you think is the best.”

2 Kings 10:6

wrote a letter the second time to them

Joram had written one letter. This was the next. Alternate translation: “again wrote a letter to them” or “wrote another letter to them” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

on my side

To “be on someone’s side” means to be loyal to them and supportive of them. Alternate translation: “loyal to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

listen

to hear and obey

to my voice

Here Jehu’s “voice” refer to what he says. Alternate translation: “to what I say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you must take the heads ... and come to me

It is implied that they are to bring the heads of the Ahab’s descendant and present them to Jehu. Alternate translation: “you must take the heads ... and bring them to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you must take the heads of the men of your master’s descendants

This refers to killing them and removing their heads. Alternate translation: “kill your master’s descendants and cut off their heads” (See: [Euphemism](#))

seventy in number

“70 in number” (See: [Numbers](#))

who were bringing them up

This means that they were supervising them and teaching them. Alternate translation: “who were raising them” or “who were supervising them” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- the sons of
- Now the sons of
- your masters
- the king
- who were raising

ULT

⁶ Then he wrote a second letter to them, saying, “If you are for me, and you are heeding to my voice, take [the heads of the men of the sons of your masters](#) and come to me at this time tomorrow to Jezreel.” [Now the sons of the king](#), 70 men, were with the nobles of the city, [who were raising](#) them.

UST

⁶ So Jehu sent a second letter to them, writing this: “If you are [on my side](#), and [if](#) you are ready to obey me, kill King Ahab’s [descendants](#) and cut off their [heads](#) and bring their heads to me here in Jezreel at this time tomorrow.” Now the seventy [descendants of King Ahab](#) [were being](#) brought up and [supervised](#) by the leaders of the city of Samaria.

Translation Words - UST

- on my side, and if
- descendants
- descendants
- heads
- of King Ahab were being
- supervised

2 Kings 10:7

seventy persons

"70 persons" (See: [Numbers](#))

sent them to Jehu

This means that they sent people to deliver the baskets to Jehu.
Alternate translation: "sent people to take them to Jehu" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the king
- and they slaughtered
- and they put
- their heads

Translation Words - UST

- the...Ahab
- of...s descendants...their
- and cut off
- put
- their heads in

ULT

⁷ Now it happened at the coming of the letter to them, that they took [the sons of the king and they slaughtered](#) 70 men, [and they put their heads](#) in the baskets, and they sent to him at Jezreel.

UST

⁷ When they received the letter from Jehu, they killed all seventy of [Ahab's descendants and cut off their](#) heads. They [put their heads in](#) baskets and sent them to Jehu at Jezreel.

2 Kings 10:8

of the king's sons

Alternate translation: "of Ahab's descendants"

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- the sons of
- the king
- the gate

Translation Words - UST

- the heads of Ahab's
- descendants
- So Jehu commanded that the
- and that the heads should stay there

ULT

⁸ Then the messenger came and he reported to him, saying, "They have brought the heads of the sons of the king." So he replied, "Put them in two piles at the entrance of the gate until the morning."

UST

⁸ A messenger came to Jehu and told him, "They have brought the heads of Ahab's descendants." So Jehu commanded that the heads should be put in two piles at the city gate and that the heads should stay there until the next morning.

2 Kings 10:9

Jehu went out and stood

Alternate translation: "Jehu went to the city gate and stood before the people"

You are innocent

It can be stated clearly what they were innocent of. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: "You are innocent of what happened to Joram" or (2) this means that they are not held responsible for the deaths of Joram's family. Alternate translation: "You are innocent of what happened to Joram and his family" or "You are innocent of this matter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

See

Jehu uses this word here to draw the peoples' attention to what he says next. Alternate translation: "Listen" or "Hear my words"

but who killed all these?

Jehu uses a rhetorical question to cause the people to think deeply about the situation. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: "but the men of Samaria are responsible for killing Ahab's 70 descendants" or (2) Alternate translation: "but it was Yahweh's will for these men to die" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [that he went out](#)
- [the people](#)
- [are righteous](#)
- [my master](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he went out](#)
- [the people, "I am the one who...King Joram](#)
- [and...him](#)
- [not guilty](#)

ULT

⁹ Now it happened in the morning [that he went out](#) and he stood up, and he said to all [the people](#), "You [are righteous](#). Look, I myself conspired against [my master](#) and I killed him, but who slaughtered all these?"

UST

⁹ The next morning [he went out](#) to the city gate and said to all [the people](#), "[I am the one who](#) plotted against King [Joram](#) and killed [him](#). You are [not guilty](#) of doing that. But it was Yahweh, not I, who commanded that all these descendants of Ahab should be killed.

2 Kings 10:10

certainly realize

Alternate translation: “understand” or “be aware of the fact that”

no part of Yahweh’s word ... will fall to the ground

This speaks of everything happening that Yahweh has said will happen as if it were something that did not die and fall to the ground. Alternate translation: “No part of Yahweh’s word ... will fail” or “every part of Yahweh’s word ... will happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Yahweh has done

This speaks of Yahweh causing Ahab’s descendants to be killed as if he killed them himself. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has caused to happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Know
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh...for
- Elijah
- to the ground
- the house of
- Ahab
- through the hand of
- his servant

Translation Words - UST

- I want you to know
- has happened. He has caused to happen what
- has happened. He has caused to happen what
- that Yahweh said
- has happened. He has caused to happen what
- has happened. He has caused to happen what
- has happened. He has caused to happen what
- told the prophet Elijah
- told the prophet Elijah
- told the prophet Elijah

ULT

¹⁰ **Know** then, that nothing falls from the word of **Yahweh to the ground** that **Yahweh** has spoken concerning **the house of Ahab, for Yahweh** has done what he spoke **through the hand of his servant Elijah.**”

UST

¹⁰ **I want you to know** that everything **that Yahweh said** would happen **has happened. He has caused to happen what he told the prophet Elijah** would happen.”

2 Kings 10:11

So Jehu killed all ... and his priests

Jehu did not kill all of these people personally, rather he commanded for them to be killed. Alternate translation: “So Jehu commanded for all ... to be killed” or “So Jehu commanded for all ... to die” (See: [Metonymy](#))

all who remained

Alternate translation: “all who were alive” or “all who were left”

until none of them remained

This means that they had all been killed. Alternate translation: “until all of them had been killed” or “until all of them were dead” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehu](#)
- [of the house of](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [and who were acquainted with him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Jehu](#)
- [all](#)
- [Ahab's...close friends](#)
- [officers](#)

ULT

11 So [Jehu](#) struck down all who were left [of the house of Ahab](#) in Jezreel, and all his important ones, [and who were acquainted with him](#), and his priests, until that he did not let a survivor remain for him.

UST

11 [Then Jehu](#) executed [all](#) the other relatives of Ahab in Jezreel, all [Ahab's officers](#), [close friends](#), and his priests. He did not allow any of them to remain alive.

2 Kings 10:12

Beth Eked of the shepherd

This was the name of a place where sheep were sheared. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Samaria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Samaria](#)

ULT

¹² Then he arose and he came in and he went [to Samaria](#). He was at Beth Eked of the shepherds along the way,

UST

¹² Then Jehu left Jezreel and went toward [Samaria](#). While he was going there, at a place called Beth Eked,

2 Kings 10:13

going down to greet

Alternate translation: "going to visit"

the children of the king

Alternate translation: "the children of King Joram"

Translation Words - ULT

- when Jehu
- the brothers of
- the brothers of
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- the king of
- the king
- Judah
- the sons of
- and the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- he
- some relatives of King
- and the...of King Joram's
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- of Judah
- relatives
- other members
- and the...of King Joram's
- family

ULT

¹³ when Jehu found the brothers of Ahaziah, the king of Judah. So he said, "Who are you?" Then they replied, "We are the brothers of Ahaziah, and we have come down regarding the welfare of the sons of the king and the sons of the mighty lady."

UST

¹³ he met some relatives of King Ahaziah of Judah. He asked them, "Who are you?" They replied, "We are relatives of King Ahaziah. We are going to Jezreel to visit the children of Queen Jezebel and the other members of King Joram's family."

2 Kings 10:14

Take them alive

This means to capture them, but not to kill them. Alternate translation: "Seize them" or "Capture them" (See: [Idiom](#))

So they took them alive

Alternate translation: "So they captured them"

forty-two men

"42 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

He did not leave any of them alive

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "He killed all of them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [alive](#)
- [alive](#)
- [and they slaughtered them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Seize them](#)
- [Seize them](#)
- [killed](#)

ULT

¹⁴ So he said, "Capture them [alive](#)!" So they captured them [alive and they slaughtered them](#) near the well of Beth Eked, 42 men; and he did not leave a man among them.

UST

¹⁴ Jehu said to his men, "[Seize them](#)!" So they seized them and killed all of them at the well of Beth Eked. There were forty-two people whom they [killed](#). They did not allow any of them to remain alive.

2 Kings 10:15

Jehonadab son of Recab

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Is your heart with me, as my heart is with yours?...“It is.”

Here a person’s “heart” refers to their loyalty. If a person’s loyalty is “with someone,” it means that they are loyal to that person. Alternate translation: “Will you be loyal to me, as I will be loyal to you?...‘I will.’” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

If it is, give me your hand

“If so, put your hand in mine” or “If so, let us shake hands” In many cultures, when two people shake hands, it confirms their agreement. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- So he blessed him
- sincere
- your heart
- my heart
- your heart
- your hand
- his hand

Translation Words - UST

- by...a son...Jehu
- greeted him
- Are you thinking
- I...thinking
- I...thinking
- in the same way
- So Jonadab...hands with
- hand to mine...and Jehu helped him to get into

ULT

¹⁵ Then he went from there, and he found Jehonadab, [the son of](#) Recab, coming to meet him. [So he blessed him](#) and he said to him, “Is it [sincere](#) with [your heart](#), just as [my heart](#) is with [your heart](#)?” So Jehonadab replied, “It is.” “Since it is, give [your hand](#).” So he gave [his hand](#), and he lifted him up to himself into the chariot.

UST

¹⁵ Then Jehu continued to travel toward Samaria. Along the road he was met by Jonadab, [a son of](#) Rechab. [Jehu greeted him](#) and said to him, “[Are you thinking in the same way](#) that I am [thinking](#)?” Jonadab replied, “Yes, I am.” Jehu said, “If you are, join your [hand to mine](#).” [So Jonadab](#) joined [hands with](#) him, and [Jehu helped him to get into](#) his chariot.

2 Kings 10:16

see my zeal

The word “zeal” may be expressed as an adjective. Alternate translation: “see how zealous I am” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Come
- for Yahweh
- So they had...ride

Translation Words - UST

- to obey
- Yahweh.” So they...to Samaria
- rode

ULT

16 Then he said, “Come with me and see my zeal for Yahweh.” So they had him ride in his chariot.

UST

16 Jehu said to him, “Come with me, and you will see how eager I am to obey Yahweh.” So they rode together to Samaria.

2 Kings 10:17

royal line

Alternate translation: "entire royal family"

just as was told them before by the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken to Elijah

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to fulfill the prophecy that Elijah had spoken, which Yahweh gave to him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria](#)
- [of Ahab](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Samaria](#)
- [Ahab's relatives who were still alive](#)
- [was what Yahweh told](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

¹⁷ When he entered [Samaria](#), then he struck down all the ones who were remaining [of Ahab](#) in Samaria, until he utterly annihilated him, according to the word of [Yahweh](#), which he had spoken to [Elijah](#).

UST

¹⁷ When they arrived in [Samaria](#), Jehu killed all of [Ahab's relatives who were still alive](#). He did not spare any of them. That [was what Yahweh told Elijah](#) would happen.

2 Kings 10:18

gathered all the people together

Alternate translation: "called all the people and had them come to where he was"

all the people together

Alternate translation: "all the people of Samaria"

serve him much

Alternate translation: "serve him much more than Ahab"

ULT

18 Then **Jehu** gathered all **the people** and he said to them, "**Ahab served** the Baal a little, **Jehu will serve him** much.

UST

18 Then **Jehu** summoned all the **people of Samaria**, and said to them, "**King Ahab** was **devoted to** your god Baal a little bit, but **I will serve him** much more.

Translation Words - ULT

- **Jehu**
- **Jehu**
- **the people**
- **Ahab**
- **served**
- **will serve him**

Translation Words - UST

- **Jehu**
- **Then...I**
- **people of Samaria**
- **King Ahab**
- **devoted to**
- **will serve him**

2 Kings 10:19

Let no one be left out

Alternate translation: "Do not leave anyone out"

Whoever does not come will not live

This means that if they do not come they will be executed. Alternate translation: "We will execute anyone who does not come" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- summon
- prophets of
- his servants
- the servants of
- his priests
- Let...be missing
- will be missing
- a...sacrifice
- will...live
- However Jehu
- destroy

Translation Words - UST

- summon
- prophets
- kill all those who worshiped
- of Baal's...and all the others who worship Baal
- he was planning to
- priests
- sacrifice
- them, because
- there. Any of them who is
- there will be executed...But Jehu
- there will be executed." But Jehu

ULT

¹⁹ Now therefore [summon](#) to me all the [prophets of](#) the Baal, all [his servants](#), and all [his priests](#). Let not a man [be missing](#), for I have a great [sacrifice](#) for the Baal. Anyone who [will be missing](#) will not [live](#)." [However Jehu](#) acted with deceitfulness, in order to [destroy the servants of](#) Baal.

UST

¹⁹ So now [summon](#) all the [prophets](#) of Baal, all [of Baal's priests](#), and all the [others who worship Baal](#). I am going to make a great [sacrifice](#) to Baal. I want all of them to be [there](#). [Any of them who is not there will be executed](#)." But Jehu was planning to trick [them](#), because he [was planning to kill all those who worshiped Baal](#).

2 Kings 10:20

Set a time

This means to designate and prepare a period of time for something. In this case they were to prepare for an assembly for Baal. Alternate translation: "Prepare" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehu](#)
- [Consecrate](#)
- [a festive assembly](#)
- [So they called out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Jehu commanded](#)
- [set aside a day to honor Baal](#)
- [So they sent out a proclamation about that day](#)
- [So they sent out a proclamation about that day](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then [Jehu](#) said, "[Consecrate a festive assembly](#) for the Baal." [So they called out](#).

UST

²⁰ Then [Jehu commanded](#), "Announce that we are going to [set aside a day to honor Baal](#)." [So they sent out a proclamation about that day](#).

2 Kings 10:21

Then Jehu sent

This means that he sent messengers to take this message throughout the land. Alternate translation: “Then Jehu sent messengers” or “Then Jehu sent the message” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that there was not a man left who did not come

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “so that every worshiper of Baal was there” or “so that every man came” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

it was filled

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they filled it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- Israel
- the servants of
- the house of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Jehu
- messages throughout Israel telling everyone
- Baal...all
- stayed at home
- temple

ULT

²¹ Then Jehu sent throughout all Israel and all the servants of the Baal came, so not a man was left who had not come. So they entered the house of the Baal, and the house of the Baal was filled edge to edge.

UST

²¹ Jehu decided what day they would gather and sent messages throughout Israel telling everyone what day to gather, and on that day, everyone who worshiped Baal came. No one stayed at home. They all went into the huge temple of Baal and filled it from one end to the other.

2 Kings 10:22

who kept the priest's wardrobe

Here "to keep" something means to care for it and oversee it.
Alternate translation: "who was in charge of the priest's wardrobe" or "who cared for the priest's wardrobe" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bring out](#)
- [a garment](#)
- [the servants of](#)
- [So he brought out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to bring](#)
- [to bring](#)
- [who worshiped Baal. So the priest](#)
- [did that](#)

ULT

²² Then he said to the one who was over the apparel, "[Bring out a garment](#) for all [the servants of](#) the Baal." [So he brought out](#) to them the ceremonial clothing.

UST

²² Jehu told the priest who took care of the sacred robes [to bring](#) them out and give them to the people [who worshiped Baal. So the priest did that.](#)

2 Kings 10:23

he said to the worshipers of Baal

Alternate translation: "Jehu said to the people who were in the temple to worship Baal"

but the worshipers of Baal alone

Alternate translation: "but that only worshipers of Baal are here"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- the son of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the servants of

Translation Words - UST

- Then Jehu
- into the temple of Baal
- with Jonadab, and
- to the people who were there
- Yahweh has come in

ULT

²³ Next Jehu and Jehonadab, the son of Recab, entered the house of the Baal, and he said to the servants of the Baal, "Search and see that there is not here with you among the servants of Yahweh, but only the servants of the Baal by themselves alone."

UST

²³ Then Jehu went into the temple of Baal with Jonadab, and he said to the people who were there to worship Baal, "Be sure that only those who worship Baal are here. Be sure that no one who worships Yahweh has come in."

2 Kings 10:24

If any of the men whom I bring into your hands escapes

Here the “hands” of the men refer to their “control.” By being stationed around the temple they were in control of the situation and it was up to them whether people were able to escape or not.
Alternate translation: “If any of these men that I brought into your control escapes” or “If any of the men that are inside gets away” (See: [Metonymy](#))

whoever lets that man escape, his life will be taken for the life of the one who escaped

Alternate translation: “we will kill the man who let him escape”

his life will be taken

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This is a polite way to refer to a person being killed.
Alternate translation: “we will take his life” or “we will kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the life of the one

“in exchange for the life of the man.” Here this man is referred to by his “life” to emphasize that he did not die.
Alternate translation: “for the man” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sacrifices](#)
- [and burnt offerings](#)
- [Now Jehu](#)
- [would let slip away](#)
- [your hands](#)
- [his life](#)
- [his life](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to offer sacrifices and other offerings to Baal](#)
- [that would be burned whole on the altar](#)
- [Jehu had...of](#)
- [allows...will be executed](#)
- [allows...will be executed](#)
- [allows...will be executed](#)
- [to escape](#)

ULT

²⁴ Then they entered to make [sacrifices and burnt offerings](#). Now [Jehu](#) had placed for himself 80 men at the outside, and he directed, “The man who [would let slip away](#) out of the men who I am bringing into [your hands](#), [his life](#) will be in place of [his life](#).”

UST

²⁴ Then he and Jonadab prepared [to offer sacrifices and other offerings to Baal that would be burned whole on the altar](#) that was there in Samaria. But [Jehu](#) had stationed eighty [of](#) his men outside the temple, and had said to them, “I want you to kill all the people who are in the temple. Anyone who [allows](#) one of them [to escape will be executed!](#)”

2 Kings 10:25

he said to the guard and to the captains

You may need to state that Jehu came out of the temple before he spoke to the guard. Alternate translation: “he went back outside of the temple of Baal and said to the guards and captains” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with the edge of the sword

The men used swords to kill the worshipers of Baal. This phrase refers to their swords. Alternate translation: “with their swords” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

threw them out

This means that threw the dead bodies of the people out of the temple. Alternate translation: “threw their dead bodies out of the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- Do...let...go forth
- a sword
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- As soon as Jehu and Jonadab had...killing the animals that
- went outside
- with their swords
- into the inner room of the temple

ULT

²⁵ Now it happened upon his finishing to perform the burnt offering that **Jehu** said to the runners and to the third men, “Go in! Strike them down! Do not let a man **go forth**.” So they struck them with the edge of **a sword**, and the runners and the third men cast away, and they went up to the fortified area of **the house of** the Baal.

UST

²⁵ **As soon as Jehu and Jonadab had** finished **killing the animals that** would be completely burned to be an offering to Baal, they **went outside** and said to the guards and officers, “Go in and kill all of them! Do not allow any of them to escape!” So the guards and officers went in and killed them all **with their swords**. Then they dragged their corpses outside the temple. Then they went **into the inner room of the temple**,

2 Kings 10:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then they brought out
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- and they carried out
- that was there

ULT

²⁶ Then they brought out the standing stones of the house of the Baal, and they set it on fire.

UST

²⁶ and they carried out the sacred pillar of Baal that was there, and they burned it.

2 Kings 10:27

made it a latrine

“made it a public toilet” A latrine is a bathroom, or a toilet area, usually for a camp or buildings used to house soldiers.

which it is to this day

This means that something has remained in a certain condition until the present time. Alternate translation: “and since then it has always been that way” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [and they made it](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and then they burned down the temple](#)
- [and made it a latrine](#)

ULT

²⁷ Also they tore down the standing image of the Baal, and they tore down [the house of](#) the Baal [and they made it](#) as a cesspit, until this day.

UST

²⁷ So they destroyed that pillar that honored Baal, [and then they burned down the temple, and made it a latrine](#). And that is what it is up to the present time.

2 Kings 10:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- from Israel

Translation Words - UST

- That is how Jehu
- in Israel

ULT

²⁸ Thus Jehu eradicated the Baal from Israel.

UST

²⁸ That is how Jehu got rid of the worship of Baal in Israel.

2 Kings 10:29

did not leave the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

This speaks of Jehu committing the same sins that Jeroboam committed, as if Jeroboam's sins were a place that Jehu did not leave. Alternate translation: "did not stop committing the kinds of sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had committed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Nebat

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Kings 3:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- the son of
- he caused...to sin
- Israel
- Jehu
- gold
- were in Bethel
- were in Bethel

Translation Words - UST

- But Jehu
- sins
- Jeroboam
- Jeroboam
- of Israel
- to sin...the gold statues...in the cities
- Bethel
- Bethel

ULT

²⁹ Only the sins of [Jeroboam, the son of Nebat](#), by which [he caused Israel to sin](#), [Jehu](#) did not depart from after them, the calves of [gold](#) that [were in Bethel](#) and that were in Dan.

UST

²⁹ [But Jehu](#) did not stop committing the kinds of [sins](#) that [Jeroboam](#) had committed, sins that led the people [of Israel to sin](#) by worshiping [the gold statues](#) of calves [in the cities](#) of [Bethel](#) and Dan.

2 Kings 10:30

in executing

Alternate translation: "in carrying out" or "in accomplishing"

what was right in my eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "what I judge to be right" or "what I consider to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Ahab

Here Ahab's "house" refers to his "family." Alternate translation: "the family of Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all that was in my heart

Here the "heart" represents "desire." Alternate translation: "all that I desired for you to do" or "all that I wanted you to do" (See: [Metonymy](#))

sit on the throne

Sitting on the throne represents ruling as king. Alternate translation: "be the kings" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to the fourth generation

This refers to his son, grandson, great-grandson, and great-great-grandson. Alternate translation: "to the 4th generation" or "for four more generations" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Jehu
- to the house of
- Ahab
- sons of
- the throne of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Then Yahweh
- Jehu
- of Ahab's
- of Ahab's
- descendants
- will all...of Israel
- be kings

ULT

³⁰ So Yahweh said to Jehu, "Because that you have done well by doing what was right in my eyes, according to all that was in my heart you did to the house of Ahab, sons of fourth ones will sit for you on the throne of Israel."

UST

³⁰ Then Yahweh said to Jehu, "You have done what pleased me by getting rid of all of Ahab's descendants. So I promise you that your son and grandson and great-grandson and great-great-grandson will all be kings of Israel."

2 Kings 10:31

Jehu took no care to walk in the law of Yahweh

Here “walking” refers to “living.” Alternate translation: “Jehu was not careful to live according to the law of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

with all his heart

Here the “heart” refers to a person’s will and desire. Alternate translation: “in everything that he did” or “with all of his will” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam

To “turn away” from something means to stop doing it. Alternate translation: “Jehu did not stop from sinning in the same ways as Jeroboam” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

³¹ However Jehu did not take care to walk in the instruction of Yahweh, the God of Israel, with all his heart. He did not turn away from with regard to the sins of Jeroboam, by which he caused Israel to sin.

UST

³¹ But Jehu did not obey all the laws of Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people. He did not stop committing the sins that Jeroboam had committed, sins that induced the Israelite people to sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- However Jehu
- did...take care
- in the instruction of
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- Israel
- his heart
- the sins of
- he caused...to sin
- Jeroboam

Translation Words - UST

- But Jehu
- obey all
- the laws
- of Yahweh, the
- God of
- the Israelite
- the Israelite people
- people. He did
- Jeroboam
- had committed
- sins

2 Kings 10:32

began to cut off regions from Israel

Alternate translation: “began to cause the territory controlled by Israel to become smaller”

regions

areas of land

Hazael defeated

Here “Hazael” refers to himself and his army. Alternate translation: “Hazael and his army” or “King Hazael’s Aramean army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hazael

See how you translated this king’s name in [2 Kings 8:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [some of Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh...become smaller](#)
- [began to cause the territory controlled by Israel](#)
- [of Aram conquered much of the Israelite](#)

ULT

³² In those days [Yahweh](#) began to cut off [some of Israel](#), and Hazael struck them in every border of [Israel](#),

UST

³² At that time, [Yahweh began to cause the territory controlled by Israel to become smaller](#). The army of King Hazael [of Aram conquered much of the Israelite](#) territory.

2 Kings 10:33

from the Jordan eastward

Alternate translation: "from the land east of the Jordan"

Aroer ... Bashan

These are all names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Arnon

"the Arnon River" This is the name of a river. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jordan](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [the Gilead](#)
- [along with the Bashan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the Jordan River](#)
- [the regions of](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [and Bashan](#)

ULT

³³ from [the Jordan](#) towards the rising of the sun, all [the land of the Gilead](#): the Gadite, and the Reubenite, and the Manassite, from Aroer, which is along the valley of Arnon, namely the Gilead [along with the Bashan](#).

UST

³³ He conquered the parts east [of the Jordan River](#), as far south as the city of Aroer on the Arnon River. That included [the regions of Gilead and Bashan](#), where the tribes of Gad, Reuben, and half of the tribe of Manasseh lived.

2 Kings 10:34

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehu](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehu](#)
- [of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

³⁴ Also the rest of the matters concerning [Jehu](#), and all that he did, and all his might, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

³⁴ If you want to read more about all the other things that [Jehu](#) did, they are written in Book of the Events [of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 10:35

Jehu slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in Samaria

This means that Jehu died. This speaks of him being buried where his ancestors were buried as if he were sleeping with them. Alternate translation: "Jehu died and they buried him in Samaria, where they had also buried his ancestors" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Jehoahaz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehu
- his fathers
- his son
- Then...became king

Translation Words - UST

- Jehu...and was...in
- His son
- became the king
- father

ULT

³⁵ Then Jehu slept with his fathers, and they buried him in Samaria. Then Jehoahaz his son became king in his place.

UST

³⁵ Jehu died, and was buried in Samaria. His son Jehoahaz became the king in place of his father.

2 Kings 10:36

The time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty-eight years

Alternate translation: "Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria for twenty-eight years"

twenty-eight years

"28 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehu](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehu](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

³⁶ Thus the days that [Jehu](#) reigned over [Israel](#) in Samaria were 28 years.

UST

³⁶ [Jehu](#) had ruled in Samaria as the king [of Israel](#) for twenty-eight years.

2 Kings 11

2 Kings 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of the spiritual revival in Judah under Joash. The people returned to properly worshiping Yahweh. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Athaliah's evil actions

The mother of the king of Judah, Athaliah, killed all the royal children so that she could rule. She was not able to kill the baby Joash because his aunt hid him in the temple. When Joash was seven years old, the chief priest conspired with the army and made Joash king. They killed Athaliah and destroyed the temple of Baal. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

2 Kings 11:1

Athaliah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

saw that her son was dead

Alternate translation: “became aware that her son was dead”

she arose and killed all the royal children

Athaliah did not personally kill the children. Alternate translation: “she commanded her servants to kill all the members of Ahaziah’s family who might become king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Athaliah](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [her son](#)
- [and she destroyed](#)
- [the offspring of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When King Ahaziah’s](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [her son](#)
- [had been](#)
- [the members of Ahaziah’s family](#)

ULT

¹ [Now Athaliah](#) was the mother of [Ahaziah](#), and she saw that [her son](#) had died. So she arose [and she destroyed](#) all [the offspring of](#) the kingdom.

UST

¹ [When King Ahaziah’s](#) mother [Athaliah](#) saw that [her son had been](#) killed, she commanded that all [the members of Ahaziah’s family](#) who might become king must be executed.

2 Kings 11:2

took Joash son of Ahaziah, and hid him away from among the king's sons who were killed, along with his nurse; she put them into a bedroom. They hid him from Athaliah so that he was not killed.

Alternate translation: "took Ahaziah's very young son Joash and hid him and his nursemaid in a bedroom in the temple. So he was not killed"

Jehosheba

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Joash

This is the name of a man.

Translation Words - ULT

- King
- the king
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah
- the son of
- the sons of
- Athaliah

Translation Words - UST

- So Ahaziah's...were all about to be murdered
- and Ahaziah's
- Ahaziah's very young son
- sons
- King
- in the temple
- So he was

ULT

² But Jehosheba, the daughter of the [King](#) Jehoram, sister of [Ahaziah](#), had taken Joash, [the son of Ahaziah](#), and she secretly brought him away from the midst of [the sons of the king](#) who were being put to death, he along with his wet nurse, into the chamber of the bed. Thus they hid him from the face of [Athaliah](#) so that he was not killed.

UST

² So Ahaziah's sons were all about to be murdered. But Jehosheba, who was [King](#) Jehoram's daughter and Ahaziah's half-sister, took [Ahaziah's very young son](#) Joash and hid him and his nursemaid in a bedroom [in the temple](#). So he was not killed.

2 Kings 11:3

He remained with her six years, hidden in the house of Yahweh, while Athaliah reigned over the land

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Joash and Jehosheba hid him in the house of Yahweh for six years while Athaliah ruled the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

land

This is a metonym for the people who live in the land. Alternate translation: "people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [while Athaliah](#)
- [the land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in the temple](#)
- [in the temple](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

³ Then he was with her [in the house of Yahweh](#), keeping hidden six years, [while Athaliah](#) was reigning over [the land](#).

UST

³ He stayed with Jehosheba for six years. All during that time, he remained hidden [in the temple](#), while [Athaliah](#) ruled [Judah](#).

2 Kings 11:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the story of what happens after Joash, the son of King Azariah, was hidden in the temple after all King Azariah's other descendants were killed.

In the seventh year

"In the seventh year of Athaliah's reign" or "In year 7 of Athaliah's reign" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehoiada

the high priest (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the commanders of hundreds

The phrases "commander of hundreds" is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word "hundreds" represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the word translated as "hundreds" does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: "the commanders of military divisions" (See: [Numbers](#))

Carites

This is the name of a particular group of the royal guards.

brought them to himself

"had them come to meet with him." Jehoiada, the high priest, had these military men report to him at the temple.

Then he showed them the king's son

Jehoiada revealed to them that Joash, King Azariah's son, was still alive.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoiada](#)
- [the princes of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the king](#)
- [at the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Then he cut](#)
- [a covenant](#)
- [and he made...swear an oath](#)
- [in the house of](#)

ULT

⁴ Now in the seventh year, [Jehoiada](#) sent and he took [the princes of](#) the hundreds of the Carite and of the runners, and he brought them to himself [at the house of Yahweh](#). [Then he cut](#) with them [a covenant](#), and he made them [swear an oath in the house of Yahweh](#), and he showed them [the son of the king](#).

UST

⁴ Six years later, [Jehoiada](#) the high priest summoned the [officers who supervised](#) the royal bodyguards [and the palace guards](#). He told them to come to [the temple](#). There he required them to [solemnly promise](#) that they would do what he told them to do. And he showed [King Ahaziah's son Joash to them](#).

Translation Words - UST

- Jehoiada
- officers
- Ahaziah's son Joash to them
- the...who supervised
- the temple
- and the palace
- the temple
- the temple
- solemnly promise
- solemnly promise
- King

2 Kings 11:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he commanded them
- the Sabbath
- the house of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- He gave them these
- on the Sabbath day
- the
- palace

ULT

⁵ Then he commanded them, by saying, "This is the thing that you must do. The third part of you coming in on the Sabbath also will be keepers of the watch over the house of the king,

UST

⁵ He gave them these instructions: "There are three groups of you guards. When one group finishes their work on the Sabbath day, divide yourselves into three smaller groups. One group must guard the palace.

2 Kings 11:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- will be at the gate of
- at the gate
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- Gate
- at the gate
- other

ULT

⁶ and the third part will be at the gate of Sur, and the third part at the gate behind the runners. Thus you will keep the watch of the house, alternating.”

UST

⁶ Another group must guard at the Sur Gate. The other group must guard at the gate behind the other groups.

2 Kings 11:7

for the king

They were to keep watch for the purpose of protecting the king from harm. Alternate translation: "in order to protect King Joash" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the ones going out on
- the Sabbath
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- working on
- the Sabbath day
- temple
- temple
- protect little King Joash

ULT

⁷ The two hands among you, all [the ones going out on the Sabbath](#), also they will keep the watch over [the house of Yahweh](#) for [the king](#).

UST

⁷ The two groups that are not [working on the Sabbath day](#) must guard the [temple](#) to [protect little King Joash](#).

2 Kings 11:8

Whoever enters within your ranks

"Anyone who tries to go past you while you are protecting King Joash." A rank refers to a line of soldiers.

let him be killed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you must kill him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You must stay with the king when he goes out, and when he comes in

These two opposite things are a merism that refers to everything the king does. Alternate translation: "You must stay near the king at all times" (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- in his hand

Translation Words - UST

- You must stand...the king
- he
- hands

ULT

⁸ So you must encircle around [the king](#) round about, each man with his weapons [in his hand](#), and the one who comes in to the ranks will be put to death. So be with [the king](#) at his going out and at his coming in.

UST

⁸ [You must stand](#) around [the king](#) wherever [he](#) goes, with your weapons in your [hands](#). You must kill anyone who comes near you."

2 Kings 11:9

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Each one

Alternate translation: “Each commander”

Translation Words - ULT

- the princes of
- Jehoiada
- Jehoiada
- the priest
- the priest
- had commanded
- the Sabbath
- the Sabbath
- ones going out on

Translation Words - UST

- The officers
- supervised
- Each one brought to Jehoiada
- Jehoiada told them to do
- supervised
- those who were about to start their work
- on the Sabbath day
- on the Sabbath day
- on the Sabbath day

ULT

⁹ So the princes of the hundreds did according to all that Jehoiada the priest had commanded. Then they took, each man with his men, ones coming in on the Sabbath, with ones going out on the Sabbath; and they came to Jehoiada the priest.

UST

⁹ The officers who supervised the guards did what Jehoiada told them to do. Each one brought to Jehoiada the guards that he supervised—the guards who were just finishing their work and those who were about to start their work on the Sabbath day.

2 Kings 11:10

were in the house of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "were stored in the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- to the princes of
- belonged to the King
- David
- were in the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- priest
- The...to the commanders
- had belonged to King
- David
- were kept in the temple
- were kept in the temple

ULT

¹⁰ Then the priest gave to the princes of the hundreds the spears and the shields that belonged to the King David, that were in the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹⁰ The priest distributed to the commanders of the guards the spears and shields that had belonged to King David, that were kept in the temple.

2 Kings 11:11

from the right side of the temple to the left side, near the altar and the temple

Some versions translate the first two occurrences of “temple” as “palace.” These versions say, “from the right side of the palace to the left side of the palace, near the altar and the temple.”

Translation Words - ULT

- in his hand
- the house
- the house
- to the altar
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- in his
- Then he commanded all the...to
- Then he commanded all the...to
- hand
- the king

ULT

¹¹ So the runners stood, each man with his weapons **in his hand**, from the right side of **the house** to the left side of **the house**, **to the altar** and to the house, around **the king** round about.

UST

¹¹ **Then he commanded all the** guards **to** stand in their positions, each one with his sword **in his hand**, all around **the king**.

2 Kings 11:12

brought out the king's son Joash

Jehoiada, the high priest, brought king Ahaziah's son, Joash, out from the temple apartment where he had been raised in hiding.

gave him the covenant decrees

Alternate translation: "presented him with the book of the law"

anointed him

The priest poured olive oil on the head of Joash as a symbol that he was now the king. Alternate translation: "poured some olive oil on Joash's head" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

clapped their hands

Clapping their hands was a sign of the happiness of the people at the anointing of the new king.

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he brought out
- the son of
- the king
- the king
- Then they installed...as king
- a palm
- May...live

Translation Words - UST

- put the crown
- were written the rules that the kings needed
- king...for many years
- were written the rules that the kings needed
- were written the rules that the kings needed
- clapped their hands
- will live

ULT

¹² Then he brought out the son of the king, and he set the crown on him, and the testimony. Then they installed him as king and they anointed him, and they struck a palm. Also they said, "May the king live!"

UST

¹² Then he brought Joash out. He put the crown on his head and gave him a scroll on which were written the rules that the kings needed to obey. Then he poured some olive oil on Joash's head and proclaimed that he was now the king. The people all clapped their hands and shouted, "We desire that the king will live for many years!"

2 Kings 11:13

the noise of the guard

This refers to the noise made by all the soldiers.

she came to the people in the house of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "she came to where the people had gathered at the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- Athaliah
- the people
- the people
- at the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- When Athaliah
- by the guards and the other people
- the people were gathered
- the temple
- the temple

ULT

¹³ When Athaliah heard the sound of the runners, the people, then she came to the people at the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹³ When Athaliah heard the noise that was being made by the guards and the other people, she ran to the temple where the people were gathered.

2 Kings 11:14

She looked, and, behold, the king was standing

Alternate translation: "When she arrived, she was surprised to see King Joash standing"

by the pillar

Alternate translation: "by one of the pillars of the temple"

as the custom was

Alternate translation: "which was the usual place for the king to stand"

the trumpeters

Alternate translation: "the people who played the trumpets"

Athaliah tore her clothes

She tore her clothes to express that she was very upset and angry. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Treason! Treason!

Alternate translation: "You are traitors! You have betrayed me!"

Translation Words - ULT

- was the king
- the king
- standing
- Athaliah
- and she cried out
- the column
- according to the custom
- and the princes
- the people of
- the land
- were rejoicing
- on the trumpets

Translation Words - UST

- king
- place at the temple where the kings usually
- standing there...one of the...which was the
- and that the people were shouting
- and that the people were shouting

ULT

¹⁴ Then she saw, and here was the king standing by the column, according to the custom, and the princes and the trumpeters were near the king. Now all the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing on the trumpets. So Athaliah tore her garments and she cried out, "Treason! Treason!"

UST

¹⁴ She saw the new king standing there alongside one of the big pillars, which was the place at the temple where the kings usually stood. She saw that he was surrounded by the temple officers and men blowing trumpets, and that the people were shouting joyfully, and some of them were also blowing trumpets. She tore her clothes to show her distress and shouted, "You are traitors! You have betrayed me!"

- joyfully
- and some of them were also blowing trumpets
- She tore her
- and shouted
- standing there...one of the...which was the
- big pillars
- stood

2 Kings 11:15

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Bring her out between the ranks

“Take her away between two rows of guards” or “Lead her away with a row of soldiers on each side of her.” Ranks are lines or rows of soldiers.

Anyone who follows her

It is implied that a person who followed her would be trying to help her. Alternate translation: “Anyone who follows to try to rescue her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoiada](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Then...ordered](#)
- [inspectors of](#)
- [the princes of](#)
- [Bring...out](#)
- [away from inside](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [with the sword](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoiada](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [her...anyone who tries to rescue her](#)
- [said](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [her...anyone who tries to rescue her](#)
- [temple of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [her away](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Then [Jehoiada the priest](#) ordered the [princes of](#) the hundreds, [inspectors of](#) the army, and he said to them, “[Bring](#) her [out to away from inside](#) of the ranks. Now the one who comes after her, surely kill [with the sword](#).” For [the priest](#) had said, “Do not let her be put to death [in the house of Yahweh](#).”

UST

¹⁵ [Jehoiada](#) immediately [said](#), “Kill [her](#), but do not do it here at the [temple of Yahweh](#)! Take [her away](#) between two rows of guards. And kill [anyone who tries to rescue her](#)!”

2 Kings 11:16

they seized her as she reached the place where the horses enter the palace grounds

Some versions translate this as “the guards seized her and took her to the palace, to the place where horses enter the courtyard.”

Translation Words - ULT

- So they laid
- hands
- the horses
- at the house of
- the king
- and she was put to death

Translation Words - UST

- seized her
- took
- to the palace
- horses
- the courtyard
- They killed her

ULT

¹⁶ So they laid hands upon her when she came in the way of the entrance of the horses at the house of the king, and she was put to death there.

UST

¹⁶ She tried to flee, but the guards seized her and took her to the palace, to the place where horses enter the courtyard. They killed her there.

2 Kings 11:17

also between the king and the people

Alternate translation: "also made a covenant between the king and the people"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiada
- Then...cut
- the covenant
- Yahweh
- for Yahweh
- the king
- the king
- between the people
- as a people
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- Then Jehoiada made a covenant
- Then Jehoiada made a covenant
- always obey Yahweh
- the king and
- people...loyal to Joash their king
- the people, that they would
- the king and
- always obey Yahweh
- the people, that they would
- covenant

ULT

¹⁷ Then Jehoiada cut the covenant between Yahweh and between the king and between the people, to be as a people for Yahweh, and between the king and between the people.

UST

¹⁷ Then Jehoiada made a covenant between the king and the people, that they would always obey Yahweh. He also made an covenant requiring the people to be loyal to Joash their king.

2 Kings 11:18

all the people of the land

This is a generalization to show that a large group of people tore down the temple of Baal. Alternate translation: a large number of the people of the land” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the house of Baal

Alternate translation: “the temple of Baal”

Mattan

This is the name of a male priest. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people of
- the land
- Yahweh
- the house of
- the house of
- his altar
- the altars
- thoroughly
- they killed
- the priest of
- the priest
- and...set

Translation Words - UST

- people
- people
- at the temple of Yahweh
- temple of
- to the
- They smashed the altars
- the altars
- statues
- killed
- priest of
- stationed
- stationed

ULT

¹⁸ So all [the people of the land](#) went into [the house of](#) the Baal and they pulled down [his altar](#) and his images they smashed into pieces [thoroughly](#). Then [they killed](#) Mattan, [the priest of](#) the Baal, at the front faces of [the altars](#) and [the priest set](#) overseers for [the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁸ Then all the [people](#) of Israel who were there went [to the temple of](#) Baal and tore it down. [They smashed the altars](#) and the [statues](#) of Baal. They also [killed](#) Mattan the [priest of](#) Baal, in front of [the altars](#). Jehoiada [stationed](#) guards [at the temple of Yahweh](#).

2 Kings 11:19

General Information:

They take the new king, Joash, from the temple to the palace.

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. This could mean: (1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Carites

This is the name of a particular group of the royal guards.

brought down the king from the house of Yahweh and they went into the king’s house

Alternate translation: “brought the king from the temple to the palace”

Translation Words - ULT

- the princes of
- the people of
- the land
- the king
- the king
- the kings
- from the house of
- at the house of
- Yahweh
- the gate of
- the throne of

Translation Words - UST

- of the temple, the officers who supervised
- brought the king
- the
- where the kings had always sat
- palace
- from the temple to the palace
- the people followed them
- the people followed them
- palace
- at the Guard Gate
- throne

ULT

¹⁹ Then he took the princes of the hundreds, and the Carite, and the runners, and all of the people of the land, and they brought down the king from the house of Yahweh. Then they came in the way of the gate of the runners at the house of the king and he sat on the throne of the kings.

UST

¹⁹ Then he and the officers of the temple, the officers who supervised the royal bodyguards, and the king's bodyguards brought the king from the temple to the palace. All the people followed them. Joash entered the palace at the Guard Gate and sat down on the throne, where the kings had always sat.

2 Kings 11:20

all the people of the land rejoiced

This is a generalization. It is possible that some did not rejoice.
Alternate translation: “many people in the land rejoiced” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the city was quiet

Alternate translation: “the city was calm” or “the city was peaceful”

Translation Words - ULT

- So...rejoiced
- the people of
- the land
- Athaliah
- with the sword
- at the house of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- the people of
- Judah
- rejoiced
- And because Athaliah had been
- killed
- house, household
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁰ So all of the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet, for Athaliah they had put to death with the sword at the house of the king.

UST

²⁰ All the people of Judah rejoiced. And because Athaliah had been killed, the city was quiet.

2 Kings 11:21

Joash was seven years old

"Joash was 7 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [was a son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²¹ Joash [was a son of](#) seven years upon his beginning to reign.

UST

²¹ Joash was seven years old when he became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 12

2 Kings 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the end of the story of the revival in Judah under Joash.

Special concepts in this chapter

Temple

Joash repaired the temple. In many ways, the temple represents the relationship between the people and Yahweh.
(See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

2 Kings 12:1

In the seventh year of Jehu

“During year 7 of the reign of Jehu over Israel” (See: [Numbers](#))

the reign of Joash began

Alternate translation: “Joash began to reign over Judah”

Zibiah

This was the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zibiah, of Beersheba

Alternate translation: “Zibiah, from the city of Beersheba”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehu](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹ In the seventh year of [Jehu](#), Joash began to reign, and he reigned 40 years [in Jerusalem](#). Now the name of his mother was Zibiah, [from Beersheba](#).

UST

¹ When Jehu had been ruling Israel for almost seven years, Joash became the king of Judah. He ruled in Jerusalem for forty years. His mother was Zibiah, from the city of Beersheba.

2 Kings 12:2

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judges to be right” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

instructing him

Alternate translation: “teaching him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [the priest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)

ULT

² Now Joash did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#) all of his days, because [Jehoiada the priest](#) had instructed him.

UST

² All during the time that Joash was alive, he did what pleased Yahweh, because Jehoiada the priest instructed him.

2 Kings 12:3

But the high places were not taken away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "But the people did not destroy the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The people still sacrificed and burned incense on the high places

Yahweh forbid the people to worship at these place. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "The people continued to go to places that were unacceptable to Yahweh, to make sacrifices and burn incense" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The people](#)
- [were sacrificing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people, people group](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

ULT

³ Only the high places they did not remove. [The people](#) still [were sacrificing](#) and were burning incense on the high places.

UST

³ But the places where the people worshiped Yahweh elsewhere in the land were not destroyed. They continued to offer sacrifices and burn incense at those places, instead of at the place that God had chosen for them in Jerusalem.

2 Kings 12:4

the money that is brought in as sacred offerings into the house of Yahweh

This refers to money that people gave to support the temple. This money came in three forms that are described in the rest of the sentence.

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- the silver of
- silver
- the silver of
- the silver
- the sacred purposes
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the persons in
- the heart of

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- life, live, living, alive
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- house, household
- house, household
- silver
- silver
- silver
- silver

ULT

⁴ Now Joash said to the priests, "All the silver of the sacred purposes, that is brought into the house of Yahweh, silver moving through, each man, the silver of the persons in his estimation, all the silver when it goes up into the heart of a man to bring into the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁴ Joash said to the priests, "You must take all the money which the people give, both the money they are required to pay and the money that they themselves decide to give, as sacred offerings to buy things for the temple.

2 Kings 12:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- will strengthen
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- house, household
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁵ the priests should receive for them, each man from his acquaintance, so they will strengthen the breach of the house, in every place where is found there a breach."

UST

⁵ Each priest must take the money from the people who come to him, and he must use that money to repair the temple whenever he sees that there is something that needs to be repaired."

2 Kings 12:6

by the twenty-third year of King Joash

Alternate translation: "when Joash had been king for twenty three years"

Translation Words - ULT

- of the King
- the priests
- had...strengthened
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- house, household
- king, kingship
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁶ Now it had happened that by the year of the 23rd year of the King Joash, the priests had not strengthened the breach of the house.

UST

⁶ But after Joash had been ruling for almost twenty-three years, the priests still had not repaired anything in the temple.

2 Kings 12:7

Why have you not repaired anything in the temple?

Joash asks this question to rebuke the priests. Alternate translation: "You should have been repairing the temple!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

give it to those who can make the repairs

Alternate translation: "pay workers who will do the repairs"

Translation Words - ULT

- the King
- Then...called
- for Jehoiada
- the priest
- and for the priests
- are...strengthening
- the house
- the house
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- Jehoiada
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- silver
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁷ Then [the King](#) Joash [called for Jehoiada the priest and for the priests](#), and he said to them, "Why are you not [strengthening](#) the breach of [the house](#)? So, now, you may not take [silver](#) from your acquaintances, but for the breach of [the house](#) you should give it."

UST

⁷ So Joash summoned Jehoiada and the other priests and said to them, "Why are you not repairing things in the temple? Do not take any more money from those who are paying taxes. Take the money that was collected for the purpose of repairing the temple and pay that money to the workers who will do the repairs."

2 Kings 12:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests
- silver
- the people
- strengthening
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- house, household
- people, people group
- silver
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁸ So the priests were in agreement to not accepting silver from the people and to not strengthening the breach of the house.

UST

⁸ The priests agreed to do that, and they also agreed that they themselves would not do the repair work.

2 Kings 12:9

Instead, Jehoiada

Alternate translation: "Instead of the priests collecting the money, Jehoiada"

on the right side as one comes into the house of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "on the right side of the entrance to the temple"

put into it

Alternate translation: "put into the chest" or "put in the box"

the money that was brought

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the money that people brought" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiada
- the priest
- the priests
- wooden container
- the altar
- the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the keepers of
- the threshold
- the silver

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jehoiada
- house, household
- house, household
- silver
- threshold, doorway
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

⁹ However, [Jehoiada the priest](#) took one [wooden container](#), and he pierced a hole in its lid, and he set it beside [the altar](#), on the right side as anyone is coming into [the house of Yahweh](#). Then [the priests](#), [the keepers of the threshold](#), put in there all [the silver](#) that was brought into [the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

⁹ Then Jehoiada took a chest and bored a hole in the lid. He placed it alongside the altar for burning incense that was on the right as anyone enters the temple. The priests who guarded the entrance to the temple put in the box the money that was brought to the temple.

2 Kings 12:10

put the money in bags and then count it

Many versions put this in a more logical order such as “count the money and put it in bags.”

put the money in bags

This could mean: (1) “put the money in bags” or (2) “tied up the money in bags” .

the money found

Alternate translation: “the money that they found in the chest”

Translation Words - ULT

- was the silver
- the silver (2)
- in the wooden container
- the scribe of
- the king
- and the...priest
- at the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- scribe
- Yahweh
- house, household
- king, kingship
- silver
- silver (2)

ULT

¹⁰ Now it happened upon their seeing that abundant **was the silver in the wooden container**, that **the scribe of the king and the high priest** went up and they bound and they weighed out **the silver** that was found **at the house of Yahweh**.

UST

¹⁰ Whenever they saw that there was a lot of money in the chest, the king's secretary and the high priest would come and count the money. Then they would put it in bags and tie the bags shut.

2 Kings 12:11

weighed out

Alternate translation: "counted"

into the hands of men

Here "hands" refers to the men. Alternate translation: "to men" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

who took care of the temple

Alternate translation: "who repaired the temple"

carpenters

people who build and repair things made of wood

Translation Words - ULT

- [the silver](#)
- [the hands of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and they brought it out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

11 Then they gave [the silver](#) that was measured out into [the hands of](#) the doers of the work, the ones attending to [the house of Yahweh, and they brought it out](#) to the fabricators of the wood and to the builders, the ones preparing [the house of Yahweh](#),

UST

11 Then they would distribute the money to the men who supervised the work in the temple. The supervisors would use that money to pay the carpenters and builders who did the repair work in the temple,

2 Kings 12:12

masons

people who build with stone

stonecutters

people who cut stones into the correct size and shape

for buying timber and cutting stone

Alternate translation: "to buy wood and to cut stone"

for all that was needed to be paid to repair it

Alternate translation: "to pay for all of the needed repairs"

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- the house
- Yahweh
- would come forth

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- house, household
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹² and to the masons and to the hewers of the stone, and to buy timbers and stones for hewing in order to strengthen the breach of the house of Yahweh, and for all that would come forth for the house for repair.

UST

¹² and the masons and the stone cutters. Also with some of that money they bought timber and stones that had been cut to be used in the repair work, and to pay all the other expenses for the repair work.

2 Kings 12:13

did not pay to make for it any

Alternate translation: "was not spent to pay for any of the temple's"

silver cups, lamp trimmers, basins, trumpets, or any gold or silver furnishing

These are items that would have been used by the priests for various temple tasks, such as sacrifices or festivals.

Translation Words - ULT

- for the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- silver
- silver
- the silver
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household
- silver
- silver
- silver

ULT

¹³ Only for the house of Yahweh bowls of silver, snuffers, basins, trumpets, any vessels of gold or vessels of silver would not be made from the silver that was brought into the house of Yahweh,

UST

¹³ But they did not use any of that money to pay men to make silver cups or wick trimmers for the lamps or bowls or trumpets or any other items made of silver or gold to be used in the temple.

2 Kings 12:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- house, household

ULT

¹⁴ because they gave it to the doers of the work so they strengthened the house of Yahweh with it.

UST

¹⁴ All that money was given to the men who were doing the work of repairing the temple.

2 Kings 12:15

they did not require the money paid for repairs to be accounted for by the men who received it and paid it to the workmen

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they did not require the men who received the money and paid the workmen for the repairs to account for the money” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be accounted for

to keep a record of how much money was received and spent

Translation Words - ULT

- [the silver](#)
- [their hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Also, they did not make an accounting with the men who they gave [the silver](#) into [their hand](#) to give to the doers of the work, for with trustworthiness they were acting.

UST

¹⁵ The men who supervised the work always did things honestly, so the king's secretary and the high priest never required that the supervisors report what they had spent the money for.

2 Kings 12:16

the money for the guilt offerings and the money for the sin offerings was not brought into the temple of Yahweh

It is implied that this money was not used for the repairs. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they did not use the money from the guilt offerings and the sin offerings to pay for the repairs to the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Silver for
- and the silver for
- into the house of
- Yahweh
- for the priests

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- Yahweh
- house, household
- silver
- silver

ULT

¹⁶ Silver for a guilt offering and the silver for the sin offerings was not brought into the house of Yahweh, they were for the priests.

UST

¹⁶ But the money that people gave to pay for sacrifices for their sins was not put in the chest. That money belonged to the priests.

2 Kings 12:17

Hazael king of Aram attacked ... Hazael then turned to attack

This refers to Hazael's army as well as to Hazael. Alternate translation: "Hazael king of Aram and his army attacked ... Then they turned to attack" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hazael

This is the name of the king of the country of Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

took it

Alternate translation: "defeated and took control of it"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Then...set](#)
- [his face](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁷ At that time Hazael, [the king of](#) Aram, went up and he fought against Gath, and he captured it. Then Hazael [set his face](#) to go up against [Jerusalem](#).

UST

¹⁷ At that time, Hazael, the king of Aram, went with his army and attacked the city of Gath and conquered it. Then he decided that they would attack Jerusalem.

2 Kings 12:18

Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, his fathers

These men were previous kings of Judah. (See: [Metaphor](#))

set apart

Alternate translation: “dedicated”

the gold that was found in the storerooms

Alternate translation: “the gold that was stored in the storerooms”

Then Hazael went away from Jerusalem

The gifts Joash gave Hazael convinced him not to attack Jerusalem. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “So Hazael stopped attacking Jerusalem and left”

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the kings of
- the king
- the king of
- Judah
- Judah
- the gold
- the house of
- and the house of
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- the holy things
- his holy things
- Jehoshaphat
- and Ahaziah
- his fathers
- had consecrated

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Ahaziah
- Jehoshaphat
- Jerusalem
- Judea, Judah
- Judea, Judah
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹⁸ So Joash, the king of Judah, took all the holy things that Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, his fathers, the kings of Judah, had consecrated, and his holy things, and all of the gold that was found in the storerooms of the house of Yahweh and the house of the king and he sent to Hazael, the king of Aram, so he would go up away from against Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁸ So Joash, the king of Judah, took all the money that the previous kings, Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, had dedicated to Yahweh. He added some of his own money, and all the gold that was in the rooms in the temple where valuable things were kept, and he sent it all to King Hazael to persuade him not to attack Jerusalem. So King Hazael took his army away from Jerusalem.

- gold, golden
- house, household
- house, household
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

2 Kings 12:19

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Now the rest of the matters concerning Joash, and all that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

¹⁹ If you want to read more of what Joash did, it is all written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.

2 Kings 12:20

Silla

The location of this place is unknown. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his servants](#)
- [at Beth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house, household](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

20 Then [his servants](#) arose and they plotted a conspiracy, so they struck down Joash [at Beth](#) Millo, at the going down to Silla.

UST

20-21 Joash's officials plotted against him, and two of them killed Joash on the road that goes down to the district of Silla. The two men who did that were Jozabad son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad son of Shomer. Joash was buried in the place where his ancestors were buried, in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then Joash's son Amaziah became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 12:21

Jozabad ... Shimeath ... Jehozabad ... Shomer ... Amaziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

with his ancestors

Alternate translation: "in the place where his ancestors were buried"

became king in his place

Alternate translation: "became the next king of Judah"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [his son](#)
- [his servants](#)
- [and as a result he died](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [and...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [David](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²¹ Then Jozabad, ^[1] [the son of](#) Shimeath, and Jehozabad, [the son of](#) Shomer, [his servants](#), struck him, [and as a result he died](#). Then they buried him with [his fathers](#) in the city of [David](#), and [Amaziah, his son, became king](#) in his place.

12:21 ^[1] .

UST

²⁰⁻²¹ Joash's officials plotted against him, and two of them killed Joash on the road that goes down to the district of Silla. The two men who did that were Jozabad son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad son of Shomer. Joash was buried in the place where his ancestors were buried, in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then Joash's son Amaziah became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 13

2 Kings 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the last chapter about Elisha.

Special concepts in this chapter

Elisha's death

The king of Israel is upset when Elisha is dying. Elisha assures him that he will have three victories over Aram.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The king compares the protection that Elisha had given Israel to "The chariot of Israel and the horsemen." (See: [Metaphor](#))

2 Kings 13:1

In the twenty-third year of Joash son of Ahaziah king of Judah

"After Joash had been ruling Judah for almost 23 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

reign over Israel in Samaria

Alternate translation: "rule over the kingdom of Israel located in Samaria"

he reigned seventeen years

Alternate translation: "Jehoahaz was king for 17 years"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Joash had been ruling](#)
- [After Joash had been ruling](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Judah for almost](#)
- [Jehu's](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

¹ During the year of the 23rd year of Joash, [the son of Ahaziah, the king of Judah](#), Jehoahaz, [the son of Jehu](#), became king over [Israel](#) in Samaria, 17 years.

UST

¹ [After Joash had been ruling Judah for almost](#) twenty-three years, [Jehu's son](#) Jehoahaz became [the king of Israel](#). He ruled in the city of Samaria for seventeen years.

2 Kings 13:2

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation.
Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

followed the sins of Jeroboam

Alternate translation: "did the same sins as Jeroboam"

Jehoahaz did not turn away from them

Here stopping his sin is spoken of as if he turned away from them.
This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Jehoahaz did not stop doing the sins of Jeroboam" or "Jehoahaz continued to do the same sins as Jeroboam" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sins of](#)
- [caused...to sin](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [had committed](#)
- [sins](#)
- [of Israel to sin](#)

ULT

² Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#) and he walked after [the sins of Jeroboam, the son of](#) Nebat, who [caused Israel to sin](#). He did not turn away from it.

UST

² He did many things that [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#) and committed the same kind of sins that [Jeroboam had committed, sins](#) that had induced the people [of Israel to sin](#). He did not stop committing those sins.

2 Kings 13:3

The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel

Yahweh becoming angry with Israel is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that burned. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh became very angry with Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

gave them continually into the hand of Hazael king of Aram and into the hand of Ben Hadad son of Hazael

Here "them" refers to Israel and "hand" refers to the power to control them. Alternate translation: "allowed Hazael the king of Aram, and Ben Hadad, his son, to repeatedly defeat the Israelites in battle" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- against Israel
- into the hand of
- and into the hand of
- the king of
- the son of (2)

Translation Words - UST

- So Yahweh
- with the Israelite people
- and he allowed...to defeat
- of Aram and his
- the army of King
- son (2)

ULT

³ As a result the anger of Yahweh was kindled [against Israel](#), so he gave them [into the hand of](#) Hazael, [the king of](#) Aram, [and into the hand of](#) Ben Hadad, [the son of](#) Hazael, all the days.

UST

³ So Yahweh became very angry [with the Israelite people](#), and he allowed the [army of King](#) Hazael [of Aram and his son](#) Ben Hadad [to defeat](#) the Israelites many times.

2 Kings 13:4

implored Yahweh

Alternate translation: "prayed to Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- the faces of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- and Yahweh listened
- Yahweh
- for help
- the army of the king
- the Israelites

ULT

⁴ So Jehoahaz entreated the faces of Yahweh, and Yahweh listened to him because he saw the oppression of Israel, for the king of Aram had oppressed them.

UST

⁴ Then Jehoahaz prayed to Yahweh for help, and Yahweh listened to him, because he saw that the army of the king of Aram was oppressing the Israelites.

2 Kings 13:5

a rescuer

Alternate translation: "someone to rescue them"

they escaped from the hand of the Arameans

Here "hand" refers to the power to control them. Alternate translation: "he enabled them to be free from Aram's power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to Israel
- Israel
- a savior
- and they came out
- the hand of
- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh sent a leader to Israel, who
- Yahweh sent a leader to Israel, who
- the Israelites
- enabled them
- enabled them
- free
- the Israelites

ULT

⁵ So Yahweh gave to Israel a savior, and they came out from beneath the hand of Aram. Then the sons of Israel settled in their tents as previously, aforesaid.

UST

⁵ Yahweh sent a leader to Israel, who enabled them to be free from Aram's power. After that, the Israelites lived peacefully as they had done previously.

2 Kings 13:6

they did not depart from the sins of the house of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as if they departed from the sins. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Israel did not stop doing the same sins as Jeroboam had done" or "Israel continued to commit the same sins as Jeroboam had committed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

house of Jeroboam

Alternate translation: "the family of Jeroboam"

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- Jeroboam
- caused...to sin
- Israel
- he walked
- stood

Translation Words - UST

- they still continued to commit
- Jeroboam and
- family
- the Israelites
- remained
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

ULT

⁶ Nevertheless, they did not turn aside from the sins of [the house of Jeroboam](#), who [caused Israel to sin](#), [he walked](#) in it and also the Asherah [stood](#) in Samaria.

UST

⁶ But [they still continued to commit](#) the same kind of sins that [Jeroboam and his family](#) had committed and that had led [the Israelites](#) to sin. Also, the statue of the goddess Asherah [remained](#) in Samaria.

2 Kings 13:7

had destroyed them

Alternate translation: "had defeated the army of Jehoahaz"

made them like the chaff at threshing time

The Aramean army had so severely defeated the army of Israel that what remained was so worthless that it is compared to wheat chaff that the laborers walk on at harvest time. Alternate translation: "had crushed them as workers crush chaff under their feet at harvest time" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [any people](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [had destroyed them](#)
- [and he had made them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had killed all](#)
- [the](#)
- [rest, walking over them](#)
- [people](#)

ULT

⁷ For he had not left for Jehoahaz [any people](#), except only 50 horsemen, and ten chariots, and 10,000 footmen, for [the king of Aram had destroyed them and he had made them](#) like the dust at threshing.

UST

⁷ Jehoahaz had only fifty men who rode on horses and ten chariots and ten thousand other soldiers, because the army of Aram [had killed all the rest, walking over them](#) as [people](#) walk over the ground.

2 Kings 13:8

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in the book called The History of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

⁸ Now the rest of the matters concerning Jehoahaz, and all that he did and his might, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel?](#)

UST

⁸ If you want to read about everything else that Jehoahaz did, you can read about it [in the book called The History of the Kings of Israel.](#)

2 Kings 13:9

slept with his ancestors

This is a polite way of saying that he died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [his son](#)
- [and...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and was buried in](#)
- [Then his son Jehoash became the king](#)
- [Then his son Jehoash became the king](#)

ULT

⁹ Then Jehoahaz slept with [his fathers](#), and they buried him in Samaria, and Jehoash [his son became king](#) in his place.

UST

⁹ Jehoahaz died [and was buried in](#) Samaria. [Then his son Jehoash became the king.](#)

2 Kings 13:10

In the thirty-seventh year of Joash king of Judah

"After Joash had ruled Judah for almost 37 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

the reign of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz began over Israel in Samaria

Alternate translation: "Jehoash son of Jehoahaz began to rule over Israel in Samaria"

Jehoash

This was a king of Israel who was the son of Jehoahaz. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Judah
- the son of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- in Israel
- after King
- had been ruling
- in Judah for

ULT

¹⁰ During the year of the 37th year of Joash, [the king of Judah](#), Jehoash, [the son of](#) Jehoahaz, began to reign over [Israel](#) in Samaria, 16 years.

UST

¹⁰ Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, started to rule [in Israel after King](#) Joash [had been ruling in Judah for](#) thirty-seven years. Jehoash ruled in Samaria for sixteen years.

2 Kings 13:11

He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” represents God’s thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “He did things that Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not leave behind any of the sins of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as if he left behind the sins. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Jehoash did not stop committing the same sins as Jeroboam” or “Jehoash kept committing the same sins as Jeroboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

by which he had made Israel to sin

Alternate translation: “by which Jeroboam had caused Israel to sin”

but he walked in them

To sin is spoken of as if he was walking along a sinful path. Alternate translation: “but Jehoash continued to do these same sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sins of](#)
- [caused...to sin](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [he walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [the sin that many](#)
- [in committing](#)
- [years earlier King Jeroboam](#)
- [years earlier King Jeroboam](#)
- [had led](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)

ULT

¹¹ Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). He did not turn aside from all of [the sins of Jeroboam, the son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin, he walked](#) in it.

UST

¹¹ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). He refused to stop worshiping idols, which was [the sin that many years earlier King Jeroboam had led the Israelite people in committing](#).

2 Kings 13:12

his might by which he fought against Amaziah king of Judah

Here the strength of Jehoash's army is spoken of as Jehoash's "might." Alternate translation: "the power that his army showed when they fought against the army of Amaziah king of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of King](#)
- [Events of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the army of King](#)
- [Amaziah of Judah](#)

ULT

¹² Now the rest of the matters concerning Jehoash, and all that he did, and his might, how he fought with [Amaziah, the king of Judah](#), are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

¹² The other things that happened while Jehoash was king and all the things that he did are written in Book of the [Events of the Kings of Israel](#). In that account they wrote about his army's victories, and their war with [the army of King Amaziah of Judah](#).

2 Kings 13:13

Jehoash slept with his ancestors

This a polite way to say that Jehoash died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Jeroboam sat on his throne

Here “sat on his throne” refers to ruling as king. Alternate translation: “Jeroboam became king after him” or “Jeroboam began to rule after him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [and Jeroboam](#)
- [his throne](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the other kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Then his son...became](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

¹³ Then Jehoash slept with [his fathers](#), [and Jeroboam](#) sat on [his throne](#), and Jehoash was buried in Samaria with [the kings of Israel](#).

UST

¹³ When Jehoash died, he was buried in Samaria where [the other kings of Israel](#) were buried. [Then his son Jeroboam became king](#).

2 Kings 13:14

wept over him

Alternate translation: "wept because Elisha was sick"

My father, my father

Elisha was not the king's literal father. King Joash used this term as a sign of respect.

the chariots of Israel and the horsemen are taking you away

This is a reference to Elijah going to heaven in [2 Kings 2:11](#) and [2 Kings 2:12](#). Joash uses this phrase to say that Elisha was going to die. Alternate translation: "the chariots of Israel and the horsemen are taking you to heaven" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the horsemen

This refers to the men who drove the chariots. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the drivers of the chariots" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁴ [Now Elisha](#) fell sick with his sickness which he would die by it, so Jehoash, [the king of Israel](#) went down to him and he wept on [his face](#). Then he said, "[My father, my father](#), the chariot of [Israel and its horsemen](#)!"

UST

¹⁴ [Then Elisha](#) became very ill. Just before he died, [King](#) Joash went to Elisha and cried [in front of him](#). Saying the same words that Elisha had said when Elijah was taken to heaven, he said, "[My father!](#) The chariots [of us Israelite people and their drivers are taking my master away!](#)"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Elisha](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [his face](#)
- [My father](#)
- [my father](#)
- [and its horsemen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elisha](#)
- [King](#)
- [King](#)
- [of us Israelite people](#)
- [in front of him](#)
- [My father](#)
- [My father](#)
- [and their drivers are taking my master away](#)

2 Kings 13:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha

ULT

¹⁵ Then Elisha said to him, "Take a bow and some arrows," so he took to him a bow and some arrows.

UST

¹⁵ Elisha said to him, "Bring to me a bow and some arrows!" So the king did that.

2 Kings 13:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the king of
- king
- Israel
- your hand
- his hand
- his hands
- the hands of the
- so he put...in place
- Elisha
- Then...set

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- the king's
- the king
- to put his
- hands
- hands
- hands
- to shoot
- And then Elisha
- put his own

ULT

¹⁶ Next he said to the king of Israel, "Put your hand in place on the bow," so he put his hand in place. Then Elisha set his hands over the hands of the king.

UST

¹⁶ Then Elisha told the king to put his hands on the bow and prepare to shoot some arrows. And then Elisha put his own hands on the king's hands.

2 Kings 13:17

Open the window eastward

Alternate translation: "open the window that faces east" or "open that window towards the east"

so he opened it

Since this happens after Joash takes the bow and arrows, he may have had a servant open the window. Alternate translation: "So a servant opened it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he shot

Alternate translation: "Joash shot the arrow"

This is Yahweh's arrow of victory, the arrow of victory over Aram

The relationship between the arrow and victory can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "This arrow is a sign from Yahweh that he will give you victory over Aram" or "This arrow symbolizes the victory Yahweh will give you over Aram" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Aphek

This was a city in the land of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Elisha
- for Yahweh
- utterly bringing to an end

Translation Words - UST

- Then Elisha
- That is the arrow that indicates that
- completely

ULT

17 Then he said, "Open the window facing eastward," so he opened. Then Elisha said, "Shoot!", so he shot. Then he said, "An arrow of victory for Yahweh and an arrow of victory against Aram, for you will strike down Aram in Aphek until utterly bringing to an end."

UST

17 Then Elisha told him, "Have someone open that window toward the east." So a servant opened it. Then Elisha said, "Shoot!" So the king did. Then Elisha said, "That is the arrow that indicates that your army will defeat the Aramean army. Your army will completely defeat their army at the city of Aphek."

2 Kings 13:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the king of
- Israel
- towards ground

Translation Words - UST

- and...the ground with them!" So the
- king
- the arrows...the ground

ULT

¹⁸ Then he said, "Take the arrows," so he took. Then he said [to the king of Israel](#), "Strike down [towards ground](#)," so he struck three times, and he stopped.

UST

¹⁸ Then Elisha said, "Pick up the other arrows and strike [the ground with them](#)!" [So the king](#) picked up [the arrows](#) and struck [the ground](#) three times.

2 Kings 13:19

But the man of God was angry with him

Alternate translation: "But Elisha was angry with King Joash"

until you annihilated it

Alternate translation: "until you completely destroyed it" or "until they were completely wiped out"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- utterly bringing to an end

Translation Words - UST

- But Elisha was angry
- they were completely wiped out

ULT

¹⁹ However the man of God was angry on account of him and he said, "By striking five or six times, then you would have struck down Aram until utterly bringing to an end, but now three times you will strike Aram."

UST

¹⁹ But Elisha was angry with him. He exclaimed, "You should have struck the ground five or six times! If you had done that, your army would have defeated the Aramean army until they were completely wiped out! But now, because you struck the ground only three times, your army will defeat them only three times!"

2 Kings 13:20

Now

This word marks a break in the main story line. This new section gives background information for the part of the story that follows. (See: [Background Information](#))

at the beginning of the year

Alternate translation: "each year during spring"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elisha](#)
- [died...Then](#)
- [Moab](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Elisha](#)
- [died](#)
- [Moab](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now [Elisha died](#), and they buried him. [Then](#) the raiders of [Moab](#) would come into the land, coming in each year.

UST

²⁰ [Then Elisha died](#) and was buried. Groups of raiders from [Moab](#) came to Israel each year during spring.

2 Kings 13:21

As they were burying a certain man

Alternate translation: "As some Israelites were burying a man's body"

they saw a group of Moabites

It can be made explicit that they were afraid of the Moabites.

Alternate translation: "they saw a group of Moabite raiders coming toward them and they were afraid" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Elisha's grave

Alternate translation: "the grave where Elisha was buried"

As soon as the man touched Elisha's bones

Here "the man" refers to his dead body. This can be made explicit.

Alternate translation: "As soon as the dead man's body touched the bones of Elisha" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he revived and stood up on his feet

Alternate translation: "the dead man came back to life and stood up"

Translation Words - ULT

- were burying
- Elisha
- Elisha
- then it happened

Translation Words - UST

- where Elisha had been
- Elisha's
- buried
- alive

ULT

²¹ Now it happened that they [were burying](#) a man, and look, they saw the raider, so they threw the man into the grave of [Elisha](#). As the man went and he touched upon the bones of [Elisha](#), [then it happened](#) that he rose up onto his feet.

UST

²¹ One year, when some Israelite people were burying a man's body, they saw a group of those raiders. They were afraid, so quickly they threw that man's body into the grave [where Elisha had been buried](#), and they ran away. But as soon as the man's body touched [Elisha's](#) bones, the dead man became [alive](#) again and jumped up!

2 Kings 13:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- king of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- King
- sent soldiers...the Israelite

ULT

²² Thus Hazael king of Aram oppressed Israel all the days of Jehoahaz.

UST

²² King Hazael of Aram sent soldiers to oppress the Israelite people during all the years that Jehoahaz ruled Judah.

2 Kings 13:23

But Yahweh was gracious to Israel, and had compassion on them and concern for them

It may be helpful to divide this sentence into shorter parts. Alternate translation: "But Yahweh was very kind to the Israelite people. He helped them"

So Yahweh did not destroy them

Yahweh's covenant is the reason he did not destroy Israel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "This is the reason that Yahweh did not destroy them" or "Because of his covenant, Yahweh did not destroy them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

has not driven them away from his presence

Yahweh's rejection is spoken of as if he had physically driven Israel away from where he was. Alternate translation: "has not rejected them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- his covenant
- Abraham
- and Jacob
- his face

Translation Words - UST

- But Yahweh
- the Israelite people...the covenant
- their ancestors...not...rejected
- Abraham
- and Jacob

ULT

²³ However Yahweh showed favor to them, and he had compassion on them so he turned towards them on account of his covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. So did not want to destroy them, and he did not cast them away from before his face until now.

UST

²³ But Yahweh was very kind to the Israelite people. He helped them because of the covenant that he had made with their ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. He would not get rid of the Israelites, and he still has not rejected them.

2 Kings 13:24

Hazael ... Ben Hadad

These are names of kings. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

became king in his place

Alternate translation: “became king after him”

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Then...died
- his son
- and...became king

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- died
- his son
- the king

ULT

²⁴ Then Hazael, [the king of](#) Aram, [died](#) and Ben Hadad [his son became king](#) in his place.

UST

²⁴ When Hazael [the king](#) of Aram [died](#), [his son](#) Ben Hadad became [the king](#).

2 Kings 13:25

Jehoash ... Jehoahaz

These are names of kings. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jehoash attacked him three times

Here “Jehoash” and “him” refer to the kings and their armies.

Alternate translation: “Jehoash’s army attacked Ben Hadad’s army three times” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he recovered those cities of Israel

Alternate translation: “Jehoash took back control of the Israelite cities that Ben Hadad had captured”

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (3)
- Then...returned
- thus he returned
- from the hand of
- from the hand of
- his father
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- The army of...of Israel
- King Jehoash
- time that Jehoash’s
- King Jehoash
- Ben Hadad’s army...during the (3)
- the cities
- had seized
- father

ULT

²⁵ Then Jehoash, [the son of](#) Jehoahaz, [returned](#) and he took the cities [from the hand of](#) Ben Hadad, [the son of](#) Hazael, that he had taken [from the hand of](#) Jehoahaz [his father](#) in the war. Three times Jehoash had struck him, [thus he returned](#) the cities of [Israel](#).

UST

²⁵ [The army of King Jehoash of Israel](#) defeated the army of King Ben Hadad three times; they also recaptured [the cities](#) that [Ben Hadad’s army had seized during the time that Jehoash’s father](#) Jehoahaz was ruling Israel.

2 Kings 14

2 Kings 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The text begins to alternate between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah again.

Special concepts in this chapter

Pride

Pride in one's success can make a person attempt and fail at something else. Amaziah defeated Edom so he wanted to fight Israel. But Israel defeated him and thoroughly humiliated him.

2 Kings 14:1

In the second year of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel

Alternate translation: "When Jehoash son of Jehoahaz had been king of Israel for almost two years"

Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, began to reign

Alternate translation: "Amaziah son of Joash, became the king of Judah"

ULT

¹ In the second year of Jehoash, [the son of Jehoahaz](#), [the king of Israel](#), [Amaziah](#), [the son of Joash](#), [the king of Judah](#), began to reign.

UST

¹ After Jehoash [had been ruling Israel for almost](#) two years, Joash's [son Amaziah](#) became [the king of Judah](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had been ruling](#)
- [son Amaziah](#)
- [Israel for almost](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Israel for almost](#)
- [son Amaziah](#)
- [of Judah](#)

2 Kings 14:2

He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign

“He was 25 years old when he became king” (See: [Numbers](#))

he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem

“he was the king in Jerusalem for 29 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehoaddan

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a son of
- in Jerusalem
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- twenty
- in Jerusalem
- Jerusalem

ULT

² He was a son of 25 years upon his beginning to reign, and he reigned 29 years in Jerusalem. Now the name of his mother was Jehoaddan, from Jerusalem.

UST

² He was twenty-five years old when he started to rule, and he ruled in Jerusalem for twenty-nine years. His mother was Jehoaddin. She was from Jerusalem.

2 Kings 14:3

He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, yet not like David his father

Here “the eyes of Yahweh” refers to his sight, and his sight refers to his judgment. Alternate translation: “Amaziah did many things that pleased Yahweh, but he did not do as many things that pleased Yahweh as King David had done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did everything that Joash, his father, had done

Joash obeyed Yahweh and did good things. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “He did the same good things that his father Joash had done” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh as King David had done](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

³ Now he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), only not like David [his father](#). Like all that Joash, [his father](#), had done, he did.

UST

³ Amaziah did many things that pleased [Yahweh](#), but he did not do as many things that pleased [Yahweh as King David had done](#). He did some of the good things that [his father](#) Joash had done.

2 Kings 14:4

But the high places were not taken away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The high places were used for pagan worship. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "But he did not remove the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sacrificed and burned incense at the high places

The high places were used for pagan worship. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "sacrificed and burned incense to pagan gods at the high places" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- were sacrificing

Translation Words - UST

- the other places for worshiping Yahweh
- The people

ULT

⁴ Only the high places were not removed, [the people](#) still [were sacrificing](#) and burning incense at the high places.

UST

⁴ But, like his father, he did not tear down [the other places for worshiping Yahweh](#). [The people](#) continued to burn incense to honor Yahweh in those places instead of in Jerusalem, the place that Yahweh had appointed.

2 Kings 14:5

It came about

This is used to introduce a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

as soon as his rule was well established

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “as soon as Amaziah securely established his royal rule and kingly authority” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he killed the servants

Amaziah probably ordered other people to kill the officials. Alternate translation: “he made his servants execute the officials” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- became strong
- in his hand
- his servants
- the king
- his father

Translation Words - UST

- completely
- in control
- servants
- the
- his father

ULT

⁵ Now it happened just as the kingdom became strong in his hand, that he struck down his servants, the ones who had struck down the king, his father.

UST

⁵ As soon as he was completely in control of his kingdom, he made his servants execute the officials who had murdered his father.

2 Kings 14:6

General Information:

The narrator tells about what king Amaziah did after his father King Joash was murdered.

Yet he did not put the sons of the murderers to death

King Amaziah did not order his servants to kill the children of the men who killed his father. If he was going to have them executed though, he would have commanded his servants do it, he would not have done it himself. Alternate translation: "But he did not tell his servants to execute those officials' children" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

The fathers must not be put to death for their children, neither must the children be put to death for their parents

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People must not kill the fathers for the sins of their children, and they must not kill the children for the sins of their parents" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

every person must be put to death for his own sin

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "every person must die for his own sin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- sons
- and sons
- the law of
- Moses
- Yahweh
- had commanded
- Fathers
- fathers

Translation Words - UST

- Parents
- servants to
- children
- gave to
- gave to
- obeyed
- the laws
- God

ULT

⁶ However [the sons of](#) the ones striking down he did not put to death, according to what is written in the scroll of [the law of Moses](#), that [Yahweh had commanded](#), by saying, "[Fathers](#) may not be put to death on account of [sons](#), and [sons](#) may not be put to death on account of [fathers](#). But only each man will be put to death because of his sin."

UST

⁶ But he did not tell his [servants to](#) execute those officials' [children](#). He [obeyed](#) what was written in [the laws](#) that [God gave to Moses](#), "[Parents](#) must not be executed for the crimes committed by their parents. People must be executed only for the sins that they themselves have committed."

- [Moses](#)

2 Kings 14:7

He killed

Here “He” refers to his army. Alternate translation: “Amaziah’s army killed” or “Amaziah’s soldiers killed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ten thousand soldiers

“10,000 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Valley of Salt

This is the name of a place that is located south of the Dead Sea.

he also took Sela in war

Here the word “he” refers to King amaziah and represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: “King Amaziah’s army captured the city of Sela” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Sela ... Joktheel

They renamed the city of Sela. The new name was Joktheel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Also he called](#)
- [its name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and gave it a new name](#)
- [its name](#)

ULT

⁷ He struck down Edom in the valley of the Salt, 10,000 and he seized the Sela in the war. [Also he called its name](#) Joktheel, until this day.

UST

⁷ Amaziah’s soldiers killed ten thousand soldiers of the Edom people group in the Valley of Salt south of the Dead Sea, and they captured the city of Sela [and gave it a new name](#), Joktheel. That is still [its name](#).

2 Kings 14:8

Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu king of Israel, saying, "Come, let us meet each other face to face in battle."

Here "each other" also included their armies. Alternate translation: "Then Amaziah sent messengers to King Jehoash of Israel, saying, 'Come here and let us and our armies fight each other in battle.'" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [the...of...son](#)
- [son...the...of](#) (2)
- [Jehu](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Come](#)
- [faces](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Amaziah](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [King Jehoash](#)
- [King Jehoash](#)
- [King Jehoash](#)
- [King Jehoash](#) (2)
- [of Israel](#)
- [saying...Come here and let us and our armies](#)
- [fight each other in battle](#)

ULT

⁸ Then [Amaziah](#) sent [messengers](#) to Jehoash, the [son](#) of Jehoahaz, the [son of Jehu, the king of Israel](#), saying, "Come, we will show each other [faces](#)."

UST

⁸ Then [Amaziah](#) sent [messengers](#) to [King Jehoash of Israel](#), saying, "Come here and let us and our armies fight each other in battle."

2 Kings 14:9

A thistle that was in Lebanon ... trampled down the thistle

This is a word picture and a riddle. A cedar tree is great and a thistle is small and worthless. Jehoash compares himself to the cedar and Amaziah to the thistle and warns Amaziah not to attack. If you have a similar comparison in your own language, you can use it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

thistle

type of bush with thorns

saying, 'Give your daughter to my son for a wife,'

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation.
Alternate translation: "asking the cedar to give his daughter to the thistle's son for a wife" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Israel
- Amaziah
- Judah
- was in the Lebanon
- was in the Lebanon
- was in the Lebanon
- to my son
- but...passed over

Translation Words - UST

- But King Jehoash
- King (2)
- But King Jehoash
- passed by
- King
- Amaziah: "Once a...in the mountains
- Lebanon
- a cedar tree
- in Lebanon
- son in order

ULT

⁹ But Jehoash, [the king of Israel](#), sent to [Amaziah, the king of Judah](#), saying, "The thorn bush that [was in the Lebanon](#) sent to the cedar that [was in the Lebanon](#), saying, 'Give your daughter to my son for a wife,' but a beast of the field that [was in the Lebanon passed over](#) and it trampled down the thorn bush.

UST

⁹ But King Jehoash replied with this parable to [King Amaziah](#): "Once a thornbush growing [in the mountains in Lebanon](#) sent a message to a cedar tree, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son in order that he may marry her.' But a wild animal [in Lebanon passed by](#) the thornbush and trampled it."

2 Kings 14:10

You have indeed attacked Edom

This is the warning part of Jehoash's message to Amaziah. "Amaziah, you have definitely defeated Edom"

your heart has lifted you up

This is an idiom that refers to being proud. Alternate translation: "you are very proud of what you have done" (See: [Idiom](#))

Take pride in your victory

Alternate translation: "Be content with your victory"

for why should you cause yourself trouble and fall

Jehoash uses this question to warn Amaziah not to attack him. Alternate translation: "for you should not cause trouble for yourself and suffer defeat" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁰ Indeed, you have struck Edom, and [your heart](#) has lifted you up. [Be honored](#), but stay [in your house](#). For why should you engage yourself [with evil that you would fall](#), you [and Judah](#) with you?"

UST

¹⁰ The meaning of what I am saying is that your army has defeated the army of Edom, so now [you have become very proud](#). But you should be content with defeating the people of Edom; [you should allow your soldiers to stay at home](#). [If you cause trouble](#) by fighting against us, [you will surely cause a disaster](#) to happen to [you and to your people](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [your heart](#)
- [Be honored](#)
- [in your house](#)
- [with evil](#)
- [that you would fall](#)
- [and Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you have become very proud](#)
- [you should allow your soldiers to stay at home](#)
- [If you cause trouble](#)
- [you will surely cause a disaster](#)
- [you will surely cause a disaster](#)
- [you and to your people](#)

2 Kings 14:11

But Amaziah would not listen

Here “listen” refers to obeying the warning. Alternate translation: “However, Amaziah would not obey Jehoash’s warning” (See: [Metonymy](#))

So Jehoash king of Israel attacked ... Amaziah king of Judah met each other

The armies of these kings went to battle with them. Alternate translation: “So Jehoash and his army went to fight Amaziah and his army and they met each other” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Beth Shemesh

This is a town in Judah near the border of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Amaziah
- and Amaziah
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Israel
- faces
- Judah
- at Beth
- Shemesh
- belongs to Judah

Translation Words - UST

- But Amaziah
- So Jehoash and Amaziah led their armies to
- to Jehoash’s
- So Jehoash and Amaziah led their armies to (2)
- to Jehoash’s
- So Jehoash and Amaziah led their armies to
- Shemesh
- Beth
- in Judah
- and it was there that their armies came together to fight each other

ULT

¹¹ But [Amaziah](#) did not listen. So Jehoash, [the king of Israel](#), went up and they showed each other [faces](#), he [and Amaziah, the king of Judah](#), at [Beth Shemesh](#), which [belongs to Judah](#).

UST

¹¹ But [Amaziah](#) refused to pay attention [to Jehoash’s](#) message. So [Jehoash and Amaziah led their armies to Beth Shemesh in Judah](#), and it was there that their armies came together to fight each other.

2 Kings 14:12

Judah was defeated by Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Israel defeated Judah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

every man fled home

Alternate translation: "all the men in the army of Judah ran home"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The Israelite army](#)
- [of Judah...fled](#)

ULT

¹² Then [Judah](#) was struck hard before the faces of [Israel](#), and they fled, each man to his tent.

UST

¹² [The Israelite army](#) defeated the army [of Judah](#), and all the soldiers of Judah [fled](#) and ran back home.

2 Kings 14:13

General Information:

This is what happened after the army of Israel defeated the army of Judah at Beth Shemesh.

He came

Here “He” refers to Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “Jehoash and his army came ... Jehoash’s soldiers took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Ephraim Gate ... Corner Gate

There are the names of gates in the wall of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

four hundred cubits

“about 180 meters” (See: [Numbers](#))

cubits

A cubit was about 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...of...king](#)
- [king...the...of](#) (2)
- [Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [at the Gate of](#)
- [the Gate of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the...of...son](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [at Beth](#)
- [Shemesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah](#)
- [Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah](#)
- [and they also marched](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Gate. That was a section of wall about...meters](#)
- [the...Gate to the Corner](#)

ULT

¹³ Then Jehoash, the [king](#) of [Israel](#), captured [Amaziah](#), the [king](#) of [Judah](#), [the son of](#) Jehoash, the [son of](#) [Ahaziah](#), [at Beth Shemesh](#). Next he came to [Jerusalem](#) and he broke down the wall of [Jerusalem at the Gate of Ephraim](#) up to [the Gate of](#) the Corner, 400 cubits.

UST

¹³ Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah there, and they also marched to [Jerusalem](#) and tore down the wall that was around the city, from the [Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate](#). That was a section of wall about 180 meters long.

- Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah
- Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah
- Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah (2)
- Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah
- Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah (2)
- Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah
- there
- there

2 Kings 14:14

He took

Here “He” refers to Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “Jehoash and his army came ... Jehoash’s soldiers took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

with hostages also, and returned to Samaria

This implies that Jehoash needed to take these hostages to prevent Amaziah from attacking again. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “and they also took to Samaria some prisoners to make sure that Amaziah would cause them no more trouble” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the gold
- and the silver
- in the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the king
- the sons of
- Then he returned
- to Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- the gold
- and silver
- palace; they
- the temple, and
- in the
- palace; they
- They also took
- to Samaria
- some prisoners to make sure that Amaziah would cause them no more trouble

ULT

14 Then he took all [the gold and the silver](#), and all the vessels that had been found [in the house of Yahweh](#), and in the treasuries of [the house of the king](#), and [the sons of](#) the pledges. [Then he returned to Samaria.](#)

UST

14 Jehoash’s soldiers seized all [the gold and silver](#) that they found, all the objects that were in [the temple](#), and all the valuable things that were [in the palace](#); [they](#) took them to Samaria. [They also took to Samaria some prisoners to make sure that Amaziah would cause them no more trouble.](#)

2 Kings 14:15

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of King](#)
- [the army of King](#)
- [Events of the Kings](#)
- [Amaziah of Judah](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Now the rest of the matters concerning Jehoash, what he did, and his might, and how he fought with [Amaziah, the king of Judah](#), are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

¹⁵ If you want to know about all the other things that Jehoash did when he was king, including when he and his army fought against [the army of King Amaziah of Judah](#), they are written in Book of the [Events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 14:16

Then Jehoash slept with his ancestors

This is a polite way to say that he died. Alternate translation: "Then Jehoash died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

became king in his place

Alternate translation: "became king after him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [his son](#)
- [and...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he](#)
- [the other kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [his son](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

16 Then Jehoash slept with [his fathers](#) and he was buried in Samaria with [the kings of Israel](#), and [Jeroboam, his son](#), [became king](#) in his place.

UST

16 Jehoash died, and [he](#) was buried in Samaria, where [the other kings of Israel](#) had been buried. Then [his son Jeroboam](#) became [the king](#).

2 Kings 14:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Now...lived
- Amaziah
- the son of
- the son of
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Judah
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Amaziah
- Amaziah
- the king of Israel
- the king
- the king of Israel (2)
- of Judah
- lived
- the king of Israel

ULT

¹⁷ Now Amaziah, the son of Joash, the king of Judah, lived 15 years after the death of Jehoash, the son of Jehoahaz, the king of Israel.

UST

¹⁷ Amaziah, the king of Judah, lived for fifteen more years after Jehoash, the king of Israel, died.

2 Kings 14:18

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amaziah](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Amaziah did, it is](#)
- [Events of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Now the rest of the matters concerning [Amaziah](#), are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

¹⁸ If you want to know more about everything else that [Amaziah did, it is](#) written in Book of the [Events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 14:19

They made a conspiracy against Amaziah in Jerusalem

A conspiracy is a secret plan to do harm to someone or something.
Alternate translation: "Some people in Jerusalem plotted against Amaziah"

Lachish

This is a city in southwestern Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

but they sent men after him to Lachish

The men who made the conspiracy sent other men to follow Amaziah to Lachish.

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [and they killed him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Some people in Jerusalem](#)
- [and killed him](#)

ULT

¹⁹ For they had plotted a conspiracy against him [in Jerusalem](#), so he had fled to Lachish, but they sent after him to Lachish [and they killed him](#) there.

UST

¹⁹ [Some people in Jerusalem](#) plotted against him, so he fled to the city of Lachish. But they followed him there [and killed him](#).

2 Kings 14:20

General Information:

This is what happened after the death of King Amaziah.

They brought him back on horses

Alternate translation: "They brought Amaziah's body back on horses"

Translation Words - ULT

- the horses
- in Jerusalem
- his fathers
- David

Translation Words - UST

- They took his corpse
- back to Jerusalem and
- his ancestors had been buried
- of David

ULT

²⁰ Then they carried him on the horses, and he was buried in Jerusalem with his fathers in the city of David.

UST

²⁰ They took his corpse back to Jerusalem and buried it where his ancestors had been buried, in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David.

2 Kings 14:21

All the people of Judah took Azariah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah

This is a generalization. Some people may not have wanted him to be king. Alternate translation: "The people of Judah took the 16 year-old Azariah and made him king after his father, Amaziah" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Azariah

This king is better known today by the name "Uzziah."

Translation Words - ULT

- the people of
- Judah
- was a son of
- and they made...king
- his father
- Amaziah

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- of Judah
- Azariah...He
- whose father was
- Amaziah, to be their king
- became

ULT

²¹ Then all the people of Judah took Azariah, when he was a son of 16 years, and they made him king in place of his father Amaziah.

UST

²¹ Then all the people of Judah appointed Azariah, whose father was Amaziah, to be their king. He became king when he was sixteen years.

2 Kings 14:22

It was Azariah who rebuilt Elath

Azariah did not do this alone. Alternate translation: “It was Azariah who ordered Elath to be rebuilt” or “It was Azariah who supervised the rebuilding of Elath” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Elath

a city in Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

restored it to Judah

Alternate translation: “returned it to Judah”

slept with his ancestors

This is a poetic way to say he died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he returned it](#)
- [and...to Judah](#)
- [the king](#)
- [his fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Amaziah's father Amaziah](#)
- [the](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [again](#)

ULT

²² He himself built up Elath and [he returned it to Judah](#) after [the king](#) slept with [his fathers](#).

UST

²² After [Amaziah's father Amaziah](#) died, Amaziah's army captured the city of Elath, and it came under [the](#) control of [Judah again](#).

2 Kings 14:23

General Information:

This describes what King Uzziah did after he became king.

In the fifteenth year of Amaziah

"In year 15 of Amaziah" (See: [Numbers](#))

forty-one years

"41 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of Amaziah
- the son of
- the son of
- the king of
- the king of
- Judah
- Jeroboam
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- When Amaziah
- When Amaziah
- had been ruling
- Judah
- Jeroboam became
- in the city of
- the king
- of Israel

ULT

²³ During the year of the 15th year of Amaziah, the son of Joash, the king of Judah, Jeroboam, the son of Jehoash, the king of Israel, began to reign in Samaria, 41 years.

UST

²³ When Amaziah had been ruling Judah for almost fifteen years, Jeroboam became the king of Israel. He ruled in the city of Samaria for forty-one years.

2 Kings 14:24

evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” is a metaphor for judging or considering. Alternate translation: “evil according to Yahweh” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not depart from any of the sins of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as leaving a path. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “He did not stop committing the same sins as Jeroboam” or “He continued to commit the same sins as Jeroboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sins of](#)
- [had caused...to sin](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [son of](#)
- [had committed](#)
- [sins](#)
- [the Israelite people to sin also](#)

ULT

²⁴ Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). He did not turn away from all [the sins of Jeroboam, the son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin](#).

UST

²⁴ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). He did not stop committing the same kind of sins that [Jeroboam son of Nebat, had committed, sins](#) that had induced [the Israelite people to sin also](#).

2 Kings 14:25

He restored the border

This means his army restored the land up to the border. Alternate translation: "His soldiers conquered again some of the territory that had previously belonged to Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Lebo Hamath

This city was also called Hamath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Sea of the Arabah

Alternate translation: "the Dead Sea"

Translation Words - ULT

- He...restored
- Jonah
- the son of
- the prophet
- Israel
- Israel (2)
- the Arabah
- Yahweh
- the God...of
- of...by the hand
- his servant

Translation Words - UST

- again
- that had previously belonged to Israel
- the God (2)
- son of Amittai
- to the Dead
- in the south
- in the south
- in the south
- Yahweh
- the God
- promised the prophet Jonah

ULT

²⁵ He himself [restored](#) the border of [Israel](#) from Lebo Hamath to the Sea of [the Arabah](#), according to the word of [Yahweh, the God](#) of [Israel](#), which he had spoken [by the hand of his servant Jonah, the son of Amittai, the prophet](#), who was from the Gath Hopher.

UST

²⁵ Jeroboam's soldiers conquered [again](#) some of the territory [that had previously belonged to Israel](#), from the city of Hamath in the north [to the Dead Sea in the south](#). That is what [Yahweh, the God](#) whom the Israelites worshiped, [promised the prophet Jonah son of Amittai](#), from the city of Gath Hopher, would happen.

2 Kings 14:26

it was very bitter

Suffering that was difficult is spoken of as if it had a bitter taste.
Alternate translation: "it was very difficult" (See: [Metaphor](#))

there was no rescuer for Israel

Alternate translation: "there was no one who could rescue Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the affliction of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [for Israel](#)
- [being...contentious](#)
- [relenting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [suffer](#)
- [to...very much](#)
- [And there was absolutely no one who would](#)

ULT

²⁶ For [Yahweh](#) saw [the affliction of Israel](#), [being](#) exceedingly [contentious](#), along with a cessation of restraining and a cessation of [relenting](#), and there was not a helper [for Israel](#).

UST

²⁶ That happened because [Yahweh](#) saw that [the Israelites'](#) enemies were causing [the Israelites](#) to [suffer very much](#). And there was absolutely no one [who would](#) help them.

2 Kings 14:27

blot out

To completely destroy Israel is spoken of as if Yahweh wiped them away with a cloth. Alternate translation: “completely destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the name of Israel

Here “the name of Israel” represents all of Israel and its inhabitants. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

under heaven

Alternate translation: “on earth”

he saved them by the hand of Jeroboam son of Jehoash

Here “hand” is a metonym for power. Also, “Jehoash” is a synecdoche representing Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “he enabled King Jeroboam and his army to rescue them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [instead, he saved them](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [to rescue them](#)
- [to rescue them](#)
- [to rescue them](#)

ULT

²⁷ However [Yahweh](#) had not spoken to blot out [the name of Israel](#) from under [the heavens](#), instead, he saved them by the hand of Jeroboam, the son of Jehoash.

UST

²⁷ But [Yahweh](#) said that he would not destroy [Israel](#) completely, so he enabled King [Jeroboam to rescue them](#).

2 Kings 14:28

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [he restored](#)
- [to Judah](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [of the kings of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [about how he...Damascus and Hamath](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [to capture again the cities](#)
- [events of the Kings](#)

ULT

²⁸ Now the rest of the matters concerning [Jeroboam](#), and all that he did, and his might, how he fought and how [he restored](#) Damascus and Hamath [to Judah in Israel](#), are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel?](#)

UST

²⁸ If you want to know more about everything else that [Jeroboam](#) did, [about how he](#) courageously fought in battle, and about how he enabled [the Israelites to capture again the cities](#) of [Damascus and Hamath](#), they are written in the book of the [events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 14:29

Jeroboam slept with his ancestors, with the kings of Israel

This is a polite way to say that he died and was buried. Alternate translation: "Jeroboam died, and was buried where the other kings of Israel were buried" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jeroboam
- his fathers
- the kings of
- Israel
- Zechariah
- his son
- and...became king

Translation Words - UST

- Jeroboam
- the other kings
- of Israel
- of Israel
- were buried, and his son
- Zechariah
- became the king

ULT

²⁹ Then Jeroboam slept with his fathers, with the kings of Israel, and Zechariah his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁹ Jeroboam died, and was buried where the other kings of Israel were buried, and his son Zechariah became the king.

2 Kings 15

2 Kings 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel's evil

Israel assassinated one king after another. The Assyrians began attacking Israel. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

2 Kings 15:1

In the twenty-seventh year of Jeroboam

It can be stated clearly that this is the twenty-seventh year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 27 of the reign of Jeroboam" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Azariah

This king is better known today by the name "Uzziah."

Translation Words - ULT

- of Jeroboam
- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- the son of
- Amaziah
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- After Jeroboam had been ruling
- Israel
- king
- Israel
- son
- of Amaziah
- of Judah

ULT

¹ During the year of the 27th year of Jeroboam, the king of Israel, Azariah the son of Amaziah, the king of Judah, began to reign.

UST

¹ After Jeroboam had been ruling Israel for almost twenty-seven years, Azariah, son of Amaziah king of Judah, began to rule.

2 Kings 15:2

Jekoliah

This is the name of Azariah's mother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a son of
- in Jerusalem
- from Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- sixteen
- in Jerusalem
- She was from Jerusalem

ULT

² He was a son of 16 years upon his beginning to reign, and he reigned 52 years in Jerusalem. Also, the name of his mother was Jekoliah, from Jerusalem.

UST

² He was sixteen years old when he started to rule, and he ruled in Jerusalem for fifty-two years. His mother was Jecoliah. She was from Jerusalem.

2 Kings 15:3

He did what was right

Alternate translation: "Azariah did what was right"

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "what was right in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh was pleased with](#)
- [as his father](#)
- [Amaziah](#)

ULT

³ Now he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), like all that [Amaziah his father](#) had done.

UST

³ He did things that [Yahweh was pleased with, as his father Amaziah](#) had done.

2 Kings 15:4

the high places were not taken away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “no one took away the high places” or “Azariah did not have anyone take the high places away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

were not taken away

Being taken away represents being destroyed. Alternate translation: “were not destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [were sacrificing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But...where the people](#)
- [as they worshiped their idols](#)

ULT

⁴ However, the high places were not removed; [the people](#) still [were sacrificing](#) and burning incense at the high places.

UST

⁴ [But](#) the high places [where the people](#) continued to practice idolatry were not destroyed. They continued to burn incense [as they worshiped their idols](#).

2 Kings 15:5

to the day of his death

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **death**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “die.” Alternate translation: “until the day he died” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Jotham, the king's son, was over the household

The word “household” refers to the people living in the king's palace. Because Azariah was a leper, he had to live in a separate house. So his son, Jotham, took charge over the palace.

was over the household

Being over the household represents having authority over those in it. Alternate translation: “was in charge of the household” or “had authority over those in Azariah's palace” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the king
- the king
- in the house for
- Then Jotham
- the son of
- the house
- the people of
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh caused Azariah to become a leper
- that he lived
- in the
- land
- palace. He...alone in a
- house, and
- son...the
- Jotham
- land

ULT

⁵ Thus Yahweh afflicted the king so he was stricken with leprosy until the day of his death and he lived in the house for the exempt from duties. Then Jotham, the son of the king, was over the house, judging the people of the land.

UST

⁵ Yahweh caused Azariah to become a leper. Azariah was a leper all the remaining years that he lived. He was not allowed to live in the palace. He lived alone in a house, and his son Jotham ruled the land.

2 Kings 15:6

are they not written ... Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Azariah is in this other book. This can also be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written ... Judah.” or “you can read about them ... Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [events of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

⁶ Now the rest of the matters concerning Azariah, and all that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

⁶ If you want to know about everything else that Azariah did, it is written in the book of the [events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 15:7

Azariah slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: "Azariah died as his ancestors had" or "like his ancestors, Azariah died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

they buried him with his ancestors

Alternate translation: "his family buried him where his ancestors had been buried"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."
Alternate translation: "became king instead of Azariah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [David](#)
- [So...became king](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [his son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Azariah died and](#)
- [ancestors had been buried](#)
- [David](#)
- [Then his son](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

⁷ Then Azariah slept with [his fathers](#) and they buried him with [his fathers](#) in the city of [David](#). [So Jotham, his son, became king](#) in his place.

UST

⁷ [Azariah died and](#) they buried him in the part of Jerusalem called the city of [David](#), where his [ancestors had been buried](#). [Then his son Jotham became the king](#).

2 Kings 15:8

In the thirty-eighth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-eighth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 38 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Zechariah son of Jeroboam

This Jeroboam was the second king of Israel that had that name. He was the son of King Jehoash.

reigned over Israel in Samaria for six months

Samaria is the city that Zechariah lived in when he was king of Israel. Alternate translation: "lived in Samaria and reigned over Israel for six months"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Judah
- Zechariah
- the son of
- Jeroboam
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Judah for almost
- Zechariah
- son
- of Jeroboam, became
- the king
- of Israel

ULT

⁸ During the year of the 38th year of Azariah, [the king of Judah](#), [Zechariah](#), [the son of Jeroboam](#), became king over [Israel](#) in Samaria, six months.

UST

⁸ After Azariah had been ruling [Judah](#) [for almost](#) thirty-eight years, [Zechariah son of Jeroboam](#), became the king of [Israel](#). He ruled in the city of Samaria for only six months.

2 Kings 15:9

He did what was evil

Alternate translation: "Zechariah did what was evil"

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Jeroboam son of Nebat

This Jeroboam was the first king of the ten northern tribes that made up the kingdom of Israel.

who had caused Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: "who had caused the people of Israel to sin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [caused...to sin](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [like his ancestors](#)
- [the first Jeroboam](#)
- [the first Jeroboam](#)
- [sins](#)
- [the Israelite people to sin](#)

ULT

⁹ Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), just as [his fathers](#) had done. He did not turn away from the sins of [Jeroboam, the son of](#) Nebat, who [caused Israel to sin](#).

UST

⁹ He did many things that [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), [like his ancestors](#) had done. He committed the same kind of sins that [the first Jeroboam](#) had committed, [sins](#) that had induced [the Israelite people to sin](#).

2 Kings 15:10

Shallum ... Jabesh

These are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

against Zechariah

Alternate translation: "against King Zechariah"

Ibleam

This was the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Then he became king in his place

Alternate translation: "Then Shallum became king in Zechariah's place"

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the people
- and he killed him
- Then he became king

Translation Words - UST

- Then...son of
- He killed
- in the city of Ibleam
- the king

ULT

¹⁰ Then Shallum, [the son of](#) Jabesh, conspired against him, and he struck him in front of [the people](#), [and he killed him](#). [Then he became king](#) in his place.

UST

¹⁰ Then Shallum [son of](#) Jabesh, made plans to assassinate Zechariah. [He killed](#) him [in the city of Ibleam](#), and then he became [the king](#).

2 Kings 15:11

they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zechariah](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Zechariah](#)
- [the events of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

¹¹ Now the rest of the matters concerning [Zechariah](#), look, they are written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel](#).

UST

¹¹ Everything else that [Zechariah](#) did is written in the book of [the events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:12

This was the word of Yahweh

It can be stated clearly that the events described in verse 10 fulfilled the word of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “What happened to Zechariah was according to the word of Yahweh” or “What happened to Zechariah fulfilled the word of Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation

Sitting on the throne represents being the king. Alternate translation: “Your descendants will be the kings of Israel for four generations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Jehu
- Sons of
- the throne of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- This fulfilled what Yahweh
- King Jehu
- son and grandson and great-grandson and great-great-grandson
- be kings
- of Israel

ULT

¹² It was the word of Yahweh that he had spoken to Jehu, by saying, “Sons of fourth will sit for you on the throne of Israel,” and it was so.

UST

¹² When Zechariah died, the dynasty of King Jehu was finished. This fulfilled what Yahweh said to King Jehu would happen, “Your son and grandson and great-grandson and great-great-grandson will all be kings of Israel.”

2 Kings 15:13

in the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-ninth year of his reign. Alternate translation: “in year 39 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Shallum ... Jabesh

These are the names of two men. See how you translated these names in [2 Kings 15:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he reigned only one month in Samaria

Samaria is the city that he lived in when was king of Israel. Alternate translation: “Shallum lived in Samaria and reigned over Israel for only one month” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹³ Shallum, [the son of](#) Jabesh, began to reign during the year of the 39th year of Azariah, [the king of Judah](#), and he [reigned](#) a lunar month of days in Samaria.

UST

¹³ Shallum [son of](#) Jabesh, became the king of Israel [after King Amaziah had been](#) ruling [Judah for almost](#) thirty-nine years. But Shallum [ruled](#) in Samaria for only one month.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and he reigned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [after King Amaziah had been](#)
- [Judah for almost](#)
- [ruled](#)

2 Kings 15:14

Menahem ... Gadi

These are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.”
Alternate translation: “became king instead of Shallum” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- from Tirzah
- Samaria
- Thus he killed him
- and he became king

Translation Words - UST

- Then Menahem son of
- Shallum (2)
- the city of Tirzah
- and assassinated
- Shallum
- the king of Israel

ULT

¹⁴ Then Menahem, the son of Gadi, went up from Tirzah and he came into Samaria and he struck Shallum, the son of Jabesh in Samaria. Thus he killed him and he became king in his place.

UST

¹⁴ Then Menahem son of Gadi, went up from the city of Tirzah to Samaria and assassinated Shallum. Then Menahem became the king of Israel.

2 Kings 15:15

the conspiracy that he formed

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **conspiracy**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “plan.” It can be stated clearly what this conspiracy was. Alternate translation: “how he planned to murder King Zechariah” or “and how he murdered King Zechariah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the events of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Now the rest of the matters concerning Shallum and his conspiracy that he conspired, look, they are written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days of the kings of Israel.

UST

¹⁵ Everything else that Shallum did, including his killing King Zechariah, is written in the book of [the events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:16

Tiphsah

This is the name of a city. Some versions have "Tappuah," which is the name of another city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [toward Tirzah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tirzah](#)

ULT

16 Then Menahem struck Tiphsah and all who were in it, and its borders [toward Tirzah](#), because it did not open. So he struck, all its pregnant ones he split open. ^[1]

UST

16 At that time Menahem completely destroyed the city of Tiphsah and killed all the people who lived there and in the surrounding territory from [Tirzah](#) on. He did that because the people in the city refused to surrender to him. With his sword he even ripped open the bellies of pregnant women who lived there.

2 Kings 15:17

In the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-ninth year of his reign.
Alternate translation: "In year 39 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Judah
- the son of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Judah for almost
- son of
- became the king
- of Israel

ULT

¹⁷ During the year of the 39th year of Azariah, [the king of Judah](#), Menahem, [the son of](#) Gadi, began to reign over [Israel](#), ten years in Samaria.

UST

¹⁷ When King Azariah had been ruling [Judah for almost](#) thirty-nine years, Menahem [son of](#) Gadi, [became the king of Israel](#). He ruled in Samaria for ten years.

2 Kings 15:18

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

For his whole life

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **life**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as "live." Alternate translation: "The whole time that he lived" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

he did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

who had caused Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: "who had caused the people of Israel to sin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- what was evil
- Yahweh
- the sins of
- caused...to sin
- Jeroboam
- the son of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- that Yahweh
- evil
- He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam
- He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam
- had committed
- He continued to commit those sins
- the people of Israel

ULT

¹⁸ Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). He did not turn away from [the sins of Jeroboam, the son of Nebat](#), who [caused Israel to sin](#) all his days.

UST

¹⁸ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam had committed](#), sins that induced [the people of Israel](#) to sin. [He continued to commit those sins](#) all during the years that he lived.

2 Kings 15:19

Pul the king of Assyria came against the land

The phrase “Pul the king of Assyria” represents Pul and his army. Alternate translation: “Pul the king of Assyria came with his army against the land” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Pul the king of Assyria

Pul is the name of a man who was king of Assyria. He was also named Tiglath-Pileser. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

came against the land

The phrase “came against” is an idiom meaning to attack. “The land” refers to the land of Israel and represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “came with his army to attack the people of Israel” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

one thousand talents of silver

“1,000 talents of silver.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “thirty-three thousand kilograms of silver” or “thirty-three metric tons of silver” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

so that Pul’s support might be with him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **support**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “support.” Alternate translation: “so that Pul might support him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

to strengthen the kingdom of Israel in his hand

Having the kingdom in his hand represents ruling the kingdom. Alternate translation: “to strengthen his rule over the kingdom of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [the land](#)
- [silver](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [in his hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [thirty-three metric tons of silver](#)
- [order that the king](#)
- [of Assyria](#)
- [to be king and rule](#)
- [more strongly](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Pul, [the king of Assyria](#), came against [the land](#), so Menahem gave to Pul 1,000 rounds of [silver](#), for [his hands](#) being with him in order to strengthen the kingdom [in his hand](#).

UST

¹⁹ Then Pul (also known as Tiglath-Pileser) king of Assyria came with his army to attack Israel. So Menahem gave him about [thirty-three metric tons of silver](#) in order that the king of Assyria would help Menahem to continue [to be king and rule his country more strongly](#).

- his country

2 Kings 15:20

exacted this money from Israel

Alternate translation: "took this money from Israel"

fifty shekels of silver

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "six hundred grams of silver" or "three-fifths of a kilogram of silver" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

did not stay there in the land

Alternate translation: "did not stay there in Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...brought forth
- the silver
- silver
- he did...remain standing
- Israel
- the mighty ones of
- to the king of
- the king of
- Assyria
- Assyria (2)
- So...turned back

Translation Words - UST

- obtained
- that money from
- three-fifths of a kilogram of silver
- took that money and went
- back
- the rich...compelled...contribute
- So Tiglath-Pileser (2)
- the rich...compelled...contribute
- So Tiglath-Pileser
- the rich...compelled...contribute
- Israel

ULT

²⁰ Then Menahem brought forth the silver incumbent upon Israel obliging each of the mighty ones of wealth to give to the king of Assyria 50 silver shekels, incumbent upon each one. So the king of Assyria turned back and he did not remain standing there in the land.

UST

²⁰ Menahem obtained that money from the rich men in Israel. He compelled each of them to contribute three-fifths of a kilogram of silver. So Tiglath-Pileser took that money and went back home.

2 Kings 15:21

are they not written ... Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Menahem is in this other book. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

²¹ Now the rest of the matters concerning Menahem, and all that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel](#)?

UST

²¹ If you want to know more about everything that Menahem did, it is written in the book of the events [of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:22

Menahem slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 10:35](#). Alternate translation: “Menahem died as his ancestors had” or “like his ancestors, Menahem died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Pekahiah

This a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Menahem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [his son](#)
- [and...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Menahem died and was buried](#)
- [and his son](#)
- [the king of Israel](#)

ULT

²² Then Menahem slept with [his fathers](#), and Pekahiah [his son became king](#) in his place.

UST

²² [Menahem died and was buried, and his son](#) Pekahiah became [the king of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:23

In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the fiftieth year of his reign.
Alternate translation: "In year 50 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Pekahiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Judah
- the son of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Judah for almost
- son
- the king
- of Israel

ULT

²³ During the year of the 50th year of Azariah, [the king of Judah](#), Pekahiah, [the son of](#) Menahem, began to reign over [Israel](#) in Samaria, two years.

UST

²³ When King Azariah had been ruling [Judah for almost](#) fifty years, Menahem's [son](#) Pekahiah became [the king of Israel](#). He ruled in Samaria for only two years.

2 Kings 15:24

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not leave behind the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Leaving behind sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Pekahiah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he had caused Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [caused...to sin](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#)
- [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#)
- [sins](#)
- [of Israel to sin](#)

ULT

²⁴ Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). He did not turn away from the sins of [Jeroboam, the son of Nebat](#), that [caused Israel to sin](#).

UST

²⁴ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#) had committed, [sins](#) that induced the people [of Israel to sin](#).

2 Kings 15:25

Pekah ... Remaliah

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

conspired against him

Alternate translation: "secretly planned to kill Pekahiah"

fifty men

"50 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Argob ... Arieah

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the citadel of the king's palace

Alternate translation: "the fortified part of the king's palace" or "the safe place in the king's palace"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Pekahiah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- of the sons of
- the house of
- the king
- Thus he killed him
- and he became king

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- Then Pekah
- palace
- the king
- the king
- king, kingship

ULT

²⁵ Then Pekah, [the son of](#) Remaliah, his officer, conspired against him, and he struck him down in Samaria, in the citadel of [the house of the king](#), along with Argob and with Arieah and with him 50 men [of the sons of](#) the Gileadites. [Thus he killed him, and he became king](#) in his place.

UST

²⁵ Then one of Pekahiah's army commanders whose name was Pekah [son of](#) Remaliah, planned with fifty men, from the region of Gilead to kill Pekahiah and two of his assistants, Argob and Arieah. They assassinated the king in a fortified place in the king's [palace](#) in Samaria. [Then Pekah](#) became [the king](#).

2 Kings 15:26

they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the events of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

²⁶ Now the rest of the matters concerning Pekahiah, and all that he did, look, they are written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel](#).

UST

²⁶ Everything else that Pekahiah did is written in the book [of the events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:27

In the fifty-second year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the fifty-second year of his reign.
Alternate translation: "In year 52 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Judah
- the son of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Judah for almost
- son of Remaliah, became
- the king
- of Israel

ULT

²⁷ During the year of the 52nd year of Azaria, [the king of Judah](#), Pekah, [the son of Remaliah](#), began to reign over [Israel](#) in Samaria, 20 years.

UST

²⁷ When King Azariah had been ruling [Judah for almost](#) fifty-two years, Pekah [son of Remaliah, became the king of Israel](#). He ruled in Samaria for twenty years.

2 Kings 15:28

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sins of](#)
- [caused...to sin](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#)
- [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#)
- [had committed](#)
- [sins](#)
- [of Israel to sin](#)

ULT

²⁸ Also he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). He did not turn away from [the sins of Jeroboam, the son of Nebat](#), who [caused Israel to sin](#).

UST

²⁸ He also did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam had committed, sins](#) that induced the people [of Israel to sin](#).

2 Kings 15:29

In the days of Pekah king of Israel

It can be stated clearly that this refers to the time of Pekah's reign. Alternate translation: "In the days of the reign of Pekah king of Israel" or "During the time that Pekah was king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Tiglath-Pileser

In [2 Kings 15:19](#) this man was called "Pul." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ijon ... Abel Beth Maacah ... Janoah ... Kedesh ... Hazor ... Gilead ... Galilee ... Naphtali

These are the names of cities or regions. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He carried away the people to Assyria

Here "He" refers to Tiglath-Pileser and represents him and his army. Carrying the people to Assyria represents forcing them to go to Assyria. Alternate translation: "He and his army forced the people to go to Assyria (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

the people

It can be stated clearly which people these are. Alternate translation: "the people of those places" or "the people of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- Assyria
- to Assyria
- the Gilead
- the land of
- Naphtali

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- the king
- of Assyria
- and go to live in Assyria
- and the regions of
- Gilead
- and Naphtali
- the Israelite people

ULT

²⁹ In the days of Pekah, [the king of Israel](#), Tiglath-Pileser, [the king of Assyria](#), came and he took Ijon, and Abel Beth Maacah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and [the Gilead](#), and the Galilee, all [the land of Naphtali](#) and he forced them to exile [to Assyria](#).

UST

²⁹ While Pekah was [the king](#), Tiglath-Pileser, [the king of Assyria](#), came with his army and captured the cities of Ijon, Abel of Beth Maacah, Janoah, Kedesh, Hazor, [and the regions of Gilead](#), Galilee, [and Naphtali](#). His army forced [the Israelite people](#) to leave their country [and go to live in Assyria](#).

2 Kings 15:30

Hoshea ... Elah

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a conspiracy

A conspiracy is a secret plan by a group to do harm to someone or something.

He attacked him and killed him

Alternate translation: "Hoshea attacked Pekah and killed him"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."
Alternate translation: "became king instead of Pekah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the twentieth year of Jotham son of Uzziah

It can be stated clearly that this is the twentieth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 20 of the reign of Jotham son of Uzziah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Hoshea
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- and he killed him
- Then he became king
- of Jotham

Translation Words - UST

- Hoshea
- Then...son of
- Pekah (2)
- son (3)
- kill
- Jotham
- the king of Israel

ULT

³⁰ Then Hoshea, the son of Elah, plotted a conspiracy against Pekah, the son of Remaliah, and he struck him and he killed him. Then he became king in his place, in the 20th year of Jotham, the son of Uzziah.

UST

³⁰ Then Hoshea son of Elah, planned to kill Pekah. He assassinated him when Amaziah's son Jotham had been ruling Judah for almost twenty years. Then Hoshea became the king of Israel.

2 Kings 15:31

they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the events of the Kings](#)
- [of Israel](#)

ULT

³¹ Now the rest of the matters concerning Pekah and all that he did, look, they are written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Israel](#).

UST

³¹ Everything else that Pekah did is written in the book [of the events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:32

In the second year of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel

It can be stated clearly that this is the second year of his reign.

Alternate translation: "In year 2 of the reign of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Jotham son of Azariah, king of Judah began to reign

Alternate translation: "Jotham son of Azariah, king of Judah became king of Judah"

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- Jotham
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- When Pekah had been ruling
- Azariah's son (2)
- Israel for almost
- Azariah's son
- Israel for almost
- Jotham
- Judah

ULT

³² In the second year of Pekah, [the son of Remaliah](#), [the king of Israel](#), [Jotham](#), [the son of Azariah](#), [the king of Judah](#), began to reign.

UST

³² [When Pekah had been ruling Israel for almost two years](#), [Azariah's son Jotham](#) began to rule [Judah](#).

2 Kings 15:33

He was twenty-five years old ... sixteen years

"He was 25 years old...16 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jerushah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Zadok](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twenty](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)
- [of Zadok](#)

ULT

³³ He was [a son of](#) 25 years upon his beginning to reign and he reigned 16 years [in Jerusalem](#). Also, the name of his mother was Jerushah, the daughter of [Zadok](#).

UST

³³ He was [twenty](#)-five years old when he started to rule, and he ruled [from Jerusalem](#) for sixteen years. His mother was Jerusha, the daughter [of Zadok](#).

2 Kings 15:34

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what was right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh, as](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

³⁴ Now he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), like all that Azariah [his father](#) had done, he did.

UST

³⁴ He did many things that pleased [Yahweh, as his father](#) Azariah had done.

2 Kings 15:35

the high places were not taken away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “no one took away the high places” or “Jotham did not have anyone take the high places away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

were not taken away

Being taken away represents being destroyed. Alternate translation: “were not destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Jotham built the upper gate

“Jotham built” represents Jotham making his workers build it. Alternate translation: “Jotham had his workers build the upper gate” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were...The people](#)
- [were sacrificing](#)
- [the...gate of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the people worshiped](#)
- [Yahweh, and the people](#)
- [there to honor Yahweh. Jotham's...the](#)
- [of the temple](#)
- [of the temple](#)

ULT

³⁵ However, the high places were not removed. [The people](#) still [were sacrificing](#) and were burning incense at the high places. He built the upper [gate of the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

³⁵ But he did not destroy the places where [the people worshiped Yahweh](#), [and the people](#) continued to burn incense [there to honor Yahweh](#). [Jotham's](#) workers built [the](#) Upper Gate [of the temple](#).

2 Kings 15:36

are they not written ... Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Jotham is in this other book. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jotham](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jotham](#)
- [of the...of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

³⁶ Now the rest of the matters concerning [Jotham](#) that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

³⁶ If you want to know more about everything else that [Jotham](#) did, it is written in the book [of the](#) events [of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 15:37

In those days

This refers to a time period. What time period this refers to can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “During that time” or “While Jotham was king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Rezin

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pekah ... Remaliah

These are men’s names. Pekah was the king of Israel. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:37](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the king of
- the son of
- against Judah

Translation Words - UST

- that Jotham was the king that Yahweh
- and King
- Pekah
- Judah

ULT

³⁷ In those days Yahweh began to dispatch Rezin, [the king of](#) Aram, and Pekah, [the son of](#) Remaliah, [against](#) Judah.

UST

³⁷ It was during the time [that Jotham was the king that Yahweh](#) sent King Rezin of Aram [and King Pekah](#) of Israel with their armies to attack [Judah](#).

2 Kings 15:38

Jotham slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: "Jotham died as his ancestors had" or "Like his ancestors, Jotham died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Jotham" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jotham
- his fathers
- his fathers (2)
- his father
- David
- Ahaz
- his son
- Then...began to reign

Translation Words - UST

- Jotham
- his ancestors had been
- buried (2)
- of David. Then
- of David. Then
- his son
- Ahaz
- the king of Judah

ULT

38 Then Jotham slept with his fathers and he was buried with his fathers in the city of David, his father. Then Ahaz, his son, began to reign in his place.
15:16 ^[1], one ancient version and some modern versions read, .

UST

38 Jotham died and was buried where his ancestors had been buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then his son Ahaz became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 16

2 Kings 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Ahaz

Ahaz was a wicked king. Israel and Aram united to fight against him, so he paid the Assyrian king to attack Aram. Assyria defeated the people of Aram and took them into captivity. The people were to trust in Yahweh and not rely on military alliances with other Gentile nations. This showed a lack of trust in the power of Yahweh. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Kings 16:1

In the seventeenth year of Pekah son of Remaliah

It can be stated clearly that this is the seventeenth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 17 of the reign of Pekah son of Remaliah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Pekah ... Remaliah

These are men's names. Pekah was the king of Israel. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:25](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹ During the year of the 17th year of Pekah, [the son of](#) Remaliah, [Ahaz, the son of Jotham, the king of Judah](#), began to reign.

UST

¹ [When Pekah had been ruling Israel for almost](#) seventeen years, [Ahaz son of Jotham](#), became [the king of Judah](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Pekah had been ruling Israel for almost](#)
- [son of](#) (2)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Judah](#)

2 Kings 16:2

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh his God

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what was right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh his God considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

as David his ancestor had done

David had done what is right.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahaz](#)
- [was a son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He](#)
- [was twenty](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God, good things like his](#)
- [ancestor](#)

ULT

² [Ahaz was a son of](#) 20 years upon his beginning to reign, and he reigned 16 years [in Jerusalem](#). However he did not do what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh his God](#), as David [his father](#).

UST

² [He was twenty](#) years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled [from Jerusalem](#) for sixteen years. He did not do things that pleased [Yahweh his God, good things like his ancestor](#) King David had done.

2 Kings 16:3

he walked in the way of the kings of Israel

Walking represents behavior and actions. Alternate translation: “King Ahaz acted the same way that the kings of Israel had acted” or “he did the things that the kings of Israel had done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

following the detestable practices of the nations

Here “following” represents doing what others do. Alternate translation: “copying the disgusting things that the other nations did, the nations” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the nations

The word “nations” represents the people of other nations. Here it refers to the people of the nations who had lived in that land. Alternate translation: “the people of other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

which Yahweh had driven out

Alternate translation: “Drive out” means “force out.” Alternate translation: “which Yahweh had forced to leave”

before the people of Israel

The people of those nations fled as the people of Israel moved into the land. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “before the people of Israel who moved into the land” or “as the people of Israel moved into the land” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings of
- Israel
- Israel
- his son
- the sons of
- in the fire
- like the abominations of
- the nations
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- the kings
- of Israel had been
- as the Israelites were advancing through the land
- son to be an
- as the Israelites were advancing through the land
- offering to idols
- That imitated the disgusting things

ULT

³ Instead, he walked in the way of [the kings of Israel](#). indeed, he even made [his son](#) pass through [in the fire](#), [like the abominations of the nations](#), that [Yahweh](#) had driven them out away from the faces of [the sons of Israel](#).

UST

³ Instead, he was as sinful as [the kings of Israel had been](#). He even sacrificed his son to be an offering to idols. That imitated the disgusting things that the people who previously lived there had done, people whom [Yahweh](#) had driven out as the Israelites were advancing through the land.

- that the people who previously lived there had done
- Yahweh

2 Kings 16:4

the high places, on the hilltops, and under every green tree

These are places where the people of the other nations worshiped their false gods.

under every green tree

God wanted his people to offer sacrifices to him in Jerusalem. The word “every” here is an exaggeration to show how determined King Ahaz was to disobey God by offering sacrifices in many other places instead. Alternate translation: “under many green trees” or “under many green trees around the country” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

⁴ Also he sacrificed and he burned incense on the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree.

UST

⁴ He offered sacrifices and burned incense to honor Yahweh at many different places, including on the tops of many hills and under many big trees, instead of in Jerusalem as Yahweh had commanded.

2 Kings 16:5

Rezin ... Pekah ... Remaliah

These are men's names. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:37](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

besieged Ahaz

Ahaz was in Jerusalem. Here "Ahaz" represents himself and the people who were in Jerusalem with him. Alternate translation: "surrounded the city with Ahaz in it" or "surrounded Ahaz and the others in the city with him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#) (2)
- [the son of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [Ahaz](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who was the son of](#)
- [King Remaliah](#)
- [King](#) (2)
- [of Israel](#)) also came along with his army, and together their armies came
- [attack Jerusalem, but](#)
- [Ahaz](#)

ULT

⁵ Then Rezin, [the king of](#) Aram and Pekah, [the son of](#) Remaliah, [the king of Israel](#), were simultaneously coming up [to Jerusalem](#) for the battle. Then they layed siege against [Ahaz](#), but they were not able to wage war.

UST

⁵ Then King Rezin of Aram, came along with his army, and at that time Pekah ([who was the son of King Remaliah of Israel](#)) also came along with his army, and together their armies came up to [attack Jerusalem, but King Ahaz](#) led a fight to defend the city. The armies surrounded the city, but they could not conquer it.

2 Kings 16:6

recovered Elath for Aram

Here “Aram” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “took back control of the city of Elath for the people of Aram” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Elath

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [2 Kings 14:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

drove the men of Judah out of Elath

Alternate translation: “forced the men of Judah to leave Elath”

to this day

This means to the time of the writing of this book.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- restored
- the Jews

Translation Words - UST

- It was at that time
- drove out...Judah
- the...who were

ULT

⁶ At that time, Rezin, the king of Aram, restored Elath to Aram and he drove the Jews out of Elath. Then Arameans came to Elath and they have lived there to this day.

UST

⁶ It was at that time that the army that was commanded by King Rezin of Aram drove out the people of Judah who were living in the city of Elath, and the city came under the control of the Arameans. This was the time when some people from Aram began to live in Elath, and they are still living there.

2 Kings 16:7

Tiglath-Pileser

In [2 Kings 15:19](#) this man was called “Pul.” See how you translated his name in [2 Kings 15:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

I am your servant and your son

Being a servant and a son represents submitting to someone’s authority. Alternate translation: “I will obey you as if I were your servant or your son” (See: [Metaphor](#))

from the hand of the king of Aram and from the hand of the king of Israel

The hand is a metonym that represents power. Alternate translation: “from the power of the king of Aram and from the power of the king of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

who have attacked me

The kings attacking Ahaz represent the armies of those kings attacking Ahaz and his people. Alternate translation: “who have attacked me with their armies” or “whose armies have attacked me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahaz](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of](#) (2)
- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [and your son](#)
- [and deliver me](#)
- [from the palm of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King](#)
- [King...of Aram](#) (2)
- [Please come and](#)
- [King...of Aram](#)
- [and Israel who...my country](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [messengers to](#)
- [of Assyria](#)
- [I promise that I will completely do what you tell me](#)
- [your son](#)
- [rescue us from the armies](#)

ULT

⁷ So [Ahaz](#) sent [messengers](#) to Tiglath-Pileser, [the king of Assyria](#), saying, “I am [your servant and your son](#). Come up [and deliver me from the palm of the king of Aram](#) and from the palm of [the king of Israel](#), who have risen up against me.”

UST

⁷ [King Ahaz](#) sent [messengers to King Tiglath-Pileser of Assyria](#), to tell this message to him: “[I promise that I will completely do what you tell me](#) to do, as though I were [your son](#). [Please come and rescue us from the armies of Aram and Israel who are attacking my country](#).”

2 Kings 16:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaz
- the silver
- the gold
- in the house of
- the house of (2)
- Yahweh
- the king
- to the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaz
- the silver
- and gold
- the
- for the king
- and in the temple
- palace (2)
- and in the temple
- of Assyria

ULT

⁸ So Ahaz took the silver and the gold that was found in the house of Yahweh and in the treasuries of the house of the king and he sent a bribe to the king of Assyria.

UST

⁸ Ahaz took the silver and gold that was in the palace and in the temple and sent it to Assyria to be a present for the king of Assyria.

2 Kings 16:9

the king of Assyria went up against Damascus

The word “king” represents the king and his army. Also, Damascus represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the king of Assyria and his army attacked the people of Damascus” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

carried off its people as prisoners to Kir

Carrying off the people represents forcing them to go away. Alternate translation: “made the people his prisoners and forced them to go to Kir” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Kir

This could mean: (1) this is the name of a city or (2) this word means “city” and refers to the capital city of Assyria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of...and
- Assyria
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- So Tiglath-Pileser
- of Assyria
- So Tiglath-Pileser
- they...the people of Damascus

ULT

⁹ Then [the king of Assyria](#) listened to him, so [the king of Assyria](#) went up against Damascus, [and](#) he seized it and he led it into exile to Kir. He also killed Rezin.

UST

⁹ [So Tiglath-Pileser](#) did what Ahaz requested. His army marched to Damascus and captured it, and [they](#) took [the people of Damascus](#) as prisoners to live in the capital city [of Assyria](#).

2 Kings 16:10

the design for all the workmanship needed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “all the instructions that the workers needed in order to build it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the King
- the king of
- the King
- Ahaz
- Ahaz
- Assyria
- the altar
- the altar
- Uriah
- the priest

Translation Words - UST

- When King
- Ahaz
- When King
- King
- the
- King
- the altar
- the altar
- Uriah
- high priest in Jerusalem...of the altar

ULT

10 Then [the King, Ahaz](#), went to meet Tiglath-Pileser, [the king of Assyria](#), at Damascus, and he saw [the altar](#) that was in Damascus. So [the King Ahaz](#) sent to [Uriah the priest](#) the plan of [the altar](#) and its pattern for all its design.

UST

10 [When King Ahaz](#) went to Damascus to meet [King](#) Tiglath-Pileser, he saw [the altar](#) that was there. So he sent to [Uriah, the high priest in Jerusalem](#), a drawing [of the altar](#) and a model that represented exactly [the altar](#) in Damascus.

2 Kings 16:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Uriah
- Uriah
- the priest
- the priest
- the altar
- the King
- the King
- Ahaz
- Ahaz

Translation Words - UST

- So Uriah...an altar in Jerusalem
- Uriah finished
- So Uriah...an altar in Jerusalem
- Uriah finished
- the altar
- following the drawing
- King Ahaz...before Ahaz returned to Jerusalem
- following the drawing
- King Ahaz...before Ahaz returned to Jerusalem

ULT

¹¹ So Uriah the priest built the altar according to all that the King Ahaz had sent from Damascus. Thus Uriah the priest did while the King Ahaz was coming from Damascus.

UST

¹¹ So Uriah built an altar in Jerusalem following the drawing that King Ahaz had sent. Uriah finished the altar before Ahaz returned to Jerusalem from Damascus.

2 Kings 16:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- the...king
- altar...the
- the altar

Translation Words - UST

- When the
- king returned...he saw the altar
- king returned...he saw the altar
- king returned...he saw the altar
- king returned...he saw the altar

ULT

¹² When the king came from Damascus, the king saw the altar. So the king came near to the altar and he offered up on it.

UST

¹² When the king returned from Damascus, he saw the altar.

2 Kings 16:13

General Information:

This is what King Ahaz did after he returned from Damascus and visited the new altar which Uriah the priest had built for him.

He made his burnt offering

Alternate translation: "King Ahaz made his burnt offering"

on the altar

This refers to the altar that King Ahaz told Uriah to build.

Translation Words - ULT

- his burnt offering
- his grain offering
- the peace offerings
- the altar

Translation Words - UST

- it
- and burned animal
- offering on
- promise friendship with God

ULT

¹³ Then he made his burnt offering and his grain offering rise in smoke, and he poured out his drink offering, and he sprinkled the blood of the peace offerings that were for him on the altar.

UST

¹³ He went up to it and burned animal sacrifices and a flour offering on it. He also poured a wine offering on it and threw on it the blood of the offerings to promise friendship with God.

2 Kings 16:14

from the front of the temple ... from between his altar and the temple of Yahweh

Both of these phrases tell where the bronze altar was. They refer to the same place.

Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- the...altar
- the altar
- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the front face of
- the house
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- The old bronze altar that had been
- The old bronze altar that had been
- it
- altar
- dedicated
- dedicated
- Yahweh
- the temple, so Ahaz moved
- to the

ULT

¹⁴ Then the bronze altar that was before the faces of Yahweh, also he brought near from the front face of the house, from between the altar and from between the house of Yahweh and he put it on the side of altar towards north.

UST

¹⁴ The old bronze altar that had been dedicated long ago to Yahweh was between the new altar and the temple, so Ahaz moved it to the north side of his new altar.

2 Kings 16:15

the large altar

This refers to the new altar that Ahaz told Uriah to build.

the king's burnt offering and his grain offering

When Ahaz said "the king" and "his," he was referring to himself. The king treated his offerings as special. Alternate translation: "my burnt offering and my grain offering" or "the royal burnt offering and royal grain offering" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the...king
- King...the
- Ahaz
- the people of
- the land
- and their drink offerings
- the blood of
- blood of
- Then...commanded
- sacrifice
- bronze
- Uriah
- the priest
- the...altar
- But the...altar
- the burnt offering of
- the burnt offering of
- the burnt offering of
- the burnt offering
- the grain offering of
- his grain offering
- and their grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- Then King
- ones that they will burn completely, and my flour offering
- Ahaz
- and the people's
- and the people's
- grain and...offerings
- wine
- wine
- the blood of
- ordered Uriah
- But the old bronze altar will
- Each morning
- ones that they will burn completely, and my flour offering

ULT

¹⁵ Then the King Ahaz commanded Uriah the priest, saying, "On the large altar make the burnt offering of the morning and the grain offering of the evening, and the burnt offering of the king and his grain offering, and the burnt offering of all the people of the land, and their grain offering and their drink offerings rise in smoke. Also you will sprinkle on it all the blood of the burnt offering, and all blood of sacrifice. But the bronze altar will be for me to seek."

UST

¹⁵ Then King Ahaz ordered Uriah: "Each morning put on this new altar the sacrifices that the priests will burn completely, and in the evening put on it the flour offering, along with my offering and the offerings that the people bring, ones that they will burn completely, and my flour offering and the people's grain and wine offerings. Pour against the sides of the altar the blood of all the animals that are sacrificed. But the old bronze altar will be only for me to use for divination."

- the animals that are sacrificed
- will burn
- priests
- it the flour offering, along with my offering
- Pour against the sides of the altar
- and the offerings that the people bring
- ones that they will burn completely, and my flour offering
- and the people's
- command, commandment

2 Kings 16:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Uriah
- the priest
- the King
- Ahaz
- had commanded

Translation Words - UST

- So Uriah
- the king
- the king
- commanded
- him to do

ULT

¹⁶ So Uriah the priest did according to all that the King Ahaz had commanded.

UST

¹⁶ So Uriah did what the king commanded him to do.

2 Kings 16:17

the portable stands

“the movable stands” or “the carts.” These stands had wheels on them so they could be moved around.

he also took down the sea

“he also removed the large bowl.” The “sea” was a huge basin or water bowl that was made of bronze.

Translation Words - ULT

- the King
- Ahaz
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- King...told...that were outside the temple
- Ahaz
- and removed it from the backs of the bronze statues

ULT

¹⁷ Then the King Ahaz cut off the borders of the bases and he removed the wash bowl from upon them. Also he took down the sea from upon the bronze oxen that were beneath it and he put it on pavement of stones.

UST

¹⁷ King Ahaz told his workers to take off the frames of the carts that were outside the temple and to take down the basins that were on them. They also took down the large bronze tank called “The Sea” and removed it from the backs of the bronze statues of the oxen and put it on a stone foundation.

2 Kings 16:18

because of the king of Assyria

Why they did this can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “to please the king of Assyria” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Sabbath
- at the house
- the king
- the king of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Then to please the king...of Judah
- the kings
- the temple
- the Sabbath day
- and closed up the private entrance into the temple
- and closed up the private entrance into the temple
- the kings

ULT

18 Also he removed the covered walkway for [the Sabbath](#) that they had built [at the house](#), and the outer entrance of [the king](#) from [the house of Yahweh](#), because of the face of [the king of Assyria](#).

UST

18 [Then to please the king](#) of Assyria, Ahaz had them remove from [the temple](#) the roof under which the people walked into the temple on [the Sabbath day](#), and [closed up the private entrance into the temple](#) for [the kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 16:19

are they not written ... Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Ahaz is in this other book. This can also be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” or “someone has written about them in The Book ... Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ahaz](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ahaz](#)
- [of the...of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Now the rest of the matters concerning [Ahaz](#) that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

¹⁹ If you want to know about the other things that [Ahaz](#) did, they are written in the book [of the](#) events [of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 16:20

Ahaz slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: “Ahaz died as his ancestors had” or “like his ancestors, Ahaz died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried with his ancestors

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people buried him with his ancestors” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Ahaz” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ahaz
- his fathers
- his fathers
- David
- his son
- Then...became king

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaz
- ancestors
- he was buried...his...had been buried
- David
- Then his son
- the king

ULT

²⁰ Then Ahaz slept with his fathers and he was buried with his fathers in the city of David. Then Hezekiah his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁰ Ahaz died, and he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, where his ancestors had been buried. Then his son Hezekiah became the king.

2 Kings 17

2 Kings 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story about the kingdom of Israel and continues with Judah alone.

Special concepts in this chapter

Idol worship

Israel continued to worship idols, so God punished them by allowing Assyria to conquer them and take them away. Assyria brought people from other lands and settled them in what used to be Israel's territory and the new people worshiped their own gods in addition to Yahweh. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

2 Kings 17:1

Hoshea son of Elah

Hoshea became the king of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Elah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He ruled in Samaria

Samaria was the capital city of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Ahaz](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Hoshea](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son Hoshea began](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [after King](#)
- [Ahaz had ruled](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Hoshea ruled](#)

ULT

¹ In the 12th year [of Ahaz, the king of Judah, Hoshea, the son of Elah](#), began to reign in Samaria over [Israel](#), nine years.

UST

¹ Elah's [son Hoshea began](#) to rule [Israel after King Ahaz had ruled Judah](#) for twelve years. [Hoshea ruled](#) in Samaria for nine years.

2 Kings 17:2

evil in the sight of Yahweh

He did not obey Yahweh's laws as given to Moses. "In the sight of" is metaphor for judgment or opinion. Alternate translation: "evil to Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [of Israel had done](#)

ULT

² Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), only not as the kings of [Israel](#) who were before him.

UST

² He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), but he did not do as many evil things as the previous kings [of Israel had done](#)—the ones who had ruled Israel previously.

2 Kings 17:3

Shalmaneser

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hoshea became his servant and brought him tribute

Hoshea did as the King of Assyria commanded and brought money to him so that the King would not destroy Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Assyria
- Hoshea
- a servant
- and he brought back
- tribute

Translation Words - UST

- The army of King...of Assyria
- the army of
- King Hoshea
- were forced
- pay much
- tribute

ULT

³ Shalmaneser, [the king of Assyria](#), came up against him, and [Hoshea](#) became a [servant](#) for him [and he brought back tribute](#) to him.

UST

³ [The army of King](#) Shalmaneser [of Assyria](#) attacked and defeated [the army of King Hoshea](#). As a result, the Israelites [were forced](#) to [pay much tribute](#) to Assyria each year.

2 Kings 17:4

So

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

year by year

Alternate translation: "every year"

shut him up and bound him in prison

Alternate translation: "put Hoshea in prison"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of (2)
- to the king of
- the king of
- Assyria
- Assyria
- Assyria
- in a house of
- in Hoshea
- messengers
- Egypt
- tribute

Translation Words - UST

- Hoshea
- against the rulers
- king of (2)
- the Israelites...Assyria. Hoshea also...the
- he had been paying...every year. But the king
- so he told his officers...Hoshea in prison
- of Assyria
- of Assyria found out about those things
- Assyria
- messengers
- Egypt
- tribute

ULT

⁴ Then the king of Assyria found in Hoshea a conspiracy, that he had sent messengers to So, the king of Egypt and he had not brought up tribute to the king of Assyria, as year by year. So the king of Assyria restrained him and he bound him in a house of confinement.

UST

⁴ But several years later, Hoshea secretly planned to rebel against the rulers of Assyria. He sent messengers to So, king of Egypt, asking if his army could help the Israelites fight against Assyria. Hoshea also stopped paying the tribute that he had been paying Assyria every year. But the king of Assyria found out about those things, so he told his officers to put Hoshea in prison.

2 Kings 17:5

besieged it

put troops around the city in order to force it to surrender

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Assyria
- the land
- to Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- Then he...the army
- of Assyria
- land
- His army...the city of Samaria

ULT

⁵ Then the king of Assyria came up against all the land, and he came up to Samaria and he besieged around it three years.

UST

⁵ Then he brought the army of Assyria to Israel, and they attacked everywhere in that land. His army besieged the city of Samaria for three years.

2 Kings 17:6

carried Israel away to Assyria

The name "Israel" is metonymy for the people living there. Alternate translation: "took the Israelite people to Assyria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Halah ... Habor River ... Gozan

These are the names of locations. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Medes

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of Hoshea
- the king of
- Assyria
- to Assyria
- Samaria
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Finally, after King
- Hoshea had been ruling Israel
- the army of Assyria forcefully entered
- to Assyria
- the city and...the people
- They took the Israelite people

ULT

⁶ In the ninth year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria captured Samaria and he exiled Israel to Assyria. Then he had them live in Halah, and along Habor, the River of Gozan, and the cities of Media.

UST

⁶ Finally, after King Hoshea had been ruling Israel for nine years, the army of Assyria forcefully entered the city and captured the people. They took the Israelite people to Assyria and forced some of them to live in the city of Halah. They forced others to live near the Habor River in the district of Gozan. They forced others to live in the towns where the Mede people group lived.

2 Kings 17:7

General Information:

The narrative pauses to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

This captivity

This refers to the capture of the Israelites by the Assyrians.

the hand of

"Hand" is metonymy for control, authority or power. Alternate translation: "the control of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- had sinned
- against Yahweh
- their God
- gods
- Egypt
- Egypt
- the hand of
- the king of
- Also they had feared

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people had
- the Israelite people had
- worship
- sinned
- Yahweh
- their God
- other gods
- power of the
- king of...Egypt
- Egypt
- of...but later they

ULT

⁷ Now it happened because the sons of Israel had sinned against Yahweh, their God, who had brought them up out of the land of Egypt, from under the hand of Pharaoh, the king of Egypt. Also they had feared other gods,

UST

⁷ Those things happened because the Israelite people had sinned against Yahweh their God. He had rescued their ancestors from the power of the king of Egypt and brought them safely out of Egypt, but later they began to worship other gods.

2 Kings 17:8

walking in the practices

“Walking” is metaphor for the ways or patterns of behavior people use in their lives. Alternate translation: “doing the activities” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the nations](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the pagan peoples around them practiced](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [The people of Israel also](#)
- [The people of Israel also](#)
- [of Israel...them](#)

ULT

⁸ and they walked in the statutes of [the nations](#), whom [Yahweh](#) had dispossessed away from the faces of [the sons of Israel](#), and the kings of [Israel](#), that they had made.

UST

⁸ They imitated the things that [the pagan peoples around them practiced](#). Those were the very peoples that [Yahweh](#) had driven out as the Israelites occupied their land. [The people of Israel also](#) did the evil things that most of the kings [of Israel](#) showed [them](#).

2 Kings 17:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- their God

Translation Words - UST

- The Israelite people also...many things
- The Israelite people also...many things
- Yahweh
- their God

ULT

⁹ Now the sons of Israel did things in secret against Yahweh their God that were not right. Moreover they built for themselves high places in all their cities, from a tower for watchmen to a city with fortification.

UST

⁹ The Israelite people also secretly did many things that were not pleasing to Yahweh their God. They built places to worship their idols on the hills around all their cities, including small towns and big cities with walls around them.

2 Kings 17:10

on every high hill and under every green tree

These are exaggerations to show that worship of false gods was widespread. Alternate translation: “on high hills and under green trees everywhere” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

¹⁰ They also erected standing stones and Asherah poles for themselves on every high hill and under every flourishing tree.

UST

¹⁰ They set up stone pillars to honor gods, and poles to worship the goddess Asherah at the top of every high hill and under every big tree.

2 Kings 17:11

performed wicked things to provoke Yahweh to anger

Possible ways to render this: (1) “did many wicked things that caused Yahweh to become angry” or (2) “did many sinful things that made Yahweh angry”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- had exiled
- evil

Translation Words - UST

- the groups that Yahweh had...from the land
- Yahweh
- driven out
- wicked

ULT

¹¹ They burned incense there in all high places, like the nations that Yahweh had exiled away from their faces, and they did evil things to provoke Yahweh to anger.

UST

¹¹ The Israelites burned incense in every place where they worshiped those gods, just like the peoples who lived there previously had done—the groups that Yahweh had driven out from the land. The Israelites did many wicked things that caused Yahweh to become angry.

2 Kings 17:12

about which Yahweh had said to them

Alternate translation: "about which Yahweh had warned them"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT

¹² They even the served idols, about which Yahweh had said to them, "You must not do this thing."

UST

¹² Yahweh warned them many times that they should not worship idols, but they did it anyway.

2 Kings 17:13

Yahweh had testified ... by every prophet

Yahweh spoke through the prophets.

Turn from your evil ways

Alternate translation: "Stop doing the evil things you have been doing"

I sent to you by my servants the prophets

The prophets were sent by Yahweh to remind the people of God's Laws and to obey them.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yet...had brought warnings
- Yahweh
- your fathers
- my servants
- against Israel
- by the hand of
- by the hand of
- his prophets
- the prophets
- Turn
- evil
- my commandments
- I have commanded
- the instruction

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- prophets...to warn the people
- prophets
- served me
- to you
- again
- of Israel and the people
- Stop doing all the
- served me
- evil things
- my commands
- obey...to
- the laws
- that I told your ancestors

ULT

¹³ Yet Yahweh had brought warnings against Israel and against Judah by the hand of all of his prophets, every seer, by saying, "Turn from your evil ways and keep my commandments, my statutes, according to all of the instruction that I have commanded your fathers, and that I have sent to you by the hand of my servants the prophets."

UST

¹³ Yahweh frequently sent his prophets and seers to warn the people of Israel and the people of Judah. The message that Yahweh gave them was, "Stop doing all the evil things you have been doing. Obey my commands and my laws, the laws that I told your ancestors to obey and that I told the prophets who served me to tell to you again."

2 Kings 17:14

they were very stubborn

They were unwilling to follow God's laws and rely on Yahweh as their God.

Translation Words - ULT

- their fathers
- did...put trust
- in Yahweh
- their God

Translation Words - UST

- pay attention
- just as their ancestors
- Yahweh
- their God

ULT

¹⁴ But they did not heed and they hardened their necks as the necks of their fathers who did not put trust in Yahweh their God.

UST

¹⁴ But the Israelite people would not pay attention. They were stubborn, just as their ancestors were. Just as their ancestors did, they refused to trust in Yahweh their God.

2 Kings 17:15

rejected his statutes

They refused to obey God's Laws.

They followed useless practices

They followed the practices of the people around them.

not to imitate

Alternate translation: "not to copy"

Translation Words - ULT

- his statutes
- his covenant
- he had cut
- their fathers
- he had admonished
- the nations
- Yahweh
- had commanded

Translation Words - UST

- They...Yahweh's
- laws
- and the covenant
- ancestors. They ignored Yahweh's warnings
- They worshiped worthless idols and as a result...Although Yahweh
- commanded them
- not to imitate...they disobeyed
- the peoples that lived near them

ULT

¹⁵ Thus they rejected his statutes and his covenant that he had cut with their fathers, and his testimonies that he had admonished against them. So they walked after what was vanity and they became vain, and after the nations that were around them, that Yahweh had commanded them to not act like them.

UST

¹⁵ They rejected Yahweh's laws and the covenant that he had made with their ancestors. They ignored Yahweh's warnings. They worshiped worthless idols and as a result they themselves became worthless. Although Yahweh had commanded them not to imitate the behavior of the peoples that lived near them, they disobeyed that command.

2 Kings 17:16

cast metal figures

Cast metal figures are objects made by pouring melted metal into a form (or mold) to make a shape.

Translation Words - ULT

- the commandments of
- Yahweh
- their God
- and they bowed down
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- of Yahweh's
- commands
- and they worshiped
- god
- and the sun, the moon, and the stars

ULT

16 Then they abandoned all the commandments of Yahweh their God, and they made molten metal for themselves, two calves. Also they made an Asherah pole, and they bowed down to all the host of the heavens and they served the Baal.

UST

16 The Israelite people disobeyed all of Yahweh's commands. They made two metal calves to worship. They set up two poles to worship the goddess Asherah, and they worshiped the god Baal, and the sun, the moon, and the stars.

2 Kings 17:17

used ... enchantments

used magic to say what would happen in the future

sold themselves to do that which was evil in the sight of Yahweh

To “sell themselves” is a metaphor for committing completely to do that which was evil. Alternate translation: “committed themselves to do things that Yahweh said were evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- They even made...pass through
- their sons
- in the fire
- what was evil
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- They also burned
- their own sons
- They went to
- all kinds of evil things that caused
- Yahweh to become angry

ULT

¹⁷ They even made their sons and their daughters pass through in the fire. Also they divined information by sorceries and hissing magic spells. Thus they sold themselves over by doing what was evil in the eyes of Yahweh, as a result provoking him to anger.

UST

¹⁷ They also burned their own sons and daughters to be sacrifices to those gods. They went to fortune tellers and they practiced sorcery. They continually chose to do all kinds of evil things that caused Yahweh to become angry.

2 Kings 17:18

removed them out of his sight

“Sight” is metonymy for being within the attention of Yahweh so he no longer cared for them. Alternate translation: “removed them from his attention” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- at Israel
- his faces
- the tribe of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- So because Yahweh was very angry
- with the Israelite people...from their country
- he allowed their enemies
- the tribe
- of Judah

ULT

18 Therefore [Yahweh](#) became exceedingly enraged [at Israel](#) so he removed them away from [his faces](#). None was left except for [the tribe of Judah](#) by itself.

UST

18 So because Yahweh was very angry with the Israelite people, he allowed [their enemies](#) to take them away [from their country](#). Only the people of [the tribe of Judah](#) were left in the land.

2 Kings 17:19

General Information:

The summary of Yahweh's judgment on Israel includes how Judah also fell into idolatry.

Judah

The location "Judah" is metonymy for the people that live there.
Alternate translation: "the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- did...keep
- the commandments of
- Yahweh
- their God
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- But even the people of Judah
- obey
- the commands
- of Yahweh
- their God
- the Israelites

ULT

¹⁹ Even Judah did not keep the commandments of Yahweh their God, and they walked in the statutes of Israel that they had made.

UST

¹⁹ But even the people of Judah did not obey the commands of Yahweh their God. They imitated the evil customs that the Israelites had introduced.

2 Kings 17:20

he afflicted them

Alternate translation: "Yahweh punished the Israelites"

gave them into the hand of those who would take the possession as spoil

"Hand" is metonymy for control, power or authority. Alternate translation: "handed them over to those who robbed them of their property" (See: [Metonymy](#))

until he had cast them out of his sight

"his sight" is metaphor for attention and caring. Alternate translation: "until he got rid of them all" or "until they were no longer in his presence" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the seed of
- Israel
- into the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- So Yahweh rejected
- the people...and of Judah
- of Israel
- the armies of other nations

ULT

²⁰ So Yahweh rejected all the seed of Israel, so he afflicted them and he gave them into the hand of plunderers, until that he had cast them away from his faces.

UST

²⁰ So Yahweh rejected all the people of Israel and of Judah. He punished them by allowing the armies of other nations to defeat them and take them away. He got rid of all of them.

2 Kings 17:21

He tore Israel

“He tore” here is a metaphor for violent removal. Alternate translation: “Yahweh removed the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

from the royal line of David

Alternate translation: “from the rule of David’s descendants”

drove Israel away from following Yahweh

Alternate translation: “turned the people of Israel away from following Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [and he made them sin](#)
- [David](#)
- [and they made...king](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Earlier, when Yahweh...the ten tribes of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [to stop worshiping Yahweh and](#)
- [sins](#)
- [away from...of David’s descendants](#)
- [away from...of David’s descendants](#)
- [the rule](#)
- [those tribes had chosen Jeroboam](#)
- [be their king. Then Jeroboam enticed the people](#)
- [son of](#)

ULT

²¹ For he tore [Israel](#) away from [the house of David, and they made Jeroboam, the son of Nebat, king](#). Then [Jeroboam](#) seduced [Israel](#) away from following after [Yahweh and he made them sin](#) a great sin.

UST

²¹ [Earlier, when Yahweh](#) had forced [the ten tribes of Israel away from the rule of David’s descendants](#), those tribes had chosen [Jeroboam son of Nebat](#), to [be their king](#). Then [Jeroboam](#) enticed the people of Israel to stop worshiping [Yahweh and](#) to worship idols instead. He induced them to commit great [sins](#).

2 Kings 17:22

they did not depart from them

Alternate translation: “the Israelites did not stop committing these sins” or “they did not turn away from those sins”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the sins of
- Jeroboam

Translation Words - UST

- And the Israelite
- And the Israelite
- evil things...introduced
- Jeroboam

ULT

²² So the sons of Israel walked in all the sins of Jeroboam, that he did. They did not turn away from it,

UST

²² And the Israelite people continued to do the evil things that Jeroboam introduced. They did not turn away from those sins,

2 Kings 17:23

so Yahweh removed Israel from his sight

“Sight” here is a metaphor for attention and care. Alternate translation: “so Yahweh removed the people of Israel from his attention and care” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- his faces
- by the hand of
- his servants
- the prophets
- to Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- prophets had warned...taken away
- of Assyria
- prophets had warned...taken away
- prophets had warned...taken away
- would happen
- The Israelite
- people

ULT

²³ until that Yahweh removed Israel away from his faces, according to what he had spoken by the hand of all his servants the prophets. Thus Israel went into exile away from its land to Assyria, to this day.

UST

²³ so finally Yahweh got rid of them. That was just what his prophets had warned would happen. The Israelite people were taken away to the land of Assyria, and they are still there.

2 Kings 17:24

Kuthah ... Avva ... Hamath ... Sepharvaim

These are places in the Assyrian empire. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Assyria
- from Babylon
- Samaria
- Samaria
- the sons of
- Israel
- So they took possession of

Translation Words - UST

- The king of
- Assyria
- the cities of Babylon
- to the region of Samaria, and
- Those people took control over Samaria and
- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- who lived there previously

ULT

²⁴ Then the king of Assyria brought in from Babylon and from Kuthah, and from Avva, and from Hamath and Sepharvaim, that he had settle in the cities of Samaria in place of the sons of Israel. So they took possession of Samaria and they lived in its cities.

UST

²⁴ The king of Assyria ordered his soldiers to take groups of people from the cities of Babylon, Kuthah, Avva, Hamath, and Sepharvaim to the region of Samaria, and to resettle them in the cities there, to take the place of the Israelites who lived there previously. Those people took control over Samaria and lived in the cities of Samaria.

2 Kings 17:25

It happened at the beginning of their residence there that

Alternate translation: "When those people first lived there"

Translation Words - ULT

- they did...revere
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- killing

Translation Words - UST

- worship
- Yahweh
- So Yahweh
- kill

ULT

²⁵ Now it happened at the beginning of their living there, **they did** not **revere** **Yahweh**. So **Yahweh** sent the lions among them and they were **killing** among them.

UST

²⁵ But those people who came from other countries did not **worship** **Yahweh** when they first arrived in Samaria. **So** **Yahweh** sent lions to **kill** some of them.

2 Kings 17:26

The nations that you have carried away and placed in the cities of Samaria

Alternate translation: "The people you have moved from other lands and sent to live in the cities of Samaria"

do not know the practices required by the god of the land

Alternate translation: "do not know how to worship the God that the Israelites worshiped in this land"

Translation Words - ULT

- to the king of
- Assyria
- The nations
- you have exiled
- Samaria
- do...know
- know
- the judgments of
- the judgments of (2)
- the gods of
- the gods of
- the land
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- of Assyria
- We people
- resettled...the towns
- in...of Samaria
- know
- because we have not worshiped him correctly
- know
- because we have not worshiped him correctly (2)
- the God
- because we have not worshiped him correctly
- the Israelites worshiped in this land
- because we have not worshiped him correctly

ULT

²⁶ So they said to the king of Assyria, saying, "The nations that you have exiled and you have settled in the cities of Samaria do not know the judgments of the gods of the land. So he has sent the lions against them, and, look, they are killing them just because none of them know the judgments of the gods of the land."

UST

²⁶ Then those people sent a message to the king of Assyria. They wrote, "We people who have resettled in the towns of Samaria do not know how to worship the God that the Israelites worshiped in this land. So he has sent lions among us to kill us, because we have not worshiped him correctly."

2 Kings 17:27

Take one of the priests there whom you brought from there

Alternate translation: "Take a priest who came from Samaria back there"

let him teach them

Alternate translation: "let the Samaritan priest teach the people who are living there now"

Translation Words - ULT

- So...commanded
- the king of
- Assyria
- of the priests
- Have...go
- you have exiled
- the judgments of
- the gods of
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- When the king of
- Assyria read this letter
- he
- commanded
- priests
- who are now living
- how to worship...the God whom the Israelites worshiped
- correctly
- land

ULT

²⁷ So the king of Assyria commanded, by saying, "Have one of the priests go to there whom you have exiled from there, so they will go and they will settle there. Then they will instruct them about the judgments of the gods of the land."

UST

²⁷ When the king of Assyria read this letter, he commanded his officers, "Send one of the priests whom you brought here from Samaria to go back there. Tell him to teach the people who are now living there how to worship correctly the God whom the Israelites worshiped in that land."

2 Kings 17:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the priests
- they had exiled
- in Bethel
- in Bethel
- they should revere
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite priests
- in the city of Bethel
- in the city of Bethel
- the people there
- how to worship
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁸ So one of the priests whom they had exiled from Samaria came and he settled in Bethel. Then he was instructing them how they should revere Yahweh.

UST

²⁸ So the officers did that. They sent one of the Israelite priests back to Samaria. That priest went to live in the city of Bethel, and he taught the people there how to worship Yahweh.

2 Kings 17:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- nation
- by nation
- nation (2)
- by nation
- its gods
- in the house at

Translation Words - UST

- But all those people continued to make their own idols
- But all those people continued to make their own idols
- Each group of people (2)
- Each group of people
- They took their idols
- and...in the houses

ULT

²⁹ However **nation by nation** they were making **its gods**, that they permitted to rest **in the house at** the high places that the Samaritans had made, **nation by nation** in their cities where they were settling there.

UST

²⁹ But all those people continued to make their own idols. They took their idols and placed them in the houses that the Samaritan people had built upon the hills all around. Each group of people made their own gods that they worshiped, and each of the gods had a name.

2 Kings 17:30

Succoth Benoth ... Nergal ... Ashima

These are the names of gods, both male and female. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kuthah ... Hamath

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from Babylon](#)

ULT

³⁰ Thus the men of [Babylon](#) made Succoth Benoth, and the men of Kuthah made Nergal, and the men of Hamath made Ashima,

UST

³⁰ The people [from Babylon](#) made idols to represent their god Succoth Benoth. The people from Kuthah made idols to represent their god Nergal. The people from Hamath made idols to represent their god Ashima.

2 Kings 17:31

Nibhaz ... Tartak

These are the names of gods, both male and female. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Avvites ... Sepharvites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

burned their children in the fire

Alternate translation: "sacrificed their own children" or "burned their children in fire as an offering"

Translation Words - ULT

- [their sons](#)
- [in the fire](#)
- [the gods of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sacrificed their own children. They completely burned them on altars to be offerings](#)
- [sacrificed their own children. They completely burned them on altars to be offerings](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

³¹ and the Avvites made Nibhaz and Tartak. Also the Sepharvites were burning [their sons in the fire](#) to Adrammelek and Anammelek, [the gods of](#) Sepharvim.

UST

³¹ The people from Avva made idols to represent their gods Nibhaz and Tartak. The people from Sepharvaim [sacrificed their own children. They completely burned them on altars to be offerings](#) to their gods Adrammelek and Anammelek.

2 Kings 17:32

They

This refers to the pagan people that the king of Assyria moved into the cities of Samaria.

Translation Words - ULT

- reverencing
- Yahweh
- priests of
- at the house of

Translation Words - UST

- But those people also worshiped
- Yahweh
- priests
- the high places

ULT

³² Although they were reverencing Yahweh, however they made for themselves from their divisions priests of high places, and they were performing on their behalf at the house of the high places.

UST

³² But those people also worshiped Yahweh, but they also appointed from among their own groups many people to be priests at the places where idols were worshiped on the hills, and these priests could would offer sacrifices for them upon the high places.

2 Kings 17:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- reverencing
- Yahweh
- their gods
- serving
- according to the judgments of
- the nations
- they had exiled

Translation Words - UST

- So they revered Yahweh
- but they also worshiped
- gods
- gods
- just as
- their people
- living in

ULT

³³ They were reverencing Yahweh while their gods they were serving, according to the judgments of the nations that they had exiled them from there.

UST

³³ So they revered Yahweh, but they also worshiped their own gods, just as their people living in their home countries did.

2 Kings 17:34

they persist in their old customs

Alternate translation: "they continue in the same habits as before"

They neither honor Yahweh

The people were only interested in appeasing Yahweh. They were either not interested or not aware Yahweh was interested in a relationship with them.

Translation Words - ULT

- according to the...judgments
- as Israel
- reverencing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and according to the instruction
- had commanded
- the sons of
- Jacob
- his name

Translation Words - UST

- keep their old customs
- worship
- Israel
- Yahweh...gave to the
- Yahweh
- all the laws and decrees that
- all the laws and decrees that
- descendants of
- Jacob
- the new name

ULT

³⁴ To this day they are acting according to the earlier judgments. They are not reverencing Yahweh, nor are they acting according to their statutes, and their judgments, and according to the instruction and according to the commandments that Yahweh had commanded the sons of Jacob, whom he set his name as Israel,

UST

³⁴ These people in Samaria still keep their old customs. They really do not worship Yahweh, and they do not obey all the laws and decrees that Yahweh gave to the descendants of Jacob, to whom he gave the new name Israel.

2 Kings 17:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- and...had cut
- you must...sacrifice
- a covenant
- and he had commanded them
- You must...fear
- gods
- you must...bow yourselves down
- you must...serve them

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel
- Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel
- Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel
- Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel
- commanding them not...worship
- other gods
- or bow down to honor
- to please them
- or offer sacrifices

ULT

³⁵ and Yahweh had cut with them a covenant and he had commanded them by saying, "You must not fear other gods, and you must not bow yourselves down to them, and you must not serve them, and you must not sacrifice to them.

UST

³⁵ Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel, commanding them not to worship other gods or bow down to honor them or do other things to please them or offer sacrifices to them.

2 Kings 17:36

General Information:

The summary comes toward the end with an appeal to worship only Yahweh.

with great power and a raised arm

The phrase “raised arm” is metonymy for displaying power and means basically the same thing as “great power.” Alternate translation: “with very great power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Egypt
- with...power
- you must fear
- you must bow yourselves down
- you must sacrifice

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh, the one who
- Egypt
- my very great power
- bow down to honor
- bow down to honor
- bow down to honor

ULT

³⁶ But only [Yahweh](#), who brought you up from the land of [Egypt](#) with great [power](#) and an outstretched arm, him [you must fear](#), and to him [you must bow yourselves down](#), and to him [you must sacrifice](#).

UST

³⁶ He had said to them, “You must have a sincere respect for me, [Yahweh, the one who](#) brought you out of [Egypt](#) with [my very great power](#). I am the one whom you must [bow down to honor](#), and I am the one to whom you must offer sacrifices.

2 Kings 17:37

keep them

Alternate translation: "obey them"

Translation Words - ULT

- the statutes
- the judgments
- you must surely take care
- you must...revere
- gods

Translation Words - UST

- obey
- the laws
- for
- worship
- other gods

ULT

³⁷ Also the statutes and the judgments, and the instruction and the commandment that he wrote for you, you must surely take care to do all the days, so you must not revere other gods.

UST

³⁷ You must always obey the laws and decrees that I told Moses to write for you. You must not worship other gods.

2 Kings 17:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- I have cut
- you must...revere
- gods

Translation Words - UST

- I made
- You must...other gods
- fear or respect

ULT

³⁸ Therefore the covenant that I have cut with you, you must not forget, and you must not revere other gods.

UST

³⁸ And you must not forget the covenant that I made with your ancestors. You must not fear or respect other gods.

2 Kings 17:39

General Information:

The summary now ends with an appeal to worship only Yahweh and a description of the sins of the people.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- your God
- you will revere
- from the hand of
- your enemies

Translation Words - UST

- Instead, you must have a sincere respect for me
- Yahweh
- your God
- rescue you
- your enemies

ULT

³⁹ Surely if **Yahweh your God you will revere**, then he will deliver you **from the hand of all your enemies.**"

UST

³⁹ **Instead, you must have a sincere respect for me, Yahweh, your God.** If you do that, I will **rescue you** from the power of all **your enemies.**"

2 Kings 17:40

They would not listen

“Listen” here is a metaphor for paying attention and acting on the command. Alternate translation: “They did not obey” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [according to their..judgments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [continued to](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ But they not heeded,for instead [according to their](#) earlier [judgments](#) they were behaving.

UST

⁴⁰ But, the Israelites refused to pay attention to what Yahweh said. Instead, they [continued to](#) adhere to their old customs.

2 Kings 17:41

these nations feared Yahweh

These nations feared Yahweh only to the point of appeasing him the same way they treated their own gods.

up to this day

“and have continued ever since.” The phrase “this day” refers to the time period in which the writer lived.

Translation Words - ULT

- nations
- reverencing
- Yahweh
- serving
- their sons
- and the sons of
- their sons
- their fathers

Translation Words - UST

- people
- worshiped
- Yahweh
- worshiped their idols
- descendants
- descendants
- descendants
- descendants

ULT

⁴¹ So these nations were reverencing Yahweh while their idols they were serving. Likewise their sons and the sons of their sons, just as their fathers had done, they were doing to this day.

UST

⁴¹ So, those people worshiped Yahweh, but they also worshiped their idols. And their descendants still do the same thing.

2 Kings 18

2 Kings 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of Hezekiah, one of the great kings of Judah (2 Kings 18 – 20). Because he was so important, there is more space dedicated to the history of his reign.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Hezekiah trusted and obeyed God. He stopped paying tribute to Assyria so the Assyrians invaded Judah. The Assyrian king told the people of Judah that resistance was useless. Despite this, Hezekiah trusted in the power of Yahweh. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Kings 18:1

General Information:

Hezekiah becomes king over Judah in place of his father King Ahaz.

Hoshea ... Elah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of Hoshea
- the son of
- the son of
- the king of
- the king of
- Israel
- Ahaz
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- After King...had been ruling
- of Ahaz
- After King...had been ruling
- son
- Hoshea
- Israel
- of Ahaz
- Judah

ULT

¹ Now it happened in the third year of Hoshea, the son of Elah, the king of Israel, Hezekiah the son of Ahaz, the king of Judah, began to reign.

UST

¹ After King Hoshea had been ruling Israel for almost three years, Hezekiah son of Ahaz, began to rule Judah.

2 Kings 18:2

Zechariah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Abijah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a son of
- in Jerusalem
- Zechariah

Translation Words - UST

- twenty
- from Jerusalem
- Zechariah

ULT

² He was a son of 25 years upon his beginning to reign and he reigned 29 years in Jerusalem. Now the name of his mother was Abi, the daughter of Zechariah.

UST

² He was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah and he ruled from Jerusalem for twenty-nine years. His mother was Abijah, the daughter of a man whose name was Zechariah.

2 Kings 18:3

He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

“In the eyes” here is a metaphor for Yahweh’s attention and care.
Alternate translation: “King Hezekiah did what was right to Yahweh”
or “Hezekiah did things that Yahweh said are right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor](#)
- [King David](#)

ULT

³ Now he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), like all that [David his father](#) had done.

UST

³ Hezekiah did things [that Yahweh](#) said are right, like his [ancestor King David](#) had done.

2 Kings 18:4

He removed the high places, destroyed the stone pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles

Alternate translation: "Hezekiah removed the high places of worship, smashed into pieces the memorial stones, and cut down the wooden poles of Asherah"

Nehushtan

This name could be translated "Bronze Serpent Idol." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he cut down](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [However he called](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and he broke into pieces the poles for worshiping](#)
- [the bronze](#)
- [Moses had made](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the people](#)
- [had named](#)

ULT

⁴ He removed the high places, and he shattered the standing stones, [and he cut down](#) the Asherah and he crushed to pieces the serpent of [bronze](#) that [Moses](#) had made, because up to those days [the sons of Israel](#) were offering incense to it. [However he called](#) it "Nehushtan."

UST

⁴ He destroyed the places where people worshiped Yahweh, [and he broke into pieces the poles for worshiping](#) the goddess Asherah. He also broke into pieces [the bronze](#) replica of a snake that [Moses had made](#). He did that because [the people had named](#) it Nehushtan, and they were burning incense in front of it to honor it.

2 Kings 18:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- the kings of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- Hezekiah trusted in Yahweh, the
- God
- the Israelites
- no king who
- ruled Judah before him

ULT

⁵ He trusted in Yahweh, the God of Israel, and after him there was none like him among all the kings of Judah, or who were before him.

UST

⁵ Hezekiah trusted in Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshiped. There was no king who ruled Judah before him or after him who was as devoted to Yahweh as he was.

2 Kings 18:6

he held on to Yahweh

To “hold on” is metaphor for staying loyal and attached. Alternate translation: “Hezekiah stayed loyal to Yahweh” or “Hezekiah remained faithful to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his commandments
- had commanded
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- He remained loyal to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- had given to
- all the commandments
- Moses

ULT

⁶ For he clung to Yahweh, he did not turn away from following him but he kept his commandments, which Yahweh had commanded Moses.

UST

⁶ He remained loyal to Yahweh and never disobeyed him. He carefully obeyed all the commandments that Yahweh had given to Moses.

2 Kings 18:7

wherever he went he prospered

Alternate translation: "wherever Hezekiah went he was successful"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- he went out
- he prospered
- Also he rebelled
- against the king of
- Assyria
- he did...serve him

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh always helped Hezekiah
- He rebelled against
- He rebelled against
- He rebelled against
- to do
- the king
- of Assyria

ULT

⁷ So Yahweh was with him. In every way when he went out, he prospered. Also he rebelled against the king of Assyria and he did not serve him.

UST

⁷ Yahweh always helped Hezekiah. He was successful in everything he did. He rebelled against the king of Assyria and refused to do what the king of Assyria wanted him to do

2 Kings 18:8

fortified city

city with a wall all around it

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [soldiers of Philistia](#)

ULT

⁸ He struck [Philistines](#) as far as Gaza and its borders, from a tower of watchmen as well as a fortified city.

UST

⁸ His army defeated the [soldiers of Philistia](#) as far south as the city of Gaza and the nearby villages. They conquered the entire area, from the smallest village with only a watchtower to the largest cities surrounded by walls.

2 Kings 18:9

Hoshea ... Elah ... Shalmaneser

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the King
- the king of
- the king of
- of Hoshea
- the son of
- Israel
- Assyria
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- After King
- the army of
- King
- and when King Hoshea
- had been ruling
- Israel
- of Assyria
- and surrounded...city of Samaria

ULT

⁹ Now it happened in the fourth year of the King Hezekiah, it was the seventh year of Hoshea, the son of Elah, the king of Israel, Shalmaneser, the king of Assyria, came up against Samaria and he encircled around it.

UST

⁹ After King Hezekiah had been ruling Judah for almost four years, and when King Hoshea had been ruling Israel for almost seven years, the army of King Shalmaneser of Assyria invaded Israel and surrounded the city of Samaria.

2 Kings 18:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Hoshea
- the king of
- Israel
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- the city
- and when Hoshea
- had been ruling
- Israel

ULT

¹⁰ Then they captured it, at the end of three years. In the sixth year of Hezekiah, which was the ninth year of Hoshea, the king of Israel, Samaria was captured.

UST

¹⁰ In the third year they captured the city. That was when Hezekiah had been ruling Judah for almost six years, and when Hoshea had been ruling Israel for almost nine years.

2 Kings 18:11

Halah ... Habor River ... Gozan

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Medes

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

So the king of Assyria carried Israel away to Assyria

Alternate translation: "So the king of Assyria commanded his army to take the Israelites away from their homes, and he made them live in Assyria"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [to Assyria](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The king](#)
- [of Assyria commanded that](#)
- [to Assyria](#)
- [the people of Israel](#)

ULT

¹¹ Next [the king of Assyria](#) exiled [Israel to Assyria](#) and he led them to Halah, and to Habor, the river of Gozan, and Median cities,

UST

¹¹ [The king of Assyria commanded that the people of Israel](#) be taken [to Assyria](#). Some of them were taken to the city of Halah, some were taken to a place near the Habor River in the region of Gozan, and some were taken to cities where the Mede people group live.

2 Kings 18:12

the voice of Yahweh

“Voice” is metonymy for the message about the command of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the command of Yahweh” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the voice of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- their God
- but they passed aside
- his covenant
- Moses
- the servant of
- had commanded

Translation Words - UST

- did not obey
- Yahweh
- that Yahweh
- their God
- They had disobeyed the covenant
- the laws
- Moses
- the man who served Yahweh very well
- told them

ULT

¹² because that they did not heed the voice of Yahweh their God, but they passed aside his covenant, all that Moses, the servant of Yahweh, had commanded, thus they did not heed and they did not do.

UST

¹² That happened because the Israelites did not obey Yahweh their God. They had disobeyed the covenant that Yahweh had made with their ancestors, and all the laws that Moses, the man who served Yahweh very well, had told them to obey. They would not obey those laws. They would not even listen to them.

2 Kings 18:13

Sennacherib

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fortified cities

Cities with walls around them for protection. See how you translated “fortified city” in [2 Kings 18:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of King](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After King](#)
- [King](#)
- [had been ruling Judah for almost](#)
- [of Assyria](#)

ULT

¹³ Then in the 14th year [of King](#) Hezekiah, Sennacherib, [the king of Assyria](#), came up against all the fortified cities of [Judah](#) and he conquered them.

UST

¹³ [After King](#) Hezekiah [had been ruling Judah for almost](#) fourteen years, the army of [King](#) Sennacherib [of Assyria](#) attacked all the cities in Judah that had walls around them. They did not capture Jerusalem, but they captured all the other cities.

2 Kings 18:14

Lachish

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Withdraw from me

This expression assumes that “me” represents the kingdom of Hezekiah. Alternate translation: “Take your army out of my territory” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Whatever you put on me I will bear

Alternate translation: “I will pay you whatever you demand of me”

talents

This is the name of type of weight that was used for money. One talent weighted about 33 kilograms. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of (2)
- the...of...king (3)
- king...the...of (4)
- Judah
- Judah
- silver
- gold
- Assyria
- Assyria
- I am at fault
- Withdraw
- As a result...imposed

Translation Words - UST

- King
- must pay to
- King
- the (2)
- king of (3)
- So the (4)
- of silver
- of gold
- city of Lachish
- Assyria
- saying, “What I have done was wrong
- Please tell your soldiers...stop attacking us
- I will pay you whatever you tell me

ULT

¹⁴ So Hezekiah, the king of Judah sent to the king of Assyria, to Lachish, saying, “I am at fault. Withdraw from against me. Whatever you place upon me, I will bear.” As a result the king of Assyria imposed upon Hezekiah, the king of Judah 300 rounds of silver and 30 rounds of gold.

UST

¹⁴ King Hezekiah sent a message to Sennacherib, while Sennacherib was in the city of Lachish, saying, “What I have done was wrong. Please tell your soldiers to stop attacking us. If you do that, I will pay you whatever you tell me to.” So the king of Assyria said that Hezekiah must pay to him 10,000 kilograms (or about ten metric tons) of silver and 1,000 kilograms (about one metric ton) of gold.

2 Kings 18:15

treasuries

This was the place in the palace where money and valuable things were stored.

Translation Words - ULT

- the silver
- in the house of
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- the
- temple and
- palace
- temple and

ULT

¹⁵ So Hezekiah gave all the silver that was found in the house of Yahweh and in the treasuries of the house of the king.

UST

¹⁵ So Hezekiah gave to him all the silver that was in the temple and that was stored in his palace.

2 Kings 18:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the doors of
- the temple of
- Yahweh
- the king of
- to the king of
- Judah
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- from the doors
- of the temple
- of the temple
- and the gold...he himself had put on
- and the gold...he himself had put on
- the
- the king of Assyria

ULT

¹⁶ At that time Hezekiah chopped off the doors of the temple of Yahweh and the columns that Hezekiah, the king of Judah, had overlaid, and he gave them to the king of Assyria.

UST

¹⁶ Hezekiah's men also stripped the gold from the doors of the temple and the gold that he himself had put on the doorposts, and he sent all that gold to the king of Assyria.

2 Kings 18:17

the king of Assyria mobilized his great army, sending Tartan and Rabsaris and the chief commander

Sennacherib sent a group of men from his army to Jerusalem to meet with King Hezekiah, including officials named Tartan and Rabsaris.

Tartan ... Rabsaris

Some Bibles translate these as proper names. Other versions of the Bible translate them as titles. Alternate translation: “the Tartan ... the Rabsaris” or “the leader of the soldier ... a court official” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Lachish

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the conduit of the upper pool

the channel where the water stored in the “upper pool” flows into the city of Jerusalem

stood by it

Alternate translation: “and waited there for King Hezekiah to meet with them”

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the King
- Assyria
- to Jerusalem
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- But the king of
- King
- Assyria
- at Jerusalem
- into Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁷ Nevertheless [the king of Assyria](#) sent Tartan and Rabsaris and Rabshaken from Lachish to [the King](#) Hezekiah with a heavily armed army [to Jerusalem](#). So they went up and they came [to Jerusalem](#). Then they went up and they came in and they stood at the channel of the upper reservoir, that was along a raised path in a field of a launderer.

UST

¹⁷ [But the king of Assyria](#) sent a large army with some of his important officials from the city of Lachish to persuade [King](#) Hezekiah to surrender. When they arrived [at Jerusalem](#), they stood alongside the aqueduct in which water flows from the upper pool [into Jerusalem](#), near the road to the field where the women wash clothes.

2 Kings 18:18

Eliakim ... Hilkiyah ... Shebna ... Joah ... Asaph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then they called out
- the King
- Eliakim
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Hilkiyah
- the house
- the scribe
- Asaph
- and...came out

Translation Words - UST

- requesting King Hezekiah
- to come
- but the king
- He sent Hilkiyah's
- son Eliakim
- and...son (2)
- palace
- Asaph's
- communicated the king's messages
- to the people

ULT

18 Then they called out to the King, and Eliakim, the son of Hilkiyah, who was over the house, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah, the son of Asaph, the recorder, came out to them.

UST

18 They sent a message requesting King Hezekiah to come to them, but the king sent three of his officials to talk to them. He sent Hilkiyah's son Eliakim, who supervised the palace, Shebna, the official secretary, and Asaph's son Joah, who communicated the king's messages to the people.

2 Kings 18:19

What is the source of your confidence?

The King of Assyria (through his messenger Rabshakeh) wants to make King Hezekiah doubt himself and Egypt's support. He does not ask this question looking for an answer. Alternate translation: "You have no reason to think that you can defeat me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...king](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the...king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Assyria](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Then Rabsakeh said to them, "Say now to Hezekiah 'Thus says the great [king, the king of Assyria](#), "What is this confidence in which you have trusted?"

UST

¹⁹ One of Sennacherib's important officials told them to take this message to Hezekiah: "This is what [the king of Assyria](#), the great [king](#), says: 'What are you trusting in to rescue you?"

2 Kings 18:20

In whom are you trusting, that you should rebel against me?

The King of Assyria (through his messenger Rabshakeh) wants to make King Hezekiah doubt himself and Egypt's support. He does not ask this question looking for an answer. Alternate translation: "You cannot trust anyone to help you rebel against me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you would rebel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rebel against](#)

ULT

²⁰ You have said only a word from lips, a plan and might for battle. Now in whom have you trusted, that [you would rebel](#) against me?

UST

²⁰ You say that you have weapons to fight us and that some country has promised to help you, but that is only talk. Who do you think will help you to [rebel against](#) my soldiers from Assyria?

2 Kings 18:21

walking stick of this bruised reed of Egypt

The King of Assyria compares Egypt to a weak walking stick; you expect that it will support you when you lean on it, but instead it breaks and cuts you. Alternate translation: “the weak support from Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

but if a man leans ... and pierce it

The speaker is extending the metaphor by describing what happens when a reed is used as a support. Alternate translation: “but if someone uses this for support, he will be injured” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#)
- [Egypt](#) (2)
- [the king of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of Egypt](#)
- [what the king of Egypt would be like](#) (2)
- [what the king of Egypt would be like](#)

ULT

21 Now, look, you have trusted for yourself in the staff of this bruised reed in [Egypt](#), which should a man lean on it, it would go into his hand and it would puncture it. Thus is Pharaoh, [the king of Egypt](#), to anyone who is trusting in him.

UST

21 Listen to me! You are relying on [the army of Egypt](#). But that is like using a broken reed for a walking stick on which you could lean. It would pierce the hand of anyone who would lean on it! That is [what the king of Egypt would be like](#) for anyone who relied on him for help.

2 Kings 18:22

is not he the one whose high places ... Jerusalem'?

This question assumes the listeners know the answer and is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You need to remember that he is the one whose high places ... Jerusalem!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- our God
- his altars
- altar
- to Judah
- you must bow down
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- we...relying on Yahweh
- our God
- and the altars on which you offered sacrifices
- the altar
- in Judah
- worship
- in Jerusalem

ULT

²² But although you say to me, 'We trust in [Yahweh our God](#),' is it not he whom Hezekiah has removed his high places and [his altars](#), and he has said [to Judah](#) and to Jerusalem, 'Before this [altar you must bow down in Jerusalem?](#)'"

UST

²² But perhaps you will say to me, "No, we are [relying on Yahweh our God](#) to help us." I would reply, "Is he not the one whom you insulted by tearing down his houses on the hills where the idols were worshiped [and the altars on which you offered sacrifices](#), forcing everyone in Jerusalem and other places [in Judah](#) to [worship](#) only in front of [the altar in Jerusalem?](#)"

2 Kings 18:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- my master
- the king of
- Assyria
- horses

Translation Words - UST

- my master
- the king of Assyria
- the king of Assyria
- horses

ULT

²³ So now, I insist, make a pledge with my master, with the king of Assyria, and I will give to you 2000 horses, if you are able to provide for yourself riders for them.

UST

²³ So I suggest that you make a deal between you and my master, the king of Assyria. I will give you two thousand horses, but I do not think that you are able to find two thousand of your men who can ride on them!

2 Kings 18:24

How could you resist even one captain of the least of my master's servants?

He asks this question to emphasize that the army of Hezekiah does not have the resources to fight. He also uses exaggeration to mock Hezekiah's army. Alternate translation: This could mean: (1) "You could not defeat even one of the least of the king's soldiers." or (2) "You could not defeat a group of the king's soldiers commanded by his least important officer." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- would you repel
- the faces of
- the captain of
- servants of
- my master
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- You are hoping that
- You are hoping that
- the king of Egypt
- But they certainly would not be able to defeat
- even the most
- official

ULT

²⁴ So how would you repel the faces of the captain of one of the least servants of my master? Yet you trust for yourself in Egypt for chariotry and horsemen!

UST

²⁴ You are hoping that the king of Egypt will send chariots and men riding horses to assist you. But they certainly would not be able to defeat even the most unimportant official in my army!

2 Kings 18:25

Have I traveled up here without Yahweh to fight against this place and destroy it?

He asks this question to emphasize that Yahweh is behind his success to obey the command to destroy Israel. Alternate translation: "Yahweh himself told us to come here and destroy this land!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh's help](#)
- [It is Yahweh himself who](#)
- [land](#)

ULT

²⁵ Now even without [Yahweh](#) have I come up against this place in order to destroy it? [Yahweh](#) said to me, 'Go up against this [land](#) and destroy it.'

UST

²⁵ Furthermore, do you think that we have come to destroy Jerusalem without [Yahweh's help](#)? [It is Yahweh himself who](#) told us to come here and destroy this [land](#)!"

2 Kings 18:26

Eliakim ... Hilkiah ... Shebna ... Joah

Translate the names of these men as in [2 Kings 18:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the ears of the people who are on the wall

“In the ears” is metonymy for being able to listen. Alternate translation: “because the people standing on the city wall will hear it and be afraid” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Eliakim](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [your servants](#)
- [Judean](#)
- [of the people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Eliakim](#)
- [Then Eliakim](#)
- [Then Eliakim](#)
- [the official](#)
- [our Hebrew language](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then [Eliakim, the son of Hilkiah](#), and Shebna, and Joah said to Rabshekah, “Please speak to [your servants](#) in Aramaic, for we are listening. So do not speak [Judean](#) with us in the ears [of the people](#) who are on the wall.”

UST

²⁶ Then [Eliakim](#), Shebna and Joah said to [the official](#) from Assyria, “Sir, please speak to us in your Aramaic language, because we understand it. Do not speak to us in [our Hebrew language](#), because [the people](#) who are standing on the wall will understand it and be frightened.”

2 Kings 18:27

Has my master sent me to your master and to you to speak these words? Has he not sent me to the men who sit on the wall, who will have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine with you?

He asks these questions assuming the listeners know the answers to emphasize their intention to destroy and humiliate the leaders and people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "My master sent me not only to you and your master, but also to speak to the people in this city, who will suffer with you when they have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine to survive." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your master](#)
- [my master](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Do you think that my master...If you reject this](#)
- [Do you think that my master...If you reject this](#)

ULT

²⁷ But Rabshekah said to them, "Has [my master](#) sent me to [your master](#) and to you to speak these words? Is it not for the men who are sitting on the wall, about to eat their excrement and to drink their urine with you?"

UST

²⁷ But the official replied, "[Do you think that my master](#) sent me to say these things only to you and not to the people who are standing on the wall? [If you reject this](#) message, the people in this city will soon need to eat their own dung and drink their own urine, just like you will, because there will be nothing more for you to eat or drink."

2 Kings 18:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and he cried out
- in a...voice
- in Judean
- the...king
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- and shouted
- and shouted
- in the Hebrew language to the people sitting on the wall
- the
- the king
- of Assyria. He says this

ULT

²⁸ Then Rabshekah stood up and he cried out in a loud voice in Judean, and he spoke and he said, "Listen to the word of the great king, the king of Assyria.

UST

²⁸ Then the official stood up and shouted in the Hebrew language to the people sitting on the wall. He said, "Listen this message from the great king, the king of Assyria. He says this:

2 Kings 18:29

from my power

"my power" is metonymy for the ability of the king himself. Alternate translation: "from me" or "from the power of my army" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [Do...let...cause deception](#)
- [out of his hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to deceive](#)
- [from](#)
- [my power](#)

ULT

²⁹ Thus says [the king](#), 'Do not let Hezekiah [cause deception](#) for yourselves, for he is not be able to pull you [out of his hand](#).

UST

²⁹ 'Do not allow Hezekiah [to deceive](#) you. He will not be able to rescue you [from my power](#).

2 Kings 18:30

this city will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria

This can be expressed in an active form. Alternate translation:
"Yahweh will never allow the king of Assyria's army to take this city"
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

the hand

"Hand" is metonymy for control, authority and power. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- into the hand of
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- of Assyria will
- of Assyria will
- of Assyria will

ULT

³⁰ Also do not let Hezekiah make you trust in [Yahweh](#), by saying, '[Yahweh](#) will surely deliver us, and this city will not be given [into the hand of the king of Assyria](#).'

UST

³⁰ Do not allow him to persuade you to rely on [Yahweh](#), saying that [Yahweh](#) will rescue you, and that the army [of Assyria will](#) never capture this city!

2 Kings 18:31

Make peace with me and come out to me

Alternate translation: "Come out of the city and surrender to me" or "Make an agreement with me to surrender, and come out of the city to me"

his own vine ... his own fig tree ... his own cistern

These sources of food and water are metaphors for security and plenty. This also was a common way of expressing this idea. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Assyria
- a blessing
- and come out
- Then eat
- his vine
- his fig tree

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- of Assyria
- Come out of the city and surrender to me
- I will arrange for
- to drink the juice from you own grapevines
- and to...figs from your own trees
- eat

ULT

³¹ Do not listen to Hezekiah, for thus says [the king of Assyria](#): 'Make [a blessing](#) with me [and come out](#) to me. [Then eat](#), each man from [his vine](#), and each man from [his fig tree](#), and drink, each man from the waters of his well,

UST

³¹ Do not pay attention to what Hezekiah says! This is what [the king of Assyria](#) says: 'Come out of the city and surrender to me. If you do that, I will arrange for each of you to drink the juice from you own grapevines, and to eat figs from your own trees, and to drink water from your own wells.

2 Kings 18:32

a land of grain and new wine ... bread and vineyards ... olive trees and honey

These are metaphors for having good things and plenty in daily life.
(See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a land
- land, a...of
- a land of
- land...a...of (2)
- fresh oil
- and honey
- Therefore live
- Yahweh
- grain
- bread
- and vineyards
- olive tree for

Translation Words - UST

- a land that is like
- a land
- to produce grapes for making wine
- It will be a land that has (2)
- to live
- Yahweh
- there is grain
- to make bread
- and vineyards
- plenty of olive trees
- plenty of olive trees
- and honey

ULT

³² until my coming. Then I will take you to a [land](#) like your [land](#), a [land of grain](#) and new wine, a [land of bread and vineyards](#), a [land of olive tree for fresh oil](#), and [honey](#). [Therefore live](#), and do not die.' So do not listen to Hezekiah when he makes you persuaded by saying, '[Yahweh](#) will deliver us.'

UST

³² You will be able to do that until we come and take you to a [land that is like](#) your land—a [land](#) where [there is grain to make bread and vineyards to produce grapes for making wine](#). It will be a land that has plenty of olive trees and [honey](#).' If you do what the king of Assyria commands, you will not die. You will continue [to live](#). Do not allow Hezekiah to persuade you to trust in [Yahweh](#), saying that he will rescue you!

2 Kings 18:33

Has any of the gods ... Assyria?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "None the gods of the peoples have rescued them ... Assyria." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gods of
- the nations
- his land
- out of the hand of
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- The gods
- people
- that...of other nations worship
- from
- the power of the king
- of Assyria

ULT

³³ Indeed, has any [gods of the nations](#) delivered [his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria](#)?

UST

³³ The [gods](#) that [people of other nations worship](#) have never rescued them [from the power of the king of Assyria](#)!

2 Kings 18:34

Where are the gods of ... Arpad?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "I have destroyed the gods of ... Arpad!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Hamath ... Arpad ... Sepharvaim ... Hena ... Ivvah ... Samaria

These are the names of places that represent the people living there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

out of my hand

"Hand" is metonymy for control, power, or authority. Alternate translation: "out from my control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are the gods of
- are the gods of
- Samaria
- out of my hand

Translation Words - UST

- are the gods
- the gods
- Samaria
- out of my hand

ULT

³⁴ Where [are the gods of](#) Hamath and Arpad? Where [are the gods of](#) Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah? Indeed, have they rescued [Samaria out of my hand](#)?

UST

³⁴ Where [are the gods](#) of Hamath and Arpad? Where are [the gods](#) of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah? Did any of their gods delivered [Samaria out of my hand](#)?

2 Kings 18:35

is there any god who has rescued his land from my power?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer.
Alternate translation: "No god has rescued his land from my power."
(See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

from my power

"My power" is metonymy for the person whose has the power.
Alternate translation: "from me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

How could Yahweh save Jerusalem from my might?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "There is no way Yahweh can save Jerusalem from my might!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the gods of
- the lands
- their land
- from my hand
- from my hand
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- None
- from being destroyed
- None
- from being destroyed
- Do you think your God Yahweh, can do any better
- Do you think your God Yahweh, can do any better
- Do you think your God Yahweh, can do any better

ULT

³⁵ Who is among all the gods of the lands that has delivered their land from my hand? Indeed, will Yahweh deliver Jerusalem from my hand?"

UST

³⁵ None of these gods kept their people from being destroyed by the king of Assyria. Do you think your God Yahweh, can do any better?

2 Kings 18:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- they did...answer
- You must...answer him
- a commandment of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- But the people who
- were listening
- said anything
- because...had told them
- When the official from Assyria talks

ULT

³⁶ But the people remained silent and they did not answer him a word, for it was a commandment of the king by saying, "You must not answer him".

UST

³⁶ But the people who were listening were silent. No one said anything, because King Hezekiah had told them, "When the official from Assyria talks to you, do not answer him."

2 Kings 18:37

Eliakim ... Shebna ... Joah ... Asaph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who was over the household

Alternate translation: "who managed the king's palace"

the recorder

Alternate translation: "the history keeper"

chief commander

and is the translation of the Hebrew; some see this as a personal name, "Rabshakeh"

Translation Words - ULT

- Eliakim
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Hilkiah
- the house
- the scribe
- Asaph

Translation Words - UST

- Then Eliakim
- Then Eliakim
- Then Eliakim
- Then Eliakim
- and Joah (2)
- and Joah
- and they told

ULT

³⁷ Then Eliakim, the son of Hilkiah, who was over the house, and Shebna, the scribe, and Joah, the son of Asaph, the recorder, came to Hezekiah being torn of garments, and they reported to him the words of Rabshekah.

UST

³⁷ Then Eliakim and Shebna and Joah went back to Hezekiah with their clothes torn because they were extremely distressed, and they told him what the official from Assyria had said.

2 Kings 19

2 Kings 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Hezekiah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

God is in control of everything. God caused the Assyrian king to fail in conquering Jerusalem because he mocked God.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

"The virgin daughter of Zion" here is an idiom meaning the people of Jerusalem. "The virgin daughter of Zion despises you and laughs you to scorn" means that "the people of Jerusalem know that Assyria will fail because they have mocked God." (See: [Idiom](#))

2 Kings 19:1

house of Yahweh

This is another way of saying “temple of Yahweh.”

Translation Words - ULT

- the King
- with sackcloth
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- When King
- made of rough cloth
- to the
- temple to ask God what to do

ULT

¹ Now it happened upon the King Hezekiah hearing, that he tore his garments, and he covered himself with sackcloth, and he went into the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹ When King Hezekiah heard what they reported, he tore his clothes and put on clothes made of rough cloth because he was very distressed. Then he went to the temple to ask God what to do.

2 Kings 19:2

Eliakim ... Shebna ... Isaiah ... Amoz

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He sent Eliakim

Alternate translation: "Hezekiah sent Eliakim"

all covered with sackcloth

Alternate translation: "all wearing sackcloth"

Translation Words - ULT

- Eliakim
- the house
- the scribe
- the elders of
- the priests
- with sackcloth
- Isaiah
- the prophet
- the son of
- Amoz

Translation Words - UST

- Eliakim
- and Shebna
- and Shebna
- and the older priests
- and the older priests
- made of rough sackcloth
- Isaiah
- the prophet
- son of
- Amoz

ULT

² Then he sent [Eliakim](#), who was over [the house](#), and Shebna, [the scribe](#), and [the elders of the priests](#), covering themselves [with sackcloth](#), to [Isaiah](#), [the prophet](#), [the son of Amoz](#).

UST

² Then he summoned [Eliakim and Shebna and the older priests](#), who were also wearing clothes [made of rough sackcloth](#), and told them to talk to [Isaiah the prophet](#), [son of Amoz](#).

2 Kings 19:3

This day is a day of distress

Alternate translation: "This is a time of distress"

**the children have come to the time of birth,
but there is no strength for them to be born**

This is a metaphor to describe how the people and their leaders have become so weak and unable to fight the enemy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [distress](#)
- [sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [we have great distress](#)
- [Other nations are causing us to be](#)

ULT

³ Then they said to him, "Thus says Hezekiah, 'This day is a day of [distress](#), and rebuke, and humiliation, for [sons](#) have come to the birth canal, but there is no strength for childbirth.'

UST

³ He said to them to say these things to Isaiah: "King Hezekiah says that this is a day when [we have great distress](#). [Other nations are causing us to be](#) insulted and disgraced like a woman who is about to give birth to a child, but she is not strong enough to do it.

2 Kings 19:4

all the words of the chief commander

Alternate translation: "everything that the chief commander has said"

lift up your prayer

This a common way (an idiom) to use the action of lifting to metaphorically represent praying earnestly to Yahweh who is above us. Alternate translation: "pray earnestly" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- your God
- the...God
- your God
- the king of
- Assyria
- his master
- living
- prayer

Translation Words - UST

- Perhaps Yahweh...has heard everything
- and that Yahweh will
- our God
- God...punish him
- and that Yahweh will
- that you pray
- the king
- of Assyria
- him
- God...punish him

ULT

⁴ Perhaps [Yahweh your God](#) will hear all the words of Rabshekah, because [the king of Assyria his master](#), sent him to defy the [living God](#), and he will decide about the words that [Yahweh your God](#) has heard. Now you should lift up a [prayer](#) on behalf of the remnant that is found."

UST

⁴ Perhaps Yahweh our God has heard [everything](#) that the official from Assyria said. Perhaps he knows that his master, [the king of Assyria](#), sent [him](#) to insult the all-powerful [God and that Yahweh will punish him](#) for what he said. And Hezekiah requests [that you pray](#) for the few of us who are still alive here in Jerusalem."

2 Kings 19:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the servants of
- the King
- Isaiah

Translation Words - UST

- When the
- messengers
- Isaiah, and

ULT

⁵ So the servants of the King Hezekiah came to Isaiah,

UST

⁵ When the messengers from Hezekiah came to Isaiah, and

2 Kings 19:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaiah
- your master
- Yahweh
- Do...be afraid
- the young men of
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Isaiah instructed them
- him what
- Yahweh
- messengers
- Those...from the king
- of Assyria
- things about me...be disturbed

ULT

⁶ and **Isaiah** said to them, "Thus you will surely say to **your master**: 'Thus says **Yahweh**, "Do not **be afraid** in the face of the words that you have heard, because **the young men of the king of Assyria** have reviled me.

UST

⁶ **Isaiah instructed them** to go back to their master and tell **him what Yahweh** says: "Those **messengers from the king of Assyria** have said evil **things about me**. But you should not **be disturbed** because of what they said.

2 Kings 19:7

I will put a spirit in him, and he will hear a certain report and go back to his own land

Alternate translation: "I will control the attitude of the king of Assyria, so when he hears a report, he will want to return to his own country"

I will put a spirit in him

"I will influence his thinking" or "I will cause him to think differently."
Here "spirit" probably refers to his attitude and thoughts, rather than to a spirit being.

I will cause him to fall by the sword

"Fall by the sword" is metonymy for being killed. Alternate translation: "I will cause him to die by the sword" or "I will cause some men to kill him with a sword" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a spirit](#)
- [Then he will return](#)
- [and I will make him fall](#)
- [by the sword](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I will cause Sennacherib](#)
- [So he will return](#)
- [and there I will cause him to be assassinated by some men](#)
- [and there I will cause him to be assassinated by some men](#)

ULT

⁷ Look, I am dispensing [a spirit](#) upon him, so he will hear a report. [Then he will return](#) to his land [and I will make him fall by the sword](#) in his land."

UST

⁷ Listen to this: [I will cause Sennacherib](#) to hear a rumor that will worry him, that other armies are about to attack his country. [So he will return](#) to his own country, [and there I will cause him to be assassinated by some men.](#)"

2 Kings 19:8

the chief commander

Alternate translation: "the official from Assyria in charge under the king"

found the king of Assyria fighting

Alternate translation: "discovered that the Assyrian army was fighting"

Libnah ... Lachish

The names of cities in the kingdom of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...returned
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- The official from Assyria
- the King
- of Assyria

ULT

⁸ Then Rabshekah **returned** and he found **the king of Assyria** was fighting against Libnah, for he had heard that he had journeyed away from Lachish.

UST

⁸ **The official from Assyria** found out that **the King of Assyria** and his army had left the city of Lachish, and that they were attacking Libnah, which was a nearby city. So the official went there to report to him what had happened in Jerusalem.

2 Kings 19:9

Sennacherib ... Tirhakah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

had mobilized to fight against him

Alternate translation: "had prepared his army to fight against Assyria"

so he sent

Alternate translation: "so Sennacherib sent"

a message

This message was written in a letter.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Cush](#)
- [he has gone forth](#)
- [as a result he returned](#)
- [messengers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Tirhakah of Ethiopia](#)
- [King Tirhakah of Ethiopia](#)
- [was leading his army](#)
- [attack them...he sent other messengers](#)
- [attack them...he sent other messengers](#)

ULT

⁹ When he heard concerning Tirhakah, [the king of Cush](#) being said, "look, [he has gone forth](#) to fight with you," [as a result he returned](#) and he sent [messengers](#) to Hezekiah saying:

UST

⁹ Soon after that, King Sennacherib received a report that [King Tirhakah of Ethiopia was leading his army](#) to [attack them](#). But before King Sennacherib left Libnah to fight against the army from Ethiopia, [he sent other messengers](#) to King Hezekiah with a letter.

2 Kings 19:10

General Information:

This is the message that King Sennacharib of Assyria sent to King Hezekiah.

Do not let your God in whom you trust deceive you, saying

Alternate translation: "Do not believe your God in whom you trust. He is lying when he says"

the hand of the king of Assyria

"Hand" is metonymy for control, authority or power. Alternate translation: "the control of the government of Assyria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of
- Judah
- your God
- Do...let...make you deceived
- Jerusalem
- into the hand of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- In the letter
- In the letter
- that my army will never capture Jerusalem
- Do not allow
- your god on
- that my army will never capture Jerusalem
- that my army will never capture Jerusalem
- that my army will never capture Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁰ "Thus you will surely say to Hezekiah, [the king of Judah](#), saying 'Do not let [your God](#) whom you are trusting in him [make you deceived](#), by saying, "Jerusalem will not be given over [into the hand of the king of Assyria](#)."

UST

¹⁰ [In the letter](#) he wrote this to Hezekiah: "[Do not allow your god on](#) whom you are relying to deceive you by promising [that my army will never capture Jerusalem](#)."

2 Kings 19:11

See, you have heard

“Notice, you have heard” or “You have certainly heard.” Here “see” was used to draw attention to what he was about to say next.

So will you be rescued?

Sennacharib used this question to emphasize that God will not be able to rescue them. Alternate translation: “Your God will not rescue you!” or “You will not be able to escape either!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings of
- Assyria
- the lands

Translation Words - UST

- the armies of the kings
- of Assyria
- countries

ULT

11 Look, you yourself have heard what [the kings of Assyria](#) have done to all [the lands](#) by destroying them. However you yourself will be delivered?

UST

11 You have certainly heard what [the armies of the kings of Assyria](#) have done to all the other [countries](#). Our armies have completely destroyed them. So do you think that you will escape?

2 Kings 19:12

Have the gods of the nations rescued them, the nations ... destroyed: Gozan ... Assar?

This question assumes Hezekiah knows the answer and provides emphasis. Alternate translation: “The gods of the nations, the nations ... destroyed—Gozan ... Assar—certainly did not rescue them!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

my fathers

Alternate translation: “the previous kings of Assyria” or “the armies of the previous kings of Assyria”

Gozan ... Haran ... Rezech ... Eden ... Tel Assar

These are all place names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the gods of
- the nations
- my fathers
- or the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- Did the gods
- by the armies of...and Rezech in northern Aram
- the previous kings of Assyria
- Did those gods rescue the people

ULT

¹² Have [the gods of the nations](#) delivered them, when [my fathers](#) annihilated Gozan, or Haran, or Rezech, [or the sons of](#) Eden who were in Tel Assar?

UST

¹² [Did the gods](#) of the nations that were about to be destroyed [by the armies of the previous kings of Assyria](#) rescue them? [Did those gods rescue the people](#) in the region of Gozan or in the cities of Haran [and Rezech in northern Aram](#)? Did they rescue the people of Eden who had been deported to the city of Tel Assar? None of the gods of those cities was able to rescue them.

2 Kings 19:13

Hamath ... Arpad ... Sepharvaim ... Hena ... Ivvah

These are all place names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is the king of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [What happened to the](#)

ULT

¹³ Where [is the king of](#) Hamath, and the king of Arpad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah?"

UST

¹³ [What happened to the](#) kings of the cities of Hamath, Arpad, Sepharvaim, and Ivvah? They are all dead."

2 Kings 19:14

this letter

This refers to the letter that King Sennacherib of Assyria sent to Hezekiah (2 Kings 19:8).

Translation Words - ULT

- from the hand of
- and he read them
- to the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- received
- Then he went up to
- the temple and
- spread out the letter
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁴ Then Hezekiah took the letters from the hand of the messengers and he read them. Afterwards he went up to the house of Yahweh and Hezekiah spread it out before the faces of Yahweh.

UST

¹⁴ Hezekiah received the letter that the messengers gave him, and he read it. Then he went up to the temple and spread out the letter in front of Yahweh.

2 Kings 19:15

you who sit above the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "you who sit on your throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...prayed
- Yahweh
- O Yahweh
- the God of
- the true God
- Israel
- amid the cherubim
- the kingdoms of
- the earth
- the earth
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- prayed this
- Yahweh
- the God
- and in the sky
- the God
- God
- the God
- above the statues of creatures
- rule
- the kingdoms on this earth
- on the earth

ULT

¹⁵ Then Hezekiah [prayed](#) before the faces of [Yahweh](#) and he said, "[O Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), dwelling [amid the cherubim](#), you are he, [the true God](#), you alone are over all [the kingdoms of the earth](#). You yourself made [the heavens](#) and [the earth](#)."

UST

¹⁵ Then Hezekiah [prayed this](#): "[Yahweh, the God](#) to whom we Israelites belong, you are seated on your throne [above the statues of creatures](#) with wings, above the sacred chest. Only you are truly [God](#). You [rule](#) all [the kingdoms on this earth](#). You are the one who created everything [on the earth and in the sky](#)."

2 Kings 19:16

Turn your ear, Yahweh, and listen. Open your eyes, Yahweh, and see

Both of these sentences urge Yahweh to pay attention to the things that Sennacherib is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Turn your ear, Yahweh, and listen

The words “Turn your ear” and “listen” mean the same thing and add emphasis to the plea. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, please listen to what he is saying” (See: [Doublet](#))

Open your eyes, Yahweh, and see

The words “Open your eyes” and “see” mean the same thing and add emphasis to the plea. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, please pay attention to what is happening” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [O...Yahweh](#)
- [the living](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So, Yahweh, please](#)
- [I am saying](#)
- [the all-powerful God](#)
- [the all-powerful God](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Incline your ear, [O Yahweh](#), and hear. Open your eyes, [Yahweh](#), and see, and hear the words of Sennacherib, which he has sent to taunt [the living God](#).

UST

¹⁶ [So, Yahweh, please](#) listen to what [I am saying](#), and look at what is happening. And listen to what King Sennacherib has said to insult you, [the all-powerful God](#).

2 Kings 19:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- O Yahweh
- the kings of
- Assyria
- the nations
- their land

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- it is true that
- the armies of the kings
- of Assyria
- many nations...their
- lands

ULT

¹⁷ Truly, O Yahweh, the kings of Assyria have destroyed the nations and their land.

UST

¹⁷ Yahweh, it is true that the armies of the kings of Assyria have completely destroyed many nations and ruined their lands.

2 Kings 19:18

They have put their gods into the fire

Alternate translation: "The Assyrian kings have burned up the gods of the other nations"

Assyrians have destroyed them

Alternate translation: "Assyrians have destroyed both the nations and the nations' gods"

Translation Words - ULT

- their gods
- gods
- into the fire
- hands of
- man
- So they have destroyed them

Translation Words - UST

- the idols of those nations
- and...idols
- into fires and burned them
- that were shaped
- by humans
- they were destroyed easily

ULT

¹⁸ Also they have put **their gods into the fire**, for they are not **gods** but rather a work of **hands of man**, some wood and stone. **So they have destroyed them**.

UST

¹⁸ And they have thrown **the idols of those nations into fires and burned them**. But that was not difficult to do, because they were not gods. They were only statues made of wood and stone, **idols that were shaped by humans**, and that is why **they were destroyed easily**.

2 Kings 19:19

I implore you

Alternate translation: "I beg of you"

from his power

Alternate translation: "from the power of the King of Assyria" or "from the armies of the King of Assyria"

Translation Words - ULT

- O Yahweh
- Yahweh
- our God
- are God
- deliver us
- from his hand
- so...will know
- the kingdoms of
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- our God
- truly God
- rescue us
- from the power of the king of Assyria
- the kingdoms of the world
- the kingdoms of the world
- may know

ULT

¹⁹ So now, O Yahweh our God, deliver us please from his hand, so all the kingdoms of the earth will know that you, Yahweh, are God, you alone."

UST

¹⁹ So now, Yahweh our God, please rescue us from the power of the king of Assyria, in order that the people in all the kingdoms of the world may know that you, Yahweh, are the only one who is truly God."

2 Kings 19:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaiah
- the son of
- Amoz
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- the king of
- Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- Then Isaiah
- Then Isaiah
- Then Isaiah
- Yahweh
- the God
- the God
- the king
- of Assyria

ULT

²⁰ Then **Isaiah, the son of Amoz** sent to Hezekiah, saying, “Thus says **Yahweh, the God of Israel**, ‘Because you have prayed to me concerning Sennacherib, **the king of Assyria**, I have listened attentively.

UST

²⁰ **Then Isaiah** sent this message to Hezekiah to tell him what **Yahweh, the God** to whom the Israelites belonged, said in response: “I have heard what you prayed to me about Sennacherib, **the king of Assyria**.

2 Kings 19:21

The virgin daughter of Zion

“Virgin daughter” here is a metaphor for the people of Jerusalem as if they are young, vibrant and beautiful. The term “daughter” was used to give personal characteristics to cities by some biblical writers. Alternate translation: “The beautiful people of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

The virgin daughter of Zion despises you and laughs you to scorn. The daughter of Jerusalem shakes her head at you.

Both of these sentences intend to give the same meaning. (See: [Parallelism](#))

The daughter of Jerusalem

“Daughter” is metaphor for the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “The people of the city of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

shakes her head at you

This action is a metaphor to represent disdain at the pride of the Assyrians. Alternate translation: “scorns you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [A maiden](#)
- [Zion](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [a head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I say](#)
- [The people](#)
- [of Jerusalem](#)
- [of Jerusalem](#)
- [their heads...to mock you](#)

ULT

²¹ This is the word that [Yahweh](#) has spoken about him: “[A maiden](#), the daughter of [Zion](#) has contempt for you, has derision for you. The daughter of [Jerusalem](#) shakes [a head](#) at you.

UST

²¹ This is what [I say](#) to that king: [The people of Jerusalem](#) despise you and make fun of you. They wag [their heads to mock you](#).

2 Kings 19:22

Whom have you defied and insulted? Against whom have you exalted your voice and lifted up your eyes in pride? Against the Holy One of Israel!

Yahweh uses rhetorical questions to rebuke Sennacherib. Alternate translation: "You have defied and insulted me! You have exalted your voice and lifted up your eyes in pride against me, the Holy One of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

lifted up your eyes in pride

"lifted up your eyes in pride" is metonymy for a haughty or arrogant facial expression. Alternate translation: "looked at very proudly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Holy One of Israel

An expression for the God of Israel, Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [have you taunted](#)
- [the Holy One of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you were despising](#)
- [It was I, the holy God whom](#)
- [the Israelites worship](#)

ULT

²² Whom [have you taunted](#) and have you reviled? And against whom have you raised a voice and have you lifted your eyes upward? Against [the Holy One of Israel!](#)

UST

²² Who do you think that [you were despising](#) and ridiculing? Who do you think you were shouting at? Who do you think you were looking at very proudly? [It was I, the holy God whom the Israelites worship.](#)

2 Kings 19:23

you have defied the Lord

To “defy” is to openly resist or mock.

I have gone up ... I will cut down ... I will enter

These boasts made by Sennacherib could only be fulfilled by his army. The pronoun “I” represents him and his army. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- By the hand of
- your messengers
- you have defiled
- my Lord
- Lebanon
- Then I will cut down
- its cedars

Translation Words - UST

- The messengers
- The messengers
- made fun of me
- made fun of me
- to the...in Lebanon
- We have cut down
- and its best...trees

ULT

²³ By the hand of your messengers you have defiled my Lord, and you have said, ‘With the multitude of my chariotry I myself have gone up to heights of mountains, the remotest parts of Lebanon. Then I will cut down the tallest of its cedars, the choicest of its cypress trees. Thus I may enter into its remotest lodging place, the thicket of its orchards.

UST

²³ The messengers whom you sent made fun of me. You said, ‘With my many chariots I have gone to the highest mountains, to the highest mountains in Lebanon. We have cut down its tallest cedar trees and its best cedar trees. We have been to the most distant peaks and to its densest forests.

2 Kings 19:24

I dried up all the rivers of Egypt under the soles of my feet.

This is a boast that Sennacherib has so many soldiers that their feet dry up the water when they cross a river. This is an exaggeration to emphasize the great number of soldiers he has. Alternate translation: "And by marching through the streams of Egypt, we dried them all up!" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

²⁴ I myself have dug and I have drunk foreign waters. Indeed, I have dried up all the rivers of Egypt with the sole of my footstep.'

UST

²⁴ We have dug wells in other countries and drunk water from them. And by marching through the streams of Egypt, we dried them all up!

2 Kings 19:25

Have you not heard how ... times?

To make the point strongly this question assumes the listener knows the answer. Alternate translation: "Surely you know how ... times."
(See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

impregnable cities

Alternate translation: "cities that cannot be captured" or "cities surrounded by high walls"

ULT

²⁵ Have you not heard for long ago I designed it, for from days of old that I formed it? Now I have brought it and it will happen by laying waste, fortified cities being devastated into ruins.

UST

²⁵ But I reply, 'Have you never heard that long ago I planned that those things would happen? I planned it long ago, and now I have been causing it to occur. I planned that your army would have the power to capture many cities that were surrounded by high walls, and cause them to become piles of rubble.

2 Kings 19:26

plants in the field, green grass

This metaphor compares the weak victims of the Assyrian advance to fragile plants. Alternate translation: “as frail as plants and grass in the fields” or “as weak as shallow rooted plants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the grass on the roof or in the field, burned before it has grown up

This continues the metaphor comparing the weak victims of the Assyrian advance to fragile plants in difficult conditions for growing fully. Alternate translation: “like grass before it has matured” or “like grass before it has grown tall” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [they were in panic](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have no power](#)
- [and as a result...and discouraged](#)

ULT

26 Meanwhile, their inhabitants, being deficient of [hand](#), [they were in panic](#) and they were ashamed. They were an herb of a field, or a vegetable in sprout, grass on roofs or blighted before being a stalk.

UST

26 The people who lived in those cities [have no power](#), [and as a result](#) they became dismayed [and discouraged](#). They are as frail as plants and grass in the fields, as frail as grass that grows on the roofs of houses and is scorched before it can grow tall.

2 Kings 19:27

raging against me

Alternate translation: "angry shouting about me"

Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- and your going out
- your raging

Translation Words - UST

- But I know everything about you...I know when you are in your house
- I also know that
- raging against

ULT

²⁷ But I know your sitting down, and your going out, and your coming in, and your raging against me.

UST

²⁷ But I know everything about you. I know when you are in your house and when you go outside; I also know that you are raging against me.

2 Kings 19:28

because your arrogance has reached my ears

“Ears” are metonymy for listening or hearing. Alternate translation: “because I have heard your proud words” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will put my hook in your nose, and my bit in your mouth

A “hook” and a “bit” (to control a horse) are metaphors for Yahweh’s control of Sennacherib. Alternate translation: “I will lead you like an animal” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will turn you back the way you came

That Sennacherib will return home before he can conquer Jerusalem can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “I will make you return to your own country the same way you came, without conquering Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your raging](#)
- [now I will put](#)
- [So I will turn you back](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [raged against me](#)
- [and I will put an iron bit](#)
- [I can take you where I want you to go. I will force you to return to your own country](#)

ULT

²⁸ Because of [your raging](#) against me, and your arrogance has come up into my ears, [now I will put](#) my ring in your nose, and my bit in your lips. [So I will turn you back](#) on the way that you have come on it.”

UST

²⁸ So, because you have [raged against me](#), and because I have heard you do this, it will be as though I will put a hook in your nose, [and I will put an iron bit](#) in your mouth, in order that I can take you where I want you to go. I will force you to return to your own country on the same road on which you came here, without conquering Jerusalem.’

2 Kings 19:29

grows wild

Alternate translation: "grows without having been planted"

Translation Words - ULT

- eating only
- and you must eat
- vineyards
- their fruit

Translation Words - UST

- harvest
- and eat
- vineyards
- the grapes

ULT

²⁹ Now this will be the sign for you: this year **eating only** what grows on its own, and in the second year aftergrowth. But in the third year you must sow and you must harvest, and you must plant **vineyards and you must eat their fruit.**

UST

²⁹ Now I say this to Hezekiah: 'This is what will happen to prove that I am telling the truth: This year and next year you and your people will be able to **harvest** only wild grain. But the following year, you Israelites will be able to plant grain and harvest it, and to plant **vineyards and eat the grapes.**

2 Kings 19:30

The remnant of the house of Judah that survives will again take root and bear fruit

This metaphor compares restoration of the remnant to plantings that take hold and produce results. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah who remain alive will restore their lives and prosperity” or “The people who remain in Judah will prosper and have many children” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the escaped portion of
- the house of
- Judah
- fruit

Translation Words - UST

- The people in Judah
- who remain alive will prosper...many children
- who remain alive will prosper...many children
- and which...much fruit

ULT

³⁰ Then the escaped portion of the house of Judah who are remaining will again be a root going downward and it will make fruit going upward.

UST

³⁰ The people in Judah who remain alive will prosper and have many children; they will be like plants whose roots go deep down into the ground and which produce much fruit.

2 Kings 19:31

The zeal of Yahweh of hosts will do this

Alternate translation: "The strong action of Yahweh will make this happen"

Translation Words - ULT

- out of Jerusalem
- a remnant
- will come forth
- Zion
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- There will be many people
- There will be many people
- in Jerusalem
- who will remain alive
- I, Yahweh

ULT

³¹ For out of Jerusalem a remnant will come forth, and an escaped portion from Mount Zion. The zeal of Yahweh will accomplish this.

UST

³¹ There will be many people in Jerusalem who will remain alive, because I, Yahweh, commander of the armies, have planned it to happen.

2 Kings 19:32

General Information:

This is the end of the message from Yahweh, spoken through the prophet Isaiah to King Hezekiah. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

nor shoot an arrow here

“Arrow” is metonymy representing all tools of warfare and destruction. Alternate translation: “nor do any fighting here” (See: [Metonymy](#))

or build up a siege ramp against it

Alternate translation: “and they will not even build up high mounds of earth against the city wall to enable them to attack the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I, Yahweh](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)

ULT

³² Therefore thus says [Yahweh](#) concerning [the king of Assyria](#): “He will not enter into this city and he will not shoot an arrow there. Indeed, he will not confront it with shield, and he will not pour out a siege ramp against it.

UST

³² So this is what [I, Yahweh](#), say about [the king of Assyria](#): “His armies will not enter this city; they will not even shoot any arrows into it. His soldiers will not march outside the city gates carrying shields, and they will not even build high mounds of earth against the city walls to enable them to attack the city.

2 Kings 19:33

this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he will return](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Their king will return...his own country](#)
- [I, Yahweh, have](#)

ULT

³³ By the way which he comes, by it [he will return](#), and he will not enter into this city, the declaration of [Yahweh](#),

UST

³³ [Their king will return](#) to [his own country](#) on the same road on which he came here. He will not enter this city. That will happen because [I, Yahweh, have](#) said it!

2 Kings 19:34

for my own sake and for my servant David's sake

Alternate translation: "for the sake of my own reputation and because of what I promised to King David, who served me well"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- my servant

Translation Words - UST

- me well
- King David, who served

ULT

³⁴ For I will cover over this city in order to save it, for my sake and for the sake of David, my servant."

UST

³⁴ I will defend this city and prevent it from being destroyed. I will do this for the sake of my own reputation and because of what I promised to King David, who served me well."

2 Kings 19:35

It came about

Alternate translation: "It happened"

185,000 soldiers

"one hundred eighty-five thousand soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#))

When the men arose

Alternate translation: "When the men who were left alive got up"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the messenger of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [that...went forth](#)
- [Assyria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [That night...from Yahweh](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [went out](#)
- [Assyria](#)

ULT

³⁵ Now it happened during that night that [the messenger of Yahweh went forth](#) and he struck against the camp of [Assyria](#), 185,000. When they arose early in the morning, indeed, look, all of them dead bodies.

UST

³⁵ [That night, an angel from Yahweh went out](#) to where the army of [Assyria](#) had put up their tents, and killed 185,000 of their soldiers. When the rest of the soldiers woke up the next morning, they saw that there were corpses everywhere.

2 Kings 19:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Assyria
- and...returned

Translation Words - UST

- and went home
- the
- of Assyria

ULT

³⁶ So he journeyed, and he went and Sennacherib, the king of Assyria returned and he stayed in Nineveh.

UST

³⁶ Then King Sennacherib left and went home to Nineveh, the capital of Assyria.

2 Kings 19:37

Adrammelek ... Sharezer ... Esarhaddon

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- as...was bowing down
- at the house of
- his gods
- with the sword
- escaped
- into the land of
- Ararat
- his son
- and...became king

Translation Words - UST

- worshiping
- temple of
- his god
- with their swords
- escaped and went
- to the region
- of Ararat, northwest of Nineveh
- And another of Sennacherib's sons
- the king of Assyria

ULT

³⁷ Now it happened as he [was bowing down at the house of](#) Nisrok, [his gods](#), that Adrammelek and Sharezer struck him down [with the sword](#). Then they [escaped into the land of Ararat](#), and Esarhaddon [his son became king](#) in his place.

UST

³⁷ One day, when he was [worshiping](#) in the [temple of his god](#) Nisrok, his two sons, Adrammelek and Sharezer, killed him [with their swords](#). Then they [escaped and went to the region of Ararat, northwest of Nineveh. And another of Sennacherib's sons, Esarhaddon, became the king of Assyria.](#)

2 Kings 20

2 Kings 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter finishes the story of Hezekiah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Hezekiah's additional time

God hears the distressed call of his faithful believers. Hezekiah was dying but when he prayed, God gave him 15 more years of life. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

2 Kings 20:1

Set your house in order

"House" is metonymy for what was under Hezekiah's control.
Alternate translation: "Give final instructions to your household and government" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- about to die
- Isaiah
- the son of
- Amoz
- the prophet
- Yahweh
- Give instruction
- to your house
- you will...live

Translation Words - UST

- He thought that he was about to die
- Isaiah
- Isaiah
- Isaiah
- the prophet
- Yahweh says
- Yahweh says
- You should tell the people in your palace
- to recover from this illness

ULT

¹ In those days Hezekiah became sick, [about to die](#) when [Isaiah, the son of Amoz, the prophet](#), came to him, and he said to him, "Thus says [Yahweh](#), '[Give instruction to your house](#), for you are dying, and [you will](#) not [live](#).'"

UST

¹ About that time, Hezekiah became very ill. [He thought that he was about to die](#). [Isaiah the prophet](#) came to him and said, "This is what [Yahweh says](#): '[You should tell the people in your palace](#) what you want them to do after you die, because you are not going [to recover from this illness](#). You are going to die.'"

2 Kings 20:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his face
- and he prayed
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- face
- and prayed this
- and prayed this

ULT

² Then he turned his face to the wall and he prayed to Yahweh, saying,

UST

² Hezekiah turned his face toward the wall and prayed this:

2 Kings 20:3

call to mind

This is a common way of speaking, an idiom, urging Yahweh to remember. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

walked

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “lived my life” (See: [Idiom](#))

good in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “in your judgment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I pray](#)
- [O Yahweh](#)
- [I walked about](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [that I have...and I](#)

ULT

³ “[I pray](#), [O Yahweh](#), please remember how [I walked about](#) before your face in faithfulness and a whole heart, and the good in your eyes I have done.” Then Hezekiah wept a loud weeping.

UST

³ “[Yahweh](#), do not forget [that I have](#) always served you faithfully with all my inner being, [and I](#) have done things that pleased you.” Then Hezekiah started to cry loudly.

2 Kings 20:4

the word of Yahweh came

“Word” represents the message Yahweh revealed to Isaiah. This is a common way of speaking, an idiom. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his word” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [had...gone out](#)
- [to...courtyard](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Isaiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [court, courtyard](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁴ Now it happened [Isaiah](#) had not [gone out](#) to the middle [courtyard](#) when the word of [Yahweh](#) came to him, saying,

UST

⁴ [Isaiah](#) left the king, but before he had crossed the middle courtyard of the palace, [Yahweh](#) gave him a message.

2 Kings 20:5

I have heard your prayer, and I have seen your tears

The second part reinforces the first part to make one message by using parallelism. Alternate translation: "I have heard your prayers and seen your tears" (See: [Parallelism](#))

on the third day

Alternate translation: "two days from now" The day Isaiah said this was the first day, so "the third day" would be the same as "two days from now."

Translation Words - ULT

- Turn back
- my people
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of
- David
- your father
- your prayer
- to the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Go back
- of my people, and say
- I, Yahweh
- I am going to
- the God whom
- your ancestor
- King David worshiped
- you prayed
- my temple

ULT

⁵ "Turn back, and you must say to Hezekiah, the ruler of my people, 'Thus says Yahweh, the God of David your father: "I have heard your prayer, I have seen your tears. Here I am, a healer for you. On the third day you will go up to the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁵ He said, "Go back to Hezekiah, the ruler of my people, and say to him, 'I, Yahweh, the God whom your ancestor King David worshiped, have heard what you prayed. And I have seen your tears. So, listen, I am going to heal you. Two days from now you will be able to go up to my temple.

2 Kings 20:6

fifteen years

15 years (See: [Numbers](#))

from the hand of the king of Assyria

“Hand” is metonymy for power, authority and control. Alternate translation: “from the control of the king of Assyria” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [my servant](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king](#)
- [of Assyria](#)
- [King David, who served](#)
- [me well](#)

ULT

⁶ Now I will add 15 years to your days, and I will rescue you and this city from the palm of [the king of Assyria](#). Indeed I will hedge about this city for my sake and for the sake of [my servant David](#).[”]

UST

⁶ I will enable you to live for fifteen more years. And I will rescue you and this city again from the power of [the king of Assyria](#). I will defend this city for the sake of my own reputation and because of what I promised [King David, who served me well](#).[”]

2 Kings 20:7

lump of figs

Alternate translation: "paste made of boiled figs"

They did so and put it on his boil

Alternate translation: "Hezekiah's servants did this and put the paste on Hezekiah's sore"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [figs](#)
- [and they set](#)
- [and he recovered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Isaiah returned to the palace and told Hezekiah what Yahweh had said](#)
- [made of boiled figs](#)
- [Put some of it](#)
- [he will get well](#)

ULT

⁷ Then [Isaiah](#) said, "Take a pressed cake of [figs](#)." So they took [and they set](#) on the inflamed spot, [and he recovered](#).

UST

⁷ [Isaiah returned to the palace and told Hezekiah what Yahweh had said](#). Then he said to Hezekiah's servants, "Bring a paste [made of boiled figs](#). [Put some of it](#) on his boils, and [he will get well](#)." The servants did that, and the king recovered.

2 Kings 20:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaiah
- is the sign
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- to the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Isaiah
- will Yahweh do
- will be able to
- to prove
- to the temple

ULT

⁸ Then Hezekiah said to **Isaiah**, “What **is the sign** that **Yahweh** will heal for me, so I will go up **to the house of Yahweh** on the third day?”

UST

⁸ Then Hezekiah replied to **Isaiah**, “What **will Yahweh do to prove** that he will heal me and that two days from now I **will be able to** go up **to the temple**?”

2 Kings 20:9

Shall the shadow go forward ten steps, or go back ten steps?

The source of “the shadow” can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Do you want Yahweh to make the shadow caused by the sunlight on the stairway to go forward ten steps or to go back ten steps?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ten steps

This expression refers to the “stairway of Ahaz” in [2 Kings 20:11](#). This was probably a special stairway built for King Ahaz in such a way that its steps marked the hours of daylight as the sun’s rays advanced along them. In this way, the staircase served to tell the time during the day.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Has...gone forward](#)
- [it will turn back](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Isaiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [on the stairway to](#) (2)
- [go back](#)
- [go](#)

ULT

⁹ So [Isaiah](#) replied, “This will be the sign for you from [Yahweh](#), that [Yahweh](#) will do the thing that he has spoken. Has the shadow [gone forward](#) ten steps, or [it will turn back](#) ten steps?”

UST

⁹ [Isaiah](#) replied, “[Yahweh](#) will do something that will prove to you that he will do what he promised. Do you want him to cause the shadow [on the stairway to go back](#) ten steps or to [go](#) forward ten steps?”

2 Kings 20:10

It is an easy thing for the shadow to go forward ten steps

Why "it is an easy thing" can be stated clearly. "It is easy to cause the shadow to move forward ten steps, because that is the normal thing for it to do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [should turn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Aks Yahweh to make it move backward...on the stairway](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Then Hezekiah said, "It is easy for the shadow to go down ten steps. No, rather the shadow [should turn](#) backward ten steps."

UST

¹⁰ Hezekiah replied, "It is easy to for the shadow to move forward, because that is what it always does. [Aks Yahweh to make it move backward](#) ten steps [on the stairway](#) that King Ahaz ordered his servants to build."

2 Kings 20:11

the stairway of Ahaz

This was probably a special stairway built for King Ahaz in such a way that its steps marked the hours of daylight as the sun's rays advanced along them. In this way, the staircase served to tell the time during the day. Alternate translation: "the steps that had been built for King Ahaz" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- So...cried out
- Isaiah
- the prophet
- Yahweh
- and he reversed
- Ahaz

Translation Words - UST

- So Isaiah
- So Isaiah
- prayed earnestly
- Yahweh
- and Yahweh caused the shadow to go backward
- of king Ahaz

ULT

¹¹ So Isaiah the prophet cried out to Yahweh, and he reversed the shadow on the steps so that it went down on the steps of Ahaz backwards ten steps.

UST

¹¹ So Isaiah prayed earnestly to Yahweh, and Yahweh caused the shadow to go backward ten steps on the stairway of king Ahaz.

2 Kings 20:12

Marduk-Baladan ... Baladan

These are the names of the king of Babylon and his son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the king of
- Babylon
- and a gift

Translation Words - UST

- son of Baladan
- previous king of
- Babylonia
- along with a gift

ULT

¹² At that time Berodak-Baladan, [the son of](#) Baladan, [the king of Babylon](#), sent letters [and a gift](#) to Hezekiah, for he had heard that Hezekiah had become sick.

UST

¹² At that time, King Marduk-Baladan [son of Baladan](#), the [previous king of Babylonia](#), heard a report that King Hezekiah had been very sick. So he wrote some letters and gave them to some messengers to take to Hezekiah, [along with a gift](#).

2 Kings 20:13

listened to those letters

Alternate translation: “carefully considered those letters” or “heard the message from the king of Babylon”

There was nothing in his house, nor in all his kingdom, that Hezekiah did not show them

Here “There was nothing ... did not show them” is an exaggeration used for emphasis. It means Hezekiah showed them all of his most valuable things. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Hezekiah showed him absolutely everything valuable in his house and in all his kingdom” (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [storehouse of](#)
- [the storehouse of](#) (2)
- [the silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [the best](#)
- [oil](#)
- [in his house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was in...palace...his](#)
- [for his soldiers](#) (2)
- [the silver](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [the spices](#)
- [olive oil](#)
- [in...storerooms](#)

ULT

13 Now Hezekiah heeded to them, and he showed them all his [storehouse of](#) value: [the silver](#) and the [gold](#), and the spices and [the best oil](#), and [the storehouse of](#) his armanents, and all that was found in his storehouses. There was not anything that Hezekiah did not show them, [in his house](#) or in all his realm.

UST

13 When the messengers arrived, Hezekiah welcomed them gladly. Then he showed them all the treasure that [was in](#) his [palace](#) and treasuries—[the silver and gold](#), [the spices](#), the nice-smelling [olive oil](#), and all the weapons [for his soldiers](#). There were no valuable things in [his storerooms](#) or anywhere else in his kingdom that he did not show them.

2 Kings 20:14

these men

This refers to the men sent to King Hezekiah with a message and gifts from Marduk-Baladan.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [the prophet](#)
- [the king](#)
- [from Babylon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then the prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [Hezekiah](#)
- [Babylonia](#)

ULT

14 Then [Isaiah the prophet](#) came to [the king](#) Hezekiah and he said to him, "What did these men say, and from where are they coming to you?" So Hezekiah replied, "They have come from a distant land, [from Babylon](#)."

UST

14 Then [the prophet Isaiah](#) went to [Hezekiah](#) and asked him, "Where did those men come from, and what did they say to you?" Hezekiah replied, "They came from a country very far from here. They came from [Babylonia](#)."

2 Kings 20:15

They have seen everything in my house. There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them

Hezekiah repeats the same idea in two ways to emphasize his point. (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Parallelism](#))

There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them

“Nothing” and “not” cancel each other out to make the idea positive. This exaggeration is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “I showed them absolutely every one of my valuable things” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in your house](#)
- [is in my house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [palace](#)
- [all](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Then he said, “What did they see [in your house?](#)” So Hezekiah replied, “They have seen everything that [is in my house](#). There was not anything that I have not shown them in my storehouses.”

UST

¹⁵ Isaiah asked, “What did they see in your [palace?](#)” Hezekiah replied, “They saw everything. I showed them absolutely everything that I own—[all](#) my valuable things.”

2 Kings 20:16

So Isaiah said to Hezekiah

Why Isaiah spoke can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “So, because Isaiah knew Hezekiah had been foolish to show the men all his valuable things, Isaiah said to him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: “the message of Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Isaiah knew that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Then [Isaiah](#) said to Hezekiah, “Hear the word of [Yahweh](#):

UST

¹⁶ [Isaiah knew that](#) Hezekiah had done a very foolish thing. So Isaiah said to him, “Listen to what [Yahweh](#) says to you.

2 Kings 20:17

Look, the days are about to come when

“Listen to me, someday there will come a time when”; “Look” is used to draw attention to what Isaiah is about to tell Hezekiah.

the days

“Days” is synecdoche to refer to an undefined span of time. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is in your house](#)
- [your fathers](#)
- [to Babylon](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your palace](#)
- [put there by you and your ancestors](#)
- [to Babylon](#)
- [what Yahweh](#)

ULT

17 ‘Look, days are coming when everything that [is in your house](#), and that [your fathers](#) stored away to this day, will be carried [to Babylon](#). Not anything will be left, says [Yahweh](#).

UST

17 There will be a time when everything that is still in [your palace](#), all the valuable things that were [put there by you and your ancestors](#), will be carried away [to Babylon](#). There will be nothing left here! That is [what Yahweh](#) says to you!

2 Kings 20:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Also from your sons
- will come forth
- the king of
- Babylon

Translation Words - UST

- own descendants will
- to go there
- of the king
- of Babylon

ULT

¹⁸ Also from your sons who will come forth from you, who you will father, they will be taken away, and they will become eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.”

UST

¹⁸ Furthermore, some of your own descendants will be forced to go there, and they will be castrated in order that they may become servants in the palace of the king of Babylon.”

2 Kings 20:19

For he thought

Alternate translation: "Because Hezekiah thought"

Will there not be peace and stability in my days?

Hezekiah asks this question for emphasis knowing the answer already. Alternate translation: "I can be sure that there will be peace and stability in my days." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [Good](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [peace](#)
- [and stability](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Isaiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [is good](#)
- [peace](#)
- [and security in Israel](#)

ULT

19 Then Hezekiah said to [Isaiah](#), "[Good](#) is the word of [Yahweh](#) that you have spoken." For he said, "Is it not, if there will be [peace and stability](#) in my days?"

UST

19 Then Hezekiah replied to [Isaiah](#), "The message from [Yahweh](#) that you have given to me [is good](#)." He said that because he was thinking, "Even if that happens, there will be [peace and security in Israel](#) all during the remaining time that I remain alive."

2 Kings 20:20

pool

A small area of still water for storage

conduit

A tunnel for carrying the water

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now the rest of the matters of Hezekiah, and all his might, and how he made the resevoir and the tunnel, and he brought the waters into the city, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

²⁰ If you want to know more about all the other things that Hezekiah did, about his brave deeds in battle, about how he commanded his people to build a reservoir in the city and a tunnel to be dug to bring water into the reservoir, they are all written in the book of the events [of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 20:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his fathers
- his son
- and...became king

Translation Words - UST

- Later Hezekiah died
- and his son
- the king

ULT

²¹ So Hezekiah slept with his fathers, and Manasseh his son became king in his place.

UST

²¹ Later Hezekiah died, and his son Manasseh became the king.

2 Kings 21

2 Kings 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's judgment

God judges sin. When Manasseh worshiped idols and did many evil things, God said he would cause Judah to be destroyed by its enemies. (See: [judge, judgment](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#) and [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

"I will wipe Jerusalem clean, as a man wipes a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down" means "God would completely destroy Jerusalem." (See: [Simile](#))

2 Kings 21:1

Hephzibah

The mother of King Manasseh (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now...was a son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹ [Now](#) Manasseh [was a son of](#) 12 years upon his beginning to reign, and he reigned 55 years [in Jerusalem](#), and the name of his mother was Hephzibah.

UST

¹ Manasseh was [twelve](#) years old when he began to rule. He ruled Judah for fifty-five years [in Jerusalem](#). His mother was Hephzibah.

2 Kings 21:2

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

like the disgusting things

Another possible meaning is "including the disgusting things."

Translation Words - ULT

- what was evil
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- like the abominations of
- the nations
- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- that Yahweh
- that Yahweh
- evil
- He imitated the disgusting things
- formerly done by the people of the nations
- of Israel
- of Israel

ULT

² Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), [like the abominations of the nations](#) that [Yahweh](#) had driven out away from the faces of [the sons of Israel](#).

UST

² He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). [He imitated the disgusting things](#) that were [formerly done by the people of the nations that Yahweh](#) had driven out from the land [of Israel](#) as his people advanced through the land.

2 Kings 21:3

he rebuilt the high places ... he built altars for Baal, made an Asherah pole

Manasseh would have commanded his workers to do the building for him. Alternate translation: “he had the high places rebuilt ... he had altars built for Baal, had an Asherah pole made” or “he had his workers rebuild the high places ... he had them build altars for Baal, make an Asherah pole” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [For he turned back](#)
- [his father](#)
- [had destroyed](#)
- [altars](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and he bowed down](#)
- [the heavens](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rebuild](#)
- [his father](#)
- [destroyed](#)
- [altars to offer sacrifices](#)
- [as Ahab](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [And Manasseh worshiped](#)
- [the stars](#)

ULT

³ [For he turned back](#), and he rebuilt the high places that Hezekiah [his father had destroyed](#), and he set up [altars](#) for Baal, and he made an Asherah pole, just as [Ahab, the king of Israel](#), had done, [and he bowed down](#) to all the host of [the heavens](#) and he served them.

UST

³ He commanded his workers to [rebuild](#) the places of idol worship built on the hills. Those were the very high places that [his father](#) Hezekiah had [destroyed](#). He directed his workers to build [altars to offer sacrifices](#) of living creatures to Baal. Manasseh made a statue of the goddess Asherah, [as Ahab the king of Israel](#) had done previously. [And Manasseh worshiped the stars](#) and he served them.

2 Kings 21:4

It is in Jerusalem that my name will be forever

The name is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: "Jerusalem is where I will forever make known who I am" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altars
- in the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- In Jerusalem
- my

Translation Words - UST

- foreign gods in the
- temple of
- Yahweh
- even though Yahweh had
- It is here
- in Jerusalem

ULT

⁴ He also built [altars in the house of Yahweh](#), where [Yahweh](#) had said, "In [Jerusalem](#) I will place [my](#)."

UST

⁴ He directed his workers to build altars for worshiping [foreign gods in the temple of Yahweh](#), even though [Yahweh](#) had said, "It is [here in Jerusalem](#) where I want people to worship me, forever."

2 Kings 21:5

He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh

It is implied that he built these altars so people could make sacrifices and worship the stars. Also, he would not have built these altars himself, rather he would have commanded his workers to do it. Alternate translation: “He had his workers build altars in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh so that the people could worship the stars and offer them sacrifices” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altars
- the heavens
- courts of
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- He directed that...for worshiping the stars
- altars
- of the courtyards
- in the temple grounds
- in the temple grounds

ULT

⁵ He also built altars for all the host of the heavens in the two courts of the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁵ He directed that altars for worshiping the stars be built in both of the courtyards in the temple grounds.

2 Kings 21:6

He caused his son to pass through the fire

You may need to make explicit why he caused his son be put into the fire and what happened after he did so. Alternate translation: "He burned his son to death as an offering to his gods" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

consulted with

Alternate translation: "asked for information from"

much evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "many things that were evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "many things that Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- He even made...pass through
- his son
- in the fire
- this evil
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- He even sacrificed his own son
- and burned him in the fire
- He also went
- that Yahweh said are extremely evil, things
- that caused Yahweh to become

ULT

⁶ He even made his son pass through in the fire, and he interpreted clouds as sorcery and he practiced divination and he practiced seeking information from the dead and conjurers. He escalated to do this evil in the eyes of Yahweh, thus provoking anger.

UST

⁶ He even sacrificed his own son and burned him in the fire. He performed rituals to practice sorcery and spells. He also went to people who consulted the spirits of dead people to find out what would happen in the future. He did many things that Yahweh said are extremely evil, things that caused Yahweh to become very angry.

2 Kings 21:7

that he had made

Manasseh probably did not do the work. His servants would have done the work. Alternate translation: “that Manasseh had ordered his servants to make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

that I will put my name forever

Here Yahweh putting his “name” on the temple represents him designating it as the place to worship him. Alternate translation: “where I want people to worship me forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he placed
- in the house
- In...house
- my name
- Yahweh
- David
- Solomon
- his son
- and in Jerusalem
- the tribes of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- He...the statue
- placed
- twelve...of Israel, where
- tribes
- in the temple
- My temple will be here
- the place about which Yahweh
- David and
- son
- Solomon
- in Jerusalem

ULT

⁷ Then he placed the idol of the Asherah, that he had made, in the house about which Yahweh had said to David and to Solomon his son, “In this house and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, I will place my name for forever.

UST

⁷ He placed the statue of the goddess Asherah in the temple, the place about which Yahweh had said to David and his son Solomon, “My temple will be here in Jerusalem. This is the city that I have chosen from all the territory of the twelve tribes of Israel, where I want people to worship me forever.

2 Kings 21:8

the feet of Israel

The feet are a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” or “the Israelites” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- to their fathers
- they would take care
- I have commanded them
- commanded
- the instruction
- my servant
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- obey
- the laws
- I gave to Moses
- the man
- force them
- to their
- ancestors

ULT

⁸ Also I would not permit anymore to make the foot of [Israel](#) wander away from the ground that I gave [to their fathers](#), if only [they would take care](#) to do according to all that [I have commanded them](#), and to all [the instruction](#) that [my servant Moses](#) commanded them.”

UST

⁸ And if [the Israelite people obey](#) all my commands and all [the laws](#) that [I gave to Moses](#), [the man](#) who served me very well, I will not again [force them](#) to leave this land that I gave [to their ancestors](#).”

2 Kings 21:9

even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel

Here “nations” refers to the people who had lived in the land of Canaan before the Israelites had arrived. Alternate translation: “even more than the people whom Yahweh had destroyed as the people of Israel advanced through the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the nations](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the sins that were committed](#)
- [Yahweh had driven from the land](#)
- [as the Israelite people](#)
- [as the Israelite people](#)

ULT

⁹ But they did not listen, and Manasseh led them astray by doing what was evil, more than [the nations](#) that [Yahweh](#) had destroyed before the faces of [the sons of Israel](#).

UST

⁹ But the people did not pay attention to Yahweh. Manasseh persuaded them to commit sins that were more evil than [the sins that were committed](#) by the people of the nations that [Yahweh had driven from the land as the Israelite people](#) advanced.

2 Kings 21:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- by the hand of
- his servants
- the prophets

Translation Words - UST

- These are some of the things that Yahweh
- said through his prophets
- said through his prophets
- said through his prophets

ULT

¹⁰ So Yahweh spoke by the hand of his servants the prophets, by saying,

UST

¹⁰ These are some of the things that Yahweh said through his prophets.

Many times Yahweh had given them these messages:

2 Kings 21:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Judah
- Judah
- abominations
- that which is evil
- the Amorite
- and he has...made...sin

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- of Judah
- of Judah
- abominable
- Amor people group
- ago
- to sin against Yahweh

ULT

¹¹ "By reason that Manasseh, the king of Judah, has done these abominations, that which is evil, more than all that the Amorite who was before him had done, and he has also made Judah sin with its idols,

UST

¹¹ "Manasseh, the king of Judah, has done these abominable things, things that are much worse than the things that the Amor people group did in this land long ago. He has lead the people of Judah to sin against Yahweh by worshiping the idols that he worshiped.

2 Kings 21:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel
- such evil
- Jerusalem
- and Judah

Translation Words - UST

- I, Yahweh
- the God
- the God
- to Jerusalem
- and the rest of Judah
- It will be terrible

ULT

¹² therefore thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel: Look, I am bringing such evil upon Jerusalem and Judah that all hearing it, his two ears will quiver.

UST

¹² Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh, the God whom you Israelite people worship, says to you: I am about to cause disaster to come to Jerusalem and the rest of Judah. It will be terrible, with the result that everyone who hears about it will be stunned.

2 Kings 21:13

stretch over Jerusalem the measuring line used against Samaria, and the plumb line used against the house of Ahab

The words “measuring line” and “plumb line” are metaphors for the standards Yahweh uses to judge people. Alternate translation: “judge Jerusalem using the same measure I used when I judged Samaria and the house of Ahab” (See: [Metaphor](#))

against Samaria

Samaria is the capital city and it represents all the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “against the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

plumb line

a tool made of a heavy weight and a thin rope used to show if a wall is straight

the house of Ahab

Here “house” represents family. Alternate translation: “the family of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- Samaria
- the house of
- Ahab
- one wipes
- he wipes
- its face

Translation Words - UST

- I will judge and punish the people of Jerusalem
- I will judge and punish the people of Jerusalem
- I will remove the people of Jerusalem
- as I punished the family of
- King Ahab of Israel
- as people wipe
- a...clean
- to show

ULT

¹³ So I will stretch over [Jerusalem](#) the measuring line of [Samaria](#), and the plumb bob of [the house of Ahab](#). I will wipe [Jerusalem](#) just as [one wipes](#) a bowl, [he wipes](#) and it turns on [its face](#).

UST

¹³ I will judge and punish the people of [Jerusalem](#) as I punished the family of [King Ahab of Israel](#). I will remove the [people of Jerusalem as people wipe](#) a plate [clean](#) and then turn it upside down [to show](#) that they are now satisfied.

2 Kings 21:14

I will throw off

Alternate translation: "I will abandon" or "I will reject"

give them into the hand of their enemies

Here the "hand" of the enemies refers to their enemies' control.

Alternate translation: "let their enemies defeat them and take over their land" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the remnant of
- my inheritance
- into the hand of
- their enemies
- their enemies

Translation Words - UST

- And I will abandon the people who remain alive
- enemies...and steal everything valuable from
- enemies...and steal everything valuable from
- enemies...and steal everything valuable from
- their land

ULT

¹⁴ Indeed I will leave [the remnant of my inheritance](#) alone and I will give them [into the hand of their enemies](#). Thus they will be for spoil and for plunder for all [their enemies](#),

UST

¹⁴ And I will abandon the people who [remain alive](#), and I will allow their [enemies](#) to conquer them [and steal everything valuable from their land](#).

2 Kings 21:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- what is evil
- their fathers
- came forth
- out of Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- very evil, things which
- their ancestors
- left
- Egypt

ULT

¹⁵ by reason that they have done **what is evil** in my eyes, and they have been provoking me to anger from the day that **their fathers came forth out of Egypt**, even to this day.”

UST

¹⁵ I will do this because my people have done things that I say are **very evil, things which** have caused me to become very angry. They have caused me to become angry continually, ever since the time that **their ancestors left Egypt**.”

2 Kings 21:16

Moreover, Manasseh

Alternate translation: “Also, Manasseh” or “In addition, Manasseh”

Manasseh shed much innocent blood

The words “shed much innocent blood” are a metonym for killing people violently. It might be best to translate this so the reader understands that other people helped Manasseh do this. Alternate translation: “Manasseh ordered his soldiers to kill many innocent people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another with death

This hyperbole emphasizes the great number of people Manasseh had killed throughout Jerusalem. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **death**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “dead people.” Alternate translation: “there were very many dead people throughout Jerusalem” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

16 Indeed, Manasseh even poured out exceedingly much [innocent blood](#), until that he had filled [Jerusalem](#) mouth to mouth, beside his sinfulness that [he made Judah sin](#) by doing [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#).

UST

16 Manasseh commanded his officials to [kill](#) many [innocent](#) people [in Jerusalem](#), [with the result](#) that their blood flowed in the streets. He did this in addition to persuading [the people of Judah to do](#) many things that [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [innocent](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [he made...sin](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [kill](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [in Jerusalem, with the result](#)
- [the people of Judah](#)
- [to do](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)

2 Kings 21:17

are they not written ... Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written ... Judah.” or “you can find them ... Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his sin](#)
- [he sinned](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the sin that he committed](#)
- [and the sin that he committed](#)
- [the events of the Kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Now the rest of the matters concerning Manasseh, and all that he did, [and his sin](#) that [he sinned](#), are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

¹⁷ If you want to know more about all the things that Manasseh did, [and the sin that he committed](#), they are written in the book of [the events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 21:18

slept with his ancestors and

This is a polite way of saying he “died, as his ancestors had, and”
(See: [Euphemism](#))

the garden of Uzza

This could mean: (1) “the garden that had once belonged to a man named Uzza” or (2) “Uzza Garden.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Amon

This is a man’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his fathers](#)
- [his house](#)
- [his son](#)
- [Then...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Manasseh](#)
- [garden outside his palace, the garden that](#)
- [Then his son](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

18 Then Manasseh slept with [his fathers](#) and he was buried in the garden of [his house](#), in the garden of Uzza. Then Amon [his son became king](#) in his place.

UST

18 [Manasseh](#) died and was buried in the [garden outside his palace, the garden that](#) Uzza had made. [Then his son](#) Amon became [the king](#).

2 Kings 21:19

Amon ... Haruz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meshullemeth

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jotbah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [was a son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was twenty-two](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Amon [was a son of](#) 22 years upon his becoming king, and he reigned two years [in Jerusalem](#). Now the name of his mother was Meshullemeth, the daughter of Haruz from Jotbah.

UST

¹⁹ Amon [was twenty-two](#) years old when he became king. He ruled Judah [from Jerusalem](#) for only two years. His mother's name was Meshullemeth. She was from the city of Jotbah, and was the daughter of Haruz.

2 Kings 21:20

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, as](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), just as Manasseh [his father](#) had done.

UST

²⁰ He did many things that [Yahweh](#) said were [evil, as his father](#) Manasseh had done.

2 Kings 21:21

followed in all the way that his father had walked in

“walked in all the ways that his father walked in.” The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “lived completely the way his father had lived” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his father](#)
- [his father](#)
- [had walked](#)
- [had served](#)
- [and he bowed down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his father](#)
- [his father had worshiped](#)
- [his father](#)
- [his father had worshiped](#)
- [his father had worshiped](#)

ULT

²¹ For he walked in all the way that [his father had walked](#) and he served the idols that [his father had served](#), and he [bowed down](#) to them.

UST

²¹ He imitated the behavior of [his father](#), and he worshiped the same idols that [his father had worshiped](#).

2 Kings 21:22

He abandoned Yahweh

Alternate translation: "He went away from Yahweh" or "He paid no more attention to Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of
- his fathers
- he did...walk

Translation Words - UST

- He abandoned Yahweh, the
- as Yahweh
- God whom
- his ancestors
- had worshiped, and did...behave

ULT

²² Thus he abandoned Yahweh, the God of his fathers, and he did not walk in the way of Yahweh.

UST

²² He abandoned Yahweh, the God whom his ancestors had worshiped, and did not behave as Yahweh wanted him to behave.

2 Kings 21:23

conspired against him

Alternate translation: "made plans and worked together to harm him"

Translation Words - ULT

- the servants of
- and they put...to death
- the king
- in his house

Translation Words - UST

- Then one day some of his officials
- made plans to kill
- the
- palace

ULT

²³ Then the servants of Amon conspired against him and they put the king to death in his house.

UST

²³ Then one day some of his officials made plans to kill him. They assassinated him in the palace.

2 Kings 21:24

the people of the land

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “some of the people in Judah” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

conspired against

“made plans and worked together to harm.” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 21:23](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the people of
- the people of (2)
- the land
- the land
- the King
- and...made...king
- Josiah
- his son

Translation Words - UST

- But then the people of
- and they (2)
- Judah
- and they
- King Amon
- King Amon
- son
- Josiah

ULT

²⁴ However [the people of the land](#) struck down all who were conspiring against [the King](#) Amon, and [the people of the land](#) made Josiah his son king in his place.

UST

²⁴ But then the people of Judah killed all those who had assassinated [King Amon](#), and they appointed his son [Josiah](#) to be their king.

2 Kings 21:25

are they not written ... Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written ... Judah.” or “you can find them ... Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [events of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

²⁵ As for the rest of the matters concerning Amon that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

²⁵ If you want to read about the other things that Amon did, they are written in the book of the [events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 21:26

the garden of Uzza

This could mean: (1) "the garden that had once belonged to a man named Uzza" or (2) "Uzza Garden." See how you translated this in [2 Kings 21:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [his son](#)
- [and...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then his son](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²⁶ Thus he buried him in his tomb in the garden of Uzza, and [Josiah his son](#) [became king](#) in his place.

UST

²⁶ Amon was also buried in the tomb in the garden that Uzza had made. [Then his son Josiah](#) became [the king](#).

2 Kings 22

2 Kings 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The next two chapters (2 Kings 22-23) tell about the spiritual revival under King Josiah. A revival occurs when the people begin to worship Yahweh properly again. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

The law

The priests found a copy of the law in the temple and took it to the king. He was upset because the people had disobeyed the law so badly. Josiah asked God about it. God said that he would destroy Judah for these sins but not in Josiah's lifetime, since he humbled himself and wanted to do better. Many scholars believe this was a copy of the book of Deuteronomy. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

2 Kings 22:1

thirty-one years

"31 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jedidah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bozkath

This is the name of a town in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [was a son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Josiah was](#)
- [eight](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹ [Josiah was a son of](#) eight years upon his beginning to reign, and he reigned 31 years [in Jerusalem](#). Now the name of his mother was Yedidah, the daughter of Adaiah from Bozkath.

UST

¹ [Josiah was eight](#) years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled [from Jerusalem](#) for thirty-one years. His mother was Jedidah and his grandfather was Adaiah from the city of Bozkath.

2 Kings 22:2

He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here “eyes” represents Yahweh’s thoughts or what he considered about something. Alternate translation: “He did what Yahweh considered to be right” or “He did what was right according to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He walked in all the way of David his ancestor

“He walked in all the ways of David his ancestor” Josiah behaving as David did is spoken of as if he walked on the same road or way as David. Alternate translation: “He lived the way David his ancestor had lived” or “He followed the example of David his ancestor” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he did not turn away either to the right or to the left

To fully obey Yahweh is spoken of as if a person were on the correct road and never turned from it. Alternate translation: “he did not do anything that would displease Yahweh” or “he fully obeyed all the laws of Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pleasing to Yahweh](#)
- [and conducted his life as his ancestor](#)
- [King David had done](#)

ULT

² Now he did what was right in the eyes of [Yahweh](#). Indeed he walked in all the way of [David his father](#), and he did not turn away, right or left.

UST

² Josiah did things that were [pleasing to Yahweh and conducted his life as his ancestor King David had done](#). He fully obeyed all the laws of God.

2 Kings 22:3

It came about that

If your language has a way to mark the beginning of a new part of the story, consider using it here.

the eighteenth year

“Eighteenth” is the ordinal form of 18. Alternate translation: “year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Shaphan ... Azaliah ... Meshullam

These are men’s names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the scribe](#)
- [to the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Josiah](#)
- [After Josiah](#)
- [his](#)
- [son of](#)
- [and grandson of Meshullam](#)
- [to the](#)
- [temple](#)
- [with these](#)

ULT

³ Now it happened in the 18th year [of the king Josiah](#), [the king](#) sent Shaphan, [the son of](#) Azaliah, [the son of](#) Meshullam, [the scribe](#), [to the house of Yahweh](#), saying,

UST

³ [After Josiah](#) had been ruling for almost eighteen years, he sent [his](#) secretary Shaphan [son of](#) Azaliah [and grandson of](#) Meshullam, [to the temple with these instructions](#):

2 Kings 22:4

Go up to Hilkiah

The phrase “Go up” is used because Yahweh’s temple was higher in elevation than where King Josiah was located. Alternate translation: “Go to Hilkiah”

Hilkiah

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that has been brought into the house of Yahweh, which the temple guards have gathered from the people

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that the temple guards who gathered the money from the people brought into the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

house of Yahweh

This is another name for the “temple” (verse 3).

Translation Words - ULT

- Hilkiah
- the...priest
- the silver
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the keepers of
- the threshold
- have gathered
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- Hilkiah
- the high priest, and
- how much money the men
- guard
- the doors
- of the temple
- of the temple
- have collected
- the people as offerings

ULT

⁴ “Go up to Hilkiah the high priest so he will use up the silver that has been brought into the house of Yahweh, which the keepers of the threshold have gathered from the people.

UST

⁴ “Go to Hilkiah, the high priest, and tell him to give me a report, telling me how much money the men who guard the doors of the temple have collected from the people as offerings.

2 Kings 22:5

house of Yahweh ... in the temple

Here “house of Yahweh” and “temple” mean the same thing.

Let it be given into the hand of the workmen

Here “hand” represents the workmen as a whole. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Tell Hilkiah to give the money to the workmen” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the hand of
- at the house of
- are in the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- to the
- men
- the work of repairing the
- temple
- the work of repairing the
- hand

ULT

⁵ Then let it be given into [the hand of](#) the ones doing the work, the ones overseeing [at the house of Yahweh](#), so they will give it to the ones doing the work who [are in the house of Yahweh](#), to strengthen the breach of [the house](#),

UST

⁵ Then tell him to give all that money [to the men](#) who are supervising [the work of repairing the temple](#).

2 Kings 22:6

Let them give money

Here “them” refers to the workmen who are in charge of the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#).

the carpenters, the builders, and the masons

These are the same as the workmen who are in the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#). Here the workers are described in more detail.

carpenters

workers who build with wood

masons

workers who build with stone

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They must give that money to the](#)

ULT

⁶ to the craftsmen, and to the builders, and to the masons, also to buy timbers and stones from a quarry in order to strengthen [the house](#).”

UST

⁶ [They must give that money to the](#) carpenters, the builders, and the masons, and they should also buy the timber and the stones that they will use to repair the temple.”

2 Kings 22:7

was given to them ... because they handled

Here “them” and “they” refer to the workmen who are in charge of the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#).

no accounting was required for the money that was given to them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the workmen who were in charge did not have to report how they used the money that the temple guards gave them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because they handled it faithfully

Alternate translation: “because they used the money honestly”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the silver](#)
- [their hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the money that](#)
- [those men](#)

ULT

⁷ However [the silver](#) that was given into [their hand](#) was not accounted for by them, because they acted with trustworthiness.

UST

⁷ But the men who supervise the work will not be required to make a report on [the money that](#) is given to them, saying what they spent it for, because [those men](#) are completely honest.

2 Kings 22:8

Hilkiah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 18:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the book of the law

Most likely these laws were written on a scroll. A scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

Translation Words - ULT

- Hilkiah
- Hilkiah
- the...priest
- the scribe
- the instruction
- in the house of
- Yahweh
- and he read it

Translation Words - UST

- to Hilkiah
- Hilkiah
- Hilkiah said
- temple
- temple
- a scroll on which is written
- the laws that God gave to Moses
- started to read it

ULT

⁸ Then [Hilkiah](#) the high [priest](#) said to Shaphan [the scribe](#), "I have found the scroll of [the instruction in the house of Yahweh](#)." So [Hilkiah](#) gave the scroll to Shaphan, [and he read it](#).

UST

⁸ After Shaphan the king's secretary said that [to Hilkiah](#), [Hilkiah said](#) to Shaphan, "I have found in the [temple a scroll on which is written the laws that God gave to Moses](#)!" [Hilkiah](#) gave the scroll to Shaphan, and he [started to read it](#).

2 Kings 22:9

given it into the hand of the workmen

Here “hand” represents the workmen as a whole. Alternate translation: “given it to the workmen” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the scribe
- the king
- the king
- Yahweh
- and he returned...to
- Your servants
- the silver
- in the house
- the hand of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the scroll
- the king
- the
- temple
- to
- Your temple guards
- have taken...money that was
- the temple, and
- to the
- the work of repairing the

ULT

⁹ Then Shaphan [the scribe](#) came in to [the king and he returned](#) a report [to the king](#), and he said, “[Your servants](#) have poured out [the silver](#) that was found [in the house](#) and they have given it into [the hand of](#) the ones doing the work, the ones overseeing [the house of Yahweh](#).”

UST

⁹ Then Shaphan took [the scroll](#) to the [king](#) and said [to](#) him, “[Your temple guards have taken the money that was in the temple, and](#) they have given it [to the men who will supervise the work of repairing the temple](#).”

2 Kings 22:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the scribe
- to the king
- the king
- Hilkiah
- the priest
- Then...read it

Translation Words - UST

- the king
- the king
- I have brought to you
- Hilkiah
- Hilkiah
- started to read it

ULT

¹⁰ Then Shaphan [the scribe](#) explained [to the king](#) by saying, “Hilkiah [the priest](#) has given to me a scroll.” Then Shaphan [read it](#) in the presence of [the king](#).

UST

¹⁰ Then Shaphan said to [the king](#), “I [have brought to you](#) a scroll that Hilkiah gave to me.” And Shaphan [started to read it](#) to [the king](#).

2 Kings 22:11

It came about that

If your language has a way to mark the beginning of a new part of the story, consider using it here.

had heard the words of the law

Here “words” represents the message of the law. Alternate translation: “had heard the laws that were written in the book” or “had heard the laws that were written in the scroll” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he tore his clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the instruction](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When the king](#)
- [the laws](#)

ULT

11 Now it happened upon [the king](#) hearing the words in the scroll of [the instruction](#), that he tore his garments.

UST

11 [When the king](#) heard [the laws](#) that were written in the scroll that Shaphan was reading to him, he tore his clothes because he was very upset.

2 Kings 22:12

Ahikam ... Shaphan ... Akbor ... Micaiah ... Asaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king
- Then...commanded
- Hilkiah
- the priest
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the scribe
- the servant of

Translation Words - UST

- gave
- instructions
- Hilkiah
- Hilkiah
- son
- son (2)
- king's
- the
- special advisor

ULT

¹² Then the king commanded Hilkiah, the priest, and Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, and Akbor, the son of Micaiah, and Shaphan, the scribe, and Asaiah, the servant of the king, by saying,

UST

¹² Then he gave these instructions to Hilkiah, to Shaphan's son Ahikam, to Micaiah's son Akbor, and to Asaiah, the king's special advisor:

2 Kings 22:13

Go and consult with Yahweh

It is made clear in 22:14 that the king means for the men to go to the prophetess of Yahweh to determine Yahweh's will.

consult

to go to someone to ask for advice

the words of this book that has been found

Here "words" represents the laws. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the laws in this book that Hilkiah has found" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

For great is the anger of Yahweh that has been kindled against us

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that was lit. Alternate translation: "For Yahweh is very angry with us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

all that was written concerning us

This refers to the law that was given to Israel. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "all that Moses wrote in the law that we should do" or "all the laws that God gave through Moses to the people of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Go
- Inquire of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the people
- Judah
- is the wrath of
- our fathers

Translation Words - UST

- Go and
- ask
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the people
- of Judah
- Yahweh

ULT

¹³ "Go! Inquire of Yahweh, on behalf of me, and on behalf of the people, and on behalf of all Judah, concerning the words of this scroll that has been found. For great is the wrath of Yahweh because it has been kindled against us by reason that our fathers did not heed to the words of this scroll by doing according to all that was written for us."

UST

¹³ "Go and ask Yahweh for me and for all the people of Judah, about what is written in this scroll that has been found. Because it is clear that Yahweh is very angry with us because our ancestors disobeyed the things that are written on this scroll, things that we should have done."

- because our ancestors

2 Kings 22:14

Huldah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shallum ... Tikvah ... Harhas

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

keeper of the wardrobe

This could mean: (1) the person who took care of the clothing that priests wore in the temple or (2) the person who took care of the king's clothing.

she lived in Jerusalem in the second quarter

Here "second quarter" refers to the new part of the city that was built on the north side of Jerusalem. Also, "second" is the ordinal form of 2. Alternate translation: "she lived in Jerusalem in the new part of the city" or "she lived in the new part of Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hilkiah](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [the prophetess](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of \(2\)](#)
- [the keeper of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So Hilkiah](#)
- [So Hilkiah](#)
- [who was a prophetess who](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [son of](#)
- [and grandson of Harhas \(2\)](#)
- [took care of](#)

ULT

¹⁴ So [Hilkiah the priest](#), and Ahikam, and Akbor, and Shaphan, and Asaiah went to Huldah, [the prophetess](#), the wife of Shallum, [the son of Tikvah](#), [the son of Harhas](#), [the keeper of the garments](#). Now she was living [in Jerusalem](#) in the second part, and they spoke to her.

UST

¹⁴ So [Hilkiah](#), Ahikam, Akbor, Shaphan, and Asaiah went to consult a woman whose name was Huldah, [who was a prophetess who](#) lived in the newer part of [Jerusalem](#). Her husband Shallum [son of Tikvah and grandson of Harhas](#), [took care of](#) the robes that were worn in the temple. Those five men told her about the scroll.

2 Kings 22:15

the man who sent you to me

Here “the man” refers to King Josiah.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the God whom
- the Israelites worship
- Yahweh has

ULT

¹⁵ Then she said to them, “Thus says **Yahweh, the God of Israel**: ‘Say to the man who sent you to me,

UST

¹⁵ She then told them what Yahweh **the God whom the Israelites worship** says, “**Yahweh has** a message for the king who sent you to me, and this is what Yahweh says:

2 Kings 22:16

I will bring disaster to this place and to its inhabitants

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that he could bring to a place. Alternate translation: "I will cause terrible things to happen to this place and to those who live there" (See: [Metaphor](#))

to this place

"to Jerusalem." This refers to the city of Jerusalem which represents the whole land of Judah. Alternate translation: "to Judah" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [disaster](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [has read](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I](#)
- [disaster](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [has read](#)

ULT

¹⁶ "Thus says [Yahweh](#): 'Look, I am bringing [disaster](#) to this place and to its inhabitants, all the things in the scroll that [the king of Judah has read](#).'

UST

¹⁶ 'Listen to this carefully. [I](#) am going to bring a [disaster](#) on Jerusalem and all the people who live here, which is what was written in the scroll that [the king has read](#).'

2 Kings 22:17

my anger has been kindled against this place, and it will not be extinguished

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that was lit. Alternate translation: "my anger against this place is like a fire that cannot be put out" (See: [Metaphor](#))

this place

Here "place" represents the people who live in Jerusalem and Judah. Alternate translation: "these people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they have forsaken me](#)
- [to...gods](#)
- [their hands](#)
- [my wrath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they have abandoned me](#)
- [other gods](#)
- [and my anger is like a fire](#)
- [and my anger is like a fire](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Because that [they have forsaken me](#) and they have burned incense to other [gods](#), thus provoking me to anger with all the works of [their hands](#), therefore [my wrath](#) is kindled against this place, and it will not go out."

UST

¹⁷ I will do that because [they have abandoned me](#), and they burn incense to honor [other gods](#). They have caused me to become very angry by all the idols that they have made, [and my anger is like a fire](#) that will not be put out.

2 Kings 22:18

About the words that you heard

Here “words” represents the message that Huldah just spoke.
Alternate translation: “About the message that you heard” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Judah
- to inquire of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- of Judah
- want him to do
- inquire what I
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- want him to do

ULT

¹⁸ But to [the king of Judah](#), the one sending you [to inquire of Yahweh](#), thus you must say to him: “Thus says [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#): ‘The things that you have heard,

UST

¹⁸ [The king of Judah](#) sent you to [inquire what I, Yahweh, want him to do](#). This is what you should say to him, “You have paid attention to what was written in the scroll.

2 Kings 22:19

because your heart was tender

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. Feeling sorry is spoken of as if the heart were tender. Alternate translation: “because you felt sorry” or “because you repented” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

that they would become a desolation and a curse

The abstract nouns “desolation” and “curse” can be stated as an adjective and a verb. Alternate translation: “that I would make the land desolate and would curse them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

torn your clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

this is Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 19:33](#). Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and...when you heard what I threatened](#)
- [I](#)
- [I](#)
- [I](#)

ULT

¹⁹ because [your heart](#) became tender, and you have humbled yourself before the presence of [Yahweh](#), upon your hearing what I spoke against this place and against its inhabitants, to become into a horror and as a curse, and you have torn your garments and you have wept before my face, so also [I](#) have heard, an utterance of [Yahweh](#).

UST

¹⁹ Also, you have repented and humbled yourself [when you heard what I threatened](#) to do to punish this city and the people who live here, [I](#) have heard what you prayed. I said that [I](#) would cause this city to be abandoned. It will be a city whose name people will use when they curse someone. But because you tore your robes and wept in my presence, [I](#) have heard you.

2 Kings 22:20

General Information:

This is the end of the message from Yahweh to King Josiah through the prophetess Huldah.

See, I will gather you to your ancestors, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace

Both statements mean basically the same thing. They are polite ways of saying he will die. Alternate translation: "So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Your eyes will not see

Here "will not see" represents not experiencing something. Alternate translation: "You will not experience" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Your eyes

Here "eyes" represents the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the disaster that I will bring upon this place

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that Yahweh would bring to a place. Alternate translation: "the terrible things I will cause to happen in this place" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- am gathering you
- your fathers
- your sepulchers
- the disaster
- So they brought...back
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully...to
- So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully...to
- So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully...to
- disaster
- After the men
- returned

ULT

²⁰ So therefore, I am gathering you to your fathers, indeed you will be gathered to your sepulchers in peace. Thus your eyes will not look upon all the disaster that I am bringing upon this place. "" So they brought the king back a message.

UST

²⁰ So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully. I will cause a great disaster to come to this place, but you will not be alive to see it. "" After the men heard that, they returned to King Josiah and gave him that message.

2 Kings 23

2 Kings 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Josiah ends in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Ending idolatry

Josiah destroyed idolatry in Judah and in the deserted areas of Israel. But he fought against Egypt and was killed in battle. After his death, Egypt set up a government of Judah that it controlled.

2 Kings 23:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the elders of
- Judah
- and Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- the elders of
- Jerusalem
- in Judah

ULT

¹ As a result the king sent and they gathered to him all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem.

UST

¹ Then the king summoned all the elders of Jerusalem and of the other places in Judah.

2 Kings 23:2

all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “many other people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

from small to great

This merism includes everyone in between. Alternate translation: “from the least important to the most important” (See: [Merism](#))

He then read in their hearing

Alternate translation: “Then the king read aloud so that they could hear”

that had been found

In [2 Kings 22:8](#) it states that Hilkiah found the book. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that Hilkiah had found” or “that they had found” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- to the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Judah
- Jerusalem
- and the priests
- the people
- Next he read
- the covenant
- in the house of

Translation Words - UST

- to the temple
- to the temple
- in the temple
- along with the priests and the prophets
- and many other people
- and many other people
- to the
- important people. And
- the king
- read to them
- the scroll

ULT

² Then the king went up to the house of Yahweh, and every man of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem with him, and the priests, and the prophets, and all the people, both from small and to great. Next he read in their ears all the words of the scroll of the covenant that had been found in the house of Yahweh.

UST

² They went together to the temple, along with the priests and the prophets, and many other people, from the most important people to the least important people. And while they listened, the king read to them all of the laws that Moses had written. He read from the scroll that had been found in the temple.

2 Kings 23:3

walk after Yahweh

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path, and “to walk after” someone is a metonym for doing what that other person does or wants others to do. Alternate translation: “live obeying Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes

These words all share similar meanings. Together they emphasize everything that Yahweh had commanded in the law. (See: [Doublet](#))

with all his heart and all his soul

The idiom “with all his heart” means “completely” and “with all his soul” means “with all his being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. Alternate translation: “with all his being” or “with all his energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

that were written in this book

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that this book contained” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

stand by the covenant

This idiom means to “obey the terms of the covenant.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the pillar
- the people
- and he cut
- the covenant
- covenant (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his commandments
- heart
- being
- in order to perpetuate

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- pillar where
- the people also promised
- when they made important announcements
- when they made important announcements

ULT

³ Then the king stood by the pillar and he cut the covenant in the presence of Yahweh, to walk after Yahweh and to keep his commandments, and his testimonies, and his statutes, with a whole heart and with a whole being, in order to perpetuate the words of this covenant that were written in this scroll. So all the people stood by the covenant.

UST

³ Then the king stood next to the pillar where the kings stood when they made important announcements, and, while Yahweh was listening, he repeated his promise to sincerely obey with his inner being the covenant. And all the people also promised to obey the covenant.

- covenant (2)
- and, while Yahweh was listening
- he repeated
- he repeated
- inner being
- inner being
- inner being

2 Kings 23:4

the priests under him

Alternate translation: "the other priests who served him"

gatekeepers

men who guarded the gates to the temple

for Baal ... for all the stars

Alternate translation: "so people could use them to worship Baal ... so people could use them to worship all the stars"

He burned ... and carried

The word "he" refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "he had them burn them ... and carry them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Kidron Valley ... Bethel

names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Next...commanded
- the king
- of Jerusalem
- to Bethel
- to Bethel
- Hilkiah
- the...priest
- the priests of
- and the keepers of
- the threshold
- Yahweh
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- gave a command
- to Bethel
- to Bethel
- to Hilkiah
- the high priest, to
- all the other priests
- and to the men who
- guarded the
- from the temple

ULT

⁴ Next the king commanded Hilkiah the high priest, and the priests of the second order and the keepers of the threshold to bring out of the temple of Yahweh all the vessels that were made for the Baal and for the Asherah, and for all the host of the heavens. Then he burned them towards outside of Jerusalem in the fields of Kidron and he carried their ashes to Bethel.

UST

⁴ Then the king gave a command to Hilkiah, the high priest, to all the other priests who assisted him, and to the men who guarded the entrance to the temple. He told them to bring out from the temple all the items that people had been using to worship Baal, the goddess Asherah, and the stars. After they carried them out, they burned all those things outside the city in the Kidron Valley. Then they took all the ashes to Bethel.

- and the stars
- outside the city

2 Kings 23:5

He got rid

The word “He” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “He had them get rid” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to Baal, to the sun and the moon, to the planets, and to all the stars

Alternate translation: “as a way to worship Baal, the sun and the moon, the planets, and all the stars”

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings of
- Judah
- Judah (2)
- Jerusalem
- the heavens

Translation Words - UST

- whom the previous kings
- of Judah
- of Judah...that (2)
- on the high places
- and the stars

ULT

⁵ Also he made the pagan priests cease, whom [the kings of Judah](#) had designated so he burned incense at the high places in the cities of [Judah](#) and in the places around [Jerusalem](#), and who were burning incense to the Baal, and to the sun, and to the moon, and to the constellations of the zodiac, and to all the host of [the heavens](#).

UST

⁵ There were many pagan priests [whom the previous kings of Judah](#) had appointed to burn incense on the altars scattered throughout the region [of Judah](#) and to worship [on the high places that](#) they had built on the hills. They had been offering sacrifices to Baal, to the sun, to the moon, the planets, [and the stars](#). The king stopped them from doing those things.

2 Kings 23:6

He brought out ... and burned it ... He beat it ... and threw

The word "he" refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He had them bring out ... and burn it ... He had them beat it ... and throw" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he brought out
- from the house of
- Yahweh
- of Jerusalem
- the burial area of
- the sons of
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- be taken
- of the temple
- of the temple
- Then they took it outside Jerusalem
- over the graves of ordinary
- over the graves of ordinary
- people

ULT

⁶ Then he brought out the Asherah pole from the house of Yahweh, to outside of Jerusalem to the wadi Kidron and he burned it in the wadi Kidron. Then he made a powder of dust and he threw its dust over the burial area of the sons of the people.

UST

⁶ He commanded that the statue of the goddess Asherah be taken out of the temple. Then they took it outside Jerusalem, down to the Kidron Valley, and burned it. Then they pounded the ashes to powder and scattered that over the graves of ordinary people.

2 Kings 23:7

He cleared

The word “He” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “He had them clear” (See: [Metonymy](#))

wove garments

Alternate translation: “made clothes”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the houses for](#)
- [houses](#)
- [were by the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in the temple](#)
- [where the...lived](#)
- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)

ULT

⁷ He also tore down [the houses for](#) the male temple prostitutes that [were by the house of Yahweh](#), where the women were weaving [houses](#) for Asherah there.

UST

⁷ He also took everything out of the rooms [in the temple where the temple male prostitutes lived](#). That was where women wove robes that were used to worship the goddess Asherah.

2 Kings 23:8

Josiah brought ... and defiled ... He destroyed

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He commanded them to bring ... and to defile ... He had them destroy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Geba ... Beersheba

names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Joshua (the city governor)

"the city ruler named Joshua" or "the city leader named Joshua." This is a different Joshua from the Joshua in the Old Testament Book of Joshua.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [the gates](#)
- [the gate of](#)
- [at the gate of](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [the prince of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁸ Then he brought all [the priests](#) out of the cities of [Judah](#) and he defiled the high places where [the priests](#) had burned incense on there, from Geba as far as [Beersheba](#). He also tore down the high places at [the gates](#) that were along the entrance of [the gate of Joshua, the prince of](#) the city, that were at the left side of anyone [at the gate of](#) the city.

UST

⁸⁻⁹ Josiah also brought to Jerusalem all the priests who were offering sacrifices in the other cities of Judah. He also desecrated the places on the hills where the priests had burned incense to honor idols, from Geba in the north to Beersheba in the south. Those priests were not allowed to offer sacrifices in the temple, but they were allowed to eat the unleavened bread that the priests who worked in the temple ate. He also commanded that the altars that were near the gate built by Joshua, the mayor of Jerusalem, be destroyed. Those altars were at the left of the main gate into the city.

2 Kings 23:9

their brothers

Here “brothers” refers to their fellow priests who served at the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests of
- the altar of
- Yahweh
- in Jerusalem
- they...ate
- unleavened bread
- their brothers

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- brother
- priest, priesthood
- unleavened bread
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- devour

ULT

⁹ Although the priests of the high places did not go up to the altar of Yahweh in Jerusalem, nevertheless they still ate unleavened bread in the midst of their brothers.

UST

⁸⁻⁹ Josiah also brought to Jerusalem all the priests who were offering sacrifices in the other cities of Judah. He also desecrated the places on the hills where the priests had burned incense to honor idols, from Geba in the north to Beersheba in the south. Those priests were not allowed to offer sacrifices in the temple, but they were allowed to eat the unleavened bread that the priests who worked in the temple ate. He also commanded that the altars that were near the gate built by Joshua, the mayor of Jerusalem, be destroyed. Those altars were at the left of the main gate into the city.

2 Kings 23:10

Topheth ... Ben Hinnom

place names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

cause his son or his daughter to pass through the fire as a sacrifice to Molech

Alternate translation: "put his son or his daughter in the fire and burn them as an offering to Molech"

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- his son
- through the fire

Translation Words - UST

- son
- his son...there
- to be completely burned

ULT

¹⁰ He also defiled the Topheth, which was in the Valley of [the son of](#) Hinnom, so as not to allow anyone to make [his son](#) or his daughter pass [through the fire](#) to the Molech.

UST

¹⁰ Josiah also desecrated the place named Topheth, in the Ben Hinnom Valley, in order that no one could offer [his son](#) or daughter [there to be completely burned](#) on the altar as a sacrifice to the god Molech.

2 Kings 23:11

He took away

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the horses

This could mean: (1) real horses or (2) statues of horses.

had given to the sun

Here “given” represents being dedicated for worship. Alternate translation: “had used to worship the sun” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Nathan-Melek

a man’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the horses
- the kings of
- Judah
- the house of
- Yahweh
- the chariots of
- in the fire

Translation Words - UST

- the horses that the
- previous kings
- of Judah
- and he burned
- the chariots
- outside the temple, near the entrance
- the temple, and

ULT

¹¹ Then he put an end to the horses that the kings of Judah had given over to the sun, away from coming into the house of Yahweh, to the chamber of Nathan-Melek, the eunich, that was in the annex. He also burned the chariots of the sun in the fire.

UST

¹¹ He also removed the horses that the previous kings of Judah had dedicated to worshiping the sun, and he burned the chariots that were used in that worship. Those horses and chariots were kept in the courtyard outside the temple, near the entrance to the temple, and near the room where one of Josiah’s officials lived, whose name was Nathan-Melek.

2 Kings 23:12

Josiah the king destroyed ... Josiah smashed ... and threw

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiyah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "Josiah the king commanded them to destroy ... He had them smash ... had them throw" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the kings of Judah had made ... Manasseh had made

Manasseh and the kings of Judah probably commanded their workers to make these things. Alternate translation: "the kings of Judah had their workers make ... Manasseh had his workers make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Kidron Valley

place name. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 23:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings of
- the king
- the altars
- the altars
- Ahaz
- Judah
- courts of
- the house of
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- the altars
- They also tore down the altars
- the previous kings
- the
- of Judah
- King Ahaz
- courtyards outside
- temple
- temple

ULT

¹² Also [the king](#) tore down [the altars](#) that were on the roof, the upper chamber of [Ahaz](#), that [the kings of Judah](#) had made, and [the altars](#) that Manasseh had made in the two [courts of the house of Yahweh](#). Then he ran from there and he threw their dust into the wadi Kidron.

UST

¹² Josiah also commanded his servants to tear down [the altars](#) that [the previous kings of Judah](#) had built on the palace roof, above the room where [King Ahaz](#) had stayed. [They also tore down the altars](#) that had been built by King Manasseh in the two [courtyards outside the temple](#). He commanded that they be smashed to pieces and thrown down into the Kidron Valley.

2 Kings 23:13

The king ruined

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “He had them ruin ... He had them break ... they filled” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Solomon the king of Israel had built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do these things. Alternate translation: “Solomon the king of Israel had his workers build” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king
- the front face of
- Jerusalem
- Solomon
- Israel
- Moab
- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- had built east of Jerusalem
- Solomon
- for the worship of
- the
- the
- worshiped by the people
- Moab people group
- of

ULT

¹³ Also [the king](#) defiled the high places that were on [the front face of Jerusalem](#), that were at the right of the mount of corruption that [Solomon, the king of Israel](#), had built for Ashtoreth, the detestable idol of the Sidonians and for Chemosh, the detestable idol of [Moab](#), and for Milcom, the abomination of [the sons of Ammon](#).

UST

¹³ He also commanded that the altars that King Solomon [had built east of Jerusalem](#), south of the Mount of Olives—the so-called Mount of Corruption—be desecrated. [Solomon](#) had built them [for the worship of the](#) disgusting idols—the statue of the goddess Ashtoreth [worshiped by the people](#) in the city of Sidon, Chemosh the god of the [Moab people group](#), and Molech the god [of the Ammon people group](#).

2 Kings 23:14

He broke ... he filled

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He had them break ... they filled" (See: [Metonymy](#))

filled those places with the bones of human beings

"covered the ground with human bones so people could not use it as a shrine anymore" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and cut down](#)
- [human](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and cut down the poles that honored](#)
- [human...to desecrate it](#)

ULT

14 Then he broke the standing pillars into pieces [and cut down](#) the Asherah poles and he filled their places with [human](#) bones.

UST

14 They also broke into pieces the stone pillars that the Israelite people worshiped, [and cut down the poles that honored](#) the goddess Asherah, and they scattered the ground there with [human](#) bones [to desecrate it](#).

2 Kings 23:15

Josiah also completely destroyed ... He also burned ... and beat ... He also burned

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar
- altar
- was at Bethel
- was at Bethel
- Jeroboam
- the son of
- he had caused...to sin
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the place of worship
- altar
- was near the city of Bethel
- was near the city of Bethel
- the very same place of worship
- by King Jeroboam (whose father
- to sin against Yahweh
- of Israel

ULT

¹⁵ Then he also tore down the altar that was at Bethel, the high place that Jeroboam, the son of Nebat had made, by which he had caused Israel to sin, both that altar and the high place he burned down. He pulverized the high place into dust and he burned an Asherah pole.

UST

¹⁵ Furthermore, he commanded them to tear down the place of worship that was near the city of Bethel, the very same place of worship that had been built by King Jeroboam (whose father was Nebat, the same man who made Israel to sin against Yahweh). Josiah led the people of Israel to tear down that altar that was on the high hill, and they also burned the wooden pole used in the worship of the idol that had the name “Asherah.”

2 Kings 23:16

spoke of these things beforehand

Alternate translation: "had said that these things would happen"

Translation Words - ULT

- Josiah
- the altar
- Yahweh
- God
- had proclaimed
- had proclaimed

Translation Words - UST

- Then Josiah
- the altar
- to Israel
- were predicted
- Yahweh
- by his prophet

ULT

¹⁶ When Josiah turned and he saw the graves that were there on the hillside, then he sent out and he took the bones from the graves. Then he burned on the altar, thus he defiled it according to the word of Yahweh which the man of God had proclaimed, who had proclaimed these things.

UST

¹⁶ Then Josiah looked around and saw some tombs on the hill. He commanded his men to take the bones out of those tombs and burn them on the altar. By doing that, he desecrated the altar. These events were predicted many years before when Yahweh gave his word to Israel by his prophet.

2 Kings 23:17

monument

marker or statue that honors a person. A tomb is one kind of monument.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- from Judah
- and he proclaimed
- the altar of
- Bethel
- Bethel

Translation Words - UST

- of Bethel
- of Bethel
- the prophet
- Judah
- and predicted
- this altar

ULT

¹⁷ Then he said, "What is this monument that I am seeing?" So the men of the city replied to him, "The grave of the man of God who came from Judah and he proclaimed these things that you have done against the altar of Bethel."

UST

¹⁷ Josiah asked, "Whose tomb is that?" The people of Bethel replied, "It is the tomb of the prophet who came from Judah and predicted that these things that you have just now done to this altar would happen."

2 Kings 23:18

So they let his bones alone, along with the bones of

Alternate translation: "So they did not touch his bones or the bones of"

Translation Words - ULT

- the prophet

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet's

ULT

¹⁸ So he said, "Allow rest for him. Let not anyone disturb his bones." So they preserved his bones, along with the bones of the prophet who had come from Samaria.

UST

¹⁸ Josiah replied, "Allow his tomb to remain as it is. Do not remove the prophet's bones from the tomb." So the people did not remove those bones, or the bones of the other prophet, the one who had come from Samaria.

2 Kings 23:19

Josiah removed ... He did

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the kings of Israel had made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, probably the kings’ workers, might have helped the kings make these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

what had been done

Alternate translation: “what he had done”

Translation Words - ULT

- Josiah
- the shrines on
- Samaria
- the kings of
- Israel
- at Bethel
- at Bethel

Translation Words - UST

- in Samaria
- at Josiah’s command
- by the previous kings
- of Israel
- to the
- at Bethel
- at Bethel

ULT

¹⁹ Then Josiah also removed all the shrines on the high places that were in the cities of Samaria, that the kings of Israel had made, thus provoking to anger. So he did to them like all the deeds that he did at Bethel.

UST

¹⁹ In every city in Samaria, at Josiah’s command, they tore down the houses built on hills to worship idols. The ones that had been built by the previous kings of Israel, which had caused Yahweh to become very angry. He did to all those places of idols worship the same thing that he had done to the altars at Bethel.

2 Kings 23:20

He slaughtered ... he burned

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he burned human bones on them

You may need to make explicit why he burned the bones. “he burned human bones on them so no one would use them again” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the priests of
- the altars
- human
- Then he returned
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- priests
- altars
- human
- Then he returned to
- Jerusalem

ULT

²⁰ Then he slaughtered all the priests of the high places who were there on the altars and he burned human bones on them. Then he returned to Jerusalem.

UST

²⁰ He ordered that all the priests who offered sacrifices on the places built on the hills where they worshiped idols, and they were to be killed on those altars. Then he burned human bones on every one of those altars to desecrate them. Then he returned to Jerusalem.

2 Kings 23:21

Keep the Passover

Alternate translation: "You must celebrate the Passover"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- Then...commanded
- the people
- for Yahweh
- your God
- covenant

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- commanded
- people
- Yahweh
- their God
- which was written in the law of Moses

ULT

²¹ Then the king commanded all the people, by saying, "Do Passover for Yahweh your God, according to what is written in this scroll of the covenant."

UST

²¹ Then the king commanded all the people to celebrate the Passover festival to honor Yahweh their God, which was written in the law of Moses that they should do every year.

2 Kings 23:22

Such a Passover celebration had never been held from the days of

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Israel had not celebrated the Passover festival in such a great way in the time of" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ruled Israel

The name "Israel" is a metonym for "the descendants of Israel." (See: [Metonymy](#))

the days of the kings of Israel or Judah

Alternate translation: "the time when the people of Israel had their own king and the people of Judah had their own king"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the judges](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ruled](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [that kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

²² For it had not been done as this Passover since the days of [the judges](#) who judged [Israel](#), nor all the days of [the kings of Israel](#) or the kings of [Judah](#).

UST

²² During all the years that leaders [ruled Israel](#) and during all the years [that kings of Israel](#) and the kings [of Judah](#), they had not celebrated that festival.

2 Kings 23:23

this Passover of Yahweh was celebrated

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of Judah celebrated this Passover of Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the King
- Josiah
- Passover
- for Yahweh
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- But...after Josiah...been ruling
- But...after Josiah...been ruling
- Yahweh
- they celebrated the Passover festival
- in Jerusalem

ULT

²³ But truly in the 18th year of the King Josiah, this Passover was done for Yahweh in Jerusalem.

UST

²³ But now, after Josiah had been ruling for almost eighteen years, to honor Yahweh they celebrated the Passover festival in Jerusalem.

2 Kings 23:24

banished ... spirits

Alternate translation: “forced those ... spirits to leave” or “made a law that those ... spirits had to leave”

those who talked with the dead or with spirits

See how you translated “those who talked with the dead and ... those who talked with spirits,” in [2 Kings 21:6](#).

fetishes

things that people wrongly believe have special power

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and in Jerusalem](#)
- [the instruction](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Josiah](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)
- [and from the other places in Judah](#)
- [been written](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [Hilkiah](#)
- [in the temple](#)
- [in the temple](#)

ULT

²⁴ Now [Josiah](#) also destroyed in blazing fury the women sorcerers who talked with the dead and those with familiar spirits and the household idols, and the idol images and all the detestable idols that were seen in the land of [Judah and in Jerusalem](#), so as to perpetuate the words of [the instruction](#) that were written in the scroll that [Hilkiah the priest](#) had found [in the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

²⁴ Furthermore, [Josiah](#) removed from Jerusalem and other places in Judah all the people who practiced sorcery and those who asked the spirits of dead people to tell them what they should do. He also removed [from Jerusalem and from the other places in Judah](#) all the household idols and all the other idols and abominable things. He did those things in order to obey what had [been written](#) in the scroll that [Hilkiah](#) had found [in the temple](#).

2 Kings 23:25

who turned to Yahweh

Alternate translation: "who gave himself completely to Yahweh"

Nor did any king like Josiah arise after him

Alternate translation: "And since then there has never been a king who was like Josiah"

Translation Words - ULT

- a king
- had turned
- Yahweh
- his heart
- his being
- the instruction of
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- to
- Yahweh
- he felt and thought
- a king
- all
- the laws
- of Moses

ULT

²⁵ Now before him there was not a king like him, who had turned to Yahweh with all his heart, and with all his being, and with all his might, in accordance with all the instruction of Moses, neither after him none had arisen like him.

UST

²⁵ Josiah was devoted to Yahweh with all that he felt and thought and with all his strength. There had never been in Judah or Israel a king like him. He obeyed all the laws of Moses. And there has never since then been a king like Josiah.

2 Kings 23:26

Nevertheless

The writer uses this word to show that even though all of these things that Josiah did were good, Yahweh was still angry with Judah.

Yahweh did not turn away from the burning of his fierce anger, which burned against

Fire is a metaphor for anger, and starting a fire is a metaphor for becoming angry. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **anger**, you could express the same idea with an adjective. Alternate translation: "Yahweh did not stop being fierce because he was angry with" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

had done to provoke him

Alternate translation: "had done to cause him to be angry"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- did...turn
- against Judah

Translation Words - UST

- But Yahweh had become extremely angry...that King
- But Yahweh had become extremely angry...that King
- with the people of Judah

ULT

²⁶ Nevertheless, Yahweh did not turn away from the burning fury of his great anger, with which his anger kindled against Judah because of all the offences that Manasseh had provoked him to anger.

UST

²⁶ But Yahweh had become extremely angry with the people of Judah because of all the things that King Manasseh had done to provoke him, and he continued to be very angry.

2 Kings 23:27

out of my sight

Alternate translation: "from where I am" or "from being near me"

My name will be there

The name is a metonym for the honor that people should give to the person. Alternate translation: "People should worship me there" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Judah
- my faces
- Israel
- Jerusalem
- the house
- My name

Translation Words - UST

- I will do to Judah what I have done
- to
- Israel
- of Judah
- Jerusalem
- the temple, the place
- I should be worshiped

ULT

²⁷ So Yahweh said, "I will also remove Judah away from my faces, just as I have removed Israel, and I will reject this city that I have chosen, Jerusalem, and the house of which I said, 'My name will be there.'"

UST

²⁷ He said, "I will do to Judah what I have done to Israel. I will drive away the people of Judah, with the result that they will never enter my presence again. And I will reject Jerusalem, the city that I chose to belong to me, and I will reject the temple, the place where I said that I should be worshiped."

2 Kings 23:28

are they not written ... Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “you can find them ... Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Josiah](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Josiah](#)
- [of the events of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

²⁸ Now the rest of the matters concerning [Josiah](#), and all that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

²⁸ If you want to know more about all the other things that [Josiah](#) did, they are written in the book [of the events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 23:29

In his days, Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt

Alternate translation: "During the time of Josiah, Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt"

Necho ... Megiddo

Necho is the name of a man. Megiddo is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of
- the King
- Egypt
- Assyria
- the Euphrates
- Josiah
- But he killed him

Translation Words - UST

- king of Judah
- King
- to help the king
- of Egypt
- the Euphrates
- of Assyria
- Josiah
- killed

ULT

²⁹ In his days, Pharaoh Necho, [the king of Egypt](#), had gone up against [the king of Assyria](#) at [the Euphrates](#) River, and [the King Josiah](#) had gone to meet him. [But he killed him](#) at Megiddo upon his seeing him.

UST

²⁹ While he was the [king of Judah](#), King Necho [of Egypt](#) led his army north to [the Euphrates](#) River [to help the king of Assyria](#). [King Josiah](#) tried to stop the army of Egypt at the city of Megiddo, but he was [killed](#) in a battle there.

2 Kings 23:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- So...had him ride...in a chariot
- his servants
- his father
- to Jerusalem
- the people of the
- land
- the son of
- Josiah
- and they made...king

Translation Words - UST

- His officials
- in a chariot from
- Jerusalem
- Then the people of
- Judah
- on Josiah's
- son Joahaz
- to appoint
- to be the new king

ULT

³⁰ So his servants had him ride dying in a chariot from Megiddo, and they brought him to Jerusalem, and they buried him in his grave. Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz, the son of Josiah, and they anointed him, and they made him king in place of his father.

UST

³⁰ His officials placed his corpse in a chariot from Megiddo, and took it back to Jerusalem, where it was buried in his own tomb. Then the people of Judah poured olive oil on Josiah's son Joahaz, to appoint him to be the new king.

2 Kings 23:31

twenty-three years old

"23 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Hamutal

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Libnah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- was a son of
- in Jerusalem
- Jeremiah

Translation Words - UST

- was twenty
- from Jerusalem
- of Jeremiah

ULT

³¹ Jehoahaz was a son of 23 years upon his becoming king, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. Now the name of his mother was Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah, from Libnah.

UST

³¹ Joahaz was twenty-three years old when he became the king of Judah, but he ruled from Jerusalem for only three months. His mother was Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah from the city of Libnah.

2 Kings 23:32

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his ancestors](#)

ULT

³² Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), like everything that [his fathers](#) had done.

UST

³² Joahaz did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), just like many of [his ancestors](#) had done.

2 Kings 23:33

Riblah ... Hamath

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

put him in chains

Being put “in chains” represents being captured and imprisoned.
Alternate translation: “put him in prison” (See: [Metonymy](#))

fined Judah

Alternate translation: “forced the people of Judah to give him”

one hundred talents ... one talent

A talent was about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: “3,300 kilograms...33 kilograms” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the land](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Necho forced the people of Judah](#)
- [of silver](#)
- [of gold](#)

ULT

33 Then Pharaoh Necho bound him at Riblah in the land of Hamath, away from reigning [in Jerusalem](#). Then he instituted a fine against [the land](#), 100 rounds of [silver](#) and a round of [gold](#).

UST

33 King Necho's army captured him and tied him up with chains and took him as a prisoner to the city of Riblah in the district of Hamath, to prevent him from continuing to rule in [Jerusalem](#). [Necho forced the people of Judah](#) to pay to him about 3.3 metric tons [of silver](#) and thirty three kilograms [of gold](#).

2 Kings 23:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...made...king
- Eliakim
- and he died
- the son of
- Josiah
- Josiah
- his father
- his name
- Jehoiakim
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- King Necho appointed
- another son of
- Josiah
- and he changed
- Eliakim
- and he changed
- Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim
- Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim
- Egypt, and later
- Joahaz died

ULT

³⁴ Then Pharaoh Necho made Eliakim, the son of Josiah, king in place of Josiah his father, and he turned his name into Jehoiakim. But he took Jehoahaz and he came into Egypt, and he died there.

UST

³⁴ King Necho appointed another son of Josiah, Eliakim, to be the new king, and he changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim. Then he took Joahaz to Egypt, and later Joahaz died there in Egypt.

2 Kings 23:35

Jehoikim taxed the land

Alternate translation: "Jehoikim collected taxes from the people who owned land"

people of the land

This could mean: (1) "the people who lived in the land of Judah" or (2) "the richest and most powerful of those who lived in Judah."

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the silver
- the silver
- the silver
- and the gold
- the gold
- Jehoiakim
- the land
- the land (2)
- the people of

Translation Words - UST

- and less from the poor people
- silver
- King Jehoiakim collected a tax
- Judah
- from the people of (2)
- from the people of
- and less from the poor people
- and less from the poor people
- and gold from them

ULT

³⁵ Now the silver and the gold Jehoiakim gave to Pharaoh. Only he assessed the land in order to give the silver according to the mouth of Pharaoh, each man according to his assessment, he extracted forcibly, the silver and the gold, the people of the land in order to give to Pharaoh Neco.

UST

³⁵ King Jehoiakim collected a tax from the people of Judah. He collected more from the rich people and less from the poor people. He collected silver and gold from them, in order to pay to the king of Egypt what he commanded them to give.

2 Kings 23:36

Zebidah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pedaiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rumah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jehoiakim
- was a son of
- in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jehoiakim was twenty
- when he
- from Jerusalem

ULT

³⁶ Jehoiakim was a son of 25 years upon his beginning to reign, and he reigned 11 years in Jerusalem. Now the name of his mother was Zebidah, the daughter of Pedaiah from Rumah.

UST

³⁶ Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for eleven years. His mother was Zebidah, the daughter of Pedaiah from the city of Rumah.

2 Kings 23:37

did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his ancestors](#)

ULT

³⁷ However he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), like everything that [his fathers](#) had done.

UST

³⁷ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), as [his ancestors](#) had done.

2 Kings 24

2 Kings 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

These last two chapters are the final defeat of Judah and the beginning of their exile to Babylon.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's punishment

God punished Judah because of their sin. The Babylonians conquer Jerusalem and carry away all the craftsmen, soldiers and wealthy. They make Zedekiah the king. He was not truly a king because he lacked absolute authority. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

2 Kings 24:1

In Jehoiakim's days

Alternate translation: "During the time that Jehoiakim ruled Judah"

attacked Judah

You may need to make explicit what happened after Nebuchadnezzar attacked Judah. Alternate translation: "attacked and defeated Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Babylon](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [a servant](#)
- [Then he turned back](#)
- [and he rebelled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of](#)
- [King Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [of Babylon invaded Judah](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [was required to](#)
- [pay much tribute to King Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [rebelled](#)

ULT

¹ In his days, [Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon](#), came up, and [Jehoiakim](#) became [a servant](#) to him, three years. [Then he turned back and he rebelled](#) against him.

UST

¹ While Jehoiakim was ruling Judah, [the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invaded Judah](#). They defeated the Judean army, and as a result, [Jehoiakim was required to pay much tribute to King Nebuchadnezzar](#). But after three years, Jehoiakim [rebelled](#).

2 Kings 24:2

This was in conformity with the word of Yahweh that had been spoken through his servants the prophets

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "This was according to the word of Yahweh that his servants the prophets had spoken" or "This was exactly what Yahweh had told his servants the prophets to say would happen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Chaldeans
- Moab
- the sons of
- against Judah
- to destroy it
- by the hand of
- his servants
- the prophets

Translation Words - UST

- Then Yahweh
- Yahweh
- sent...of Judah
- to warn
- from Babylonia
- and from the Moab
- and Ammon people groups
- to attack the people
- his prophets
- his prophets

ULT

² Then [Yahweh](#) sent against him raiding bands of [Chaldeans](#), and raiding bands from Aram, and raiding bands from [Moab](#), and raiding bands of [the sons of Ammon](#). Now he sent them [against Judah to destroy it](#), according to the word of [Yahweh](#) that he had spoken [by the hand of his servants, the prophets](#).

UST

² Then Yahweh sent raiders from [Babylonia](#) and Aram, and from the [Moab and Ammon people groups](#), to attack the people of [Judah](#) and kill them, just as [Yahweh](#) had told [his prophets to warn](#) the people would happen.

2 Kings 24:3

It was certainly at the mouth of Yahweh

Some versions have, "It was certainly because of the wrath of Yahweh," which is just as good a reading of the original text. If translators have access to versions in major languages in their region, they should probably follow their choice.

at the mouth of Yahweh

Here "mouth" represents Yahweh's command. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh had commanded" (See: [Metonymy](#))

remove them out of his sight

Alternate translation: "get rid of them" or "destroy them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [against Judah](#)
- [his faces](#)
- [because of the sins of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah just](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to destroy the people of Judah](#)
- [had committed](#)

ULT

³ Certainly it was according to the mouth of [Yahweh against Judah](#), to remove out away from [his faces](#), [because of the sins of](#) Manasseh, in accordance with all that he had done, ^[1]

UST

³ These things happened to the people [of Judah just](#) as [Yahweh](#) had commanded. He decided [to destroy the people of Judah](#) because of the many sins that King Manasseh [had committed](#).

2 Kings 24:4

innocent blood that he shed

Blood is a metonym for innocent life, and shedding blood is a metonym for killing innocent people. Alternate translation: "innocent people whom he killed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood

Blood is a metonym for innocent life, and shedding blood is a metonym for killing innocent people. Alternate translation: "he killed many innocent people in Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- innocent
- with...blood
- Jerusalem
- innocent
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Manasseh had even caused...people in Jerusalem to be killed
- innocent
- Manasseh had even caused...people in Jerusalem to be killed
- Manasseh had even caused...people in Jerusalem to be killed
- and Yahweh would...forgive that

ULT

⁴ and also [innocent](#) blood that he had spilled, and he had filled [Jerusalem](#) with [innocent blood](#), so [Yahweh](#) was not willing to forgive.

UST

⁴ [Manasseh had even caused](#) many [innocent people in Jerusalem to be killed](#), and [Yahweh would not forgive that](#).

2 Kings 24:5

are they not written ... Judah?

This is written as a rhetorical question because at the time this was written people were already aware of this information. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. It can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are indeed written ... Judah.” or “you can find them ... Judah” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [of the kings of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [while Jehoiakim was king](#)
- [of the events of the Kings](#)
- [of Judah](#)

ULT

⁵ Now the rest of the matters concerning [Jehoiakim](#), and all that he did, are they not written in the scroll of the chronicles of the days [of the kings of Judah](#)?

UST

⁵ The other things that happened [while Jehoiakim was king](#), and all the things that he did, are written in the book [of the events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 24:6

slept with his ancestors

Sleeping is a euphemism for dying. Alternate translation: “died and was buried along with his ancestors” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [his fathers](#)
- [his son](#)
- [and...became king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Jehoiakim died](#)
- [When Jehoiakim died](#)
- [his son](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

⁶ Then [Jehoiakim](#) slept with [his fathers](#), and Jehoiachin [his son became king](#) in his place.

UST

⁶ [When Jehoiakim died](#), [his son](#) Jehoiachin became [the king](#).

2 Kings 24:7

The king of Egypt did not attack any more out of his land

Alternate translation: "The king of Egypt did not come out of his land any more to attack other people groups"

Translation Words - ULT

- king of
- the king of (2)
- belonging to the king of
- Egypt
- Egypt
- Egypt
- Babylon
- the Euphrates

Translation Words - UST

- The army of the king of Babylon
- the army of Egypt
- Egypt in the south
- Egypt
- The king of
- the king of (2)
- So the army of
- the Euphrates

ULT

⁷ Then king of Egypt did not continue again to go forth out of his land, because the king of Babylon had taken from the river of Egypt as far as the Euphrates River, everything that had been belonging to the king of Egypt.

UST

⁷ The army of the king of Babylon defeated the army of Egypt. The king of Babylon took control of all the area that the Egyptians formerly controlled, from the brook at the border of Egypt in the south to the Euphrates River in the north. So the army of the king of Egypt did not return to attack Judah again.

2 Kings 24:8

Nehushta ... Elnathan

Nehushta is the name of a woman. Elnathan is the name of a man.
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- was a son of
- in Jerusalem
- from Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- of
- a man from Jerusalem
- in Jerusalem

ULT

⁸ Jehoiachin [was a son of](#) 18 years upon his beginning to reign, and he reigned [in Jerusalem](#) three months. Now the name of his mother was Nehushta, the daughter of Elnathan [from Jerusalem](#).

UST

⁸ Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he became the king of Judah. His mother's name was Nehushta. She was the daughter [of a man from Jerusalem](#) named Elnathan. Jehoiachin ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for only three months.

2 Kings 24:9

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he did all that his father had done

Here "all" is a generalization. It means he did the same sinful things as his father. Alternate translation: "he committed the same kinds of sins his father had committed" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

⁹ Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#), like all that [his father](#) had done.

UST

⁹ Jehoiachin did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), all the evil things that [his father](#) had done.

2 Kings 24:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the servants of
- Nebuchadnezzar
- the king of
- Babylon
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- some officers
- of King Nebuchadnezzar
- of Babylon
- along with the whole Babylonian army
- to Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁰ At that time the servants of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, came up against Jerusalem and the city came into the state of besiegement.

UST

¹⁰ While Jehoiachin was king, some officers of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon came along with the whole Babylonian army to Jerusalem, and they surrounded the city.

2 Kings 24:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Nebuchadnezzar
- the king of
- Babylon
- while his servants

Translation Words - UST

- While they were doing that...the
- Nebuchadnezzar himself
- Nebuchadnezzar himself
- Nebuchadnezzar himself

ULT

¹¹ Then Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, came to the city while his servants were besieging it,

UST

¹¹ While they were doing that, Nebuchadnezzar himself came to the city.

2 Kings 24:12

Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, his mother, his servants, his princes, and his officers

You may need to make explicit why Jehoiachin went out to meet Nebuchadnezzar. Alternate translation: "Jehoiachin the king of Judah, with his mother, his servants, his princes, and his officers, went out to where the king of Babylon was, to surrender to him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The king of Babylon captured him in the eighth year of his own reign

Alternate translation: "After the king of Babylon had been king for more than seven years, he captured Jehoiachin"

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Judah
- and...went out
- Babylon
- Babylon (2)
- and his servants
- and his princes
- of his reigning

Translation Words - UST

- Then King Jehoiachin
- Then King Jehoiachin
- the
- king (2)
- Then King Jehoiachin
- his mother, his advisors, important officers, palace officials all surrendered
- his mother, his advisors, important officers, palace officials all surrendered
- Babylonian army
- to Babylon (2)
- When Nebuchadnezzar had been...for

ULT

¹² and Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, and his mother, and his servants, and his princes, and his eunuchs. So the king of Babylon took him in the eighth year of his reigning.

UST

¹² Then King Jehoiachin, his mother, his advisors, important officers, palace officials all surrendered to the Babylonian army. When Nebuchadnezzar had been king for eight years, he captured Jehoiachin and took him to Babylon.

2 Kings 24:13

Solomon king of Israel had made

You might want to translate this so the reader understands that Solomon might have had others help him do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he brought out
- the valuables in
- the house of
- the house of (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Yahweh
- the king
- the king of
- gold
- Solomon
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh's
- Yahweh (2)
- temple
- Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers took to Babylon
- valuable things from
- temple and from
- palace (2)
- the king's
- the
- the king's
- the king's
- gold items

ULT

13 Then he brought out from there all the valuables in the house of Yahweh, and the valuables in the house of the king, and he cut into pieces all the vessels of gold that Solomon, the king of Israel, had made in the temple of Yahweh, just as Yahweh had spoken.

UST

13 Just as Yahweh had said would happen, Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers took to Babylon all the valuable things from Yahweh's temple and from the king's palace. They cut up all the gold items that King Solomon had put in the temple.

2 Kings 24:14

He took into exile all Jerusalem

Here "Jerusalem" is a metonym for the people who lived there. And, "all" is a generalization. It means all the most important people
Alternate translation: "Nebuchadnezzar took all the important people away from Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

the craftsmen and the smiths

Alternate translation: "the men who knew how to make and repair things that are made from metal"

No one was left except the poorest people in the land

This can be translated as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "Only the poorest people in the land still lived there" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the princes](#)
- [the mighty ones of](#)
- [the people of the](#)
- [land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They took from Jerusalem](#)
- [the important officials](#)
- [and the best soldiers](#)
- [people](#)
- [in Judah](#)

ULT

14 Then he led into exile all [Jerusalem](#), and all [the princes](#), and all [the mighty ones of](#) the army, exiling 10,000, and all of the skilled worker and the smith. No one was left except the poorest of [the people of the land](#).

UST

14 [They took from Jerusalem](#) to Babylon ten thousand people, including [the important officials and the best soldiers](#) and the people who made and repaired things that were made of metal. Only the very poor [people](#) were left [in Judah](#).

2 Kings 24:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- into Babylon
- into Babylon
- the king
- the king
- the mighty ones of
- the land
- he led
- from Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers seized King
- the
- to Babylon
- to Babylon
- and all
- important people
- He took them
- from Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁵ Thus he exiled Jehoiachin **into Babylon**, along with the mother of **the king**, and the wives of **the king**, and his eunuchs, and **the mighty ones of the land**, he **led** an exile from Jerusalem into Babylon.

UST

¹⁵ Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers seized **King** Jehoiachin and took him **to Babylon**, along with his wives and officials, his mother, **and all the important people**. **He took them** into exile **from Jerusalem to Babylon**.

2 Kings 24:16

seven thousand ... one thousand

"7,000...1,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were mighty ones](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Babylon](#)
- [at Babylon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They also took](#)
- [They also took](#)
- [Babylon](#)
- [were able to fight in](#)

ULT

16 Also all of the men of the army, 7,000, and the skilled workman, and the smith, 1,000, that all [were mighty ones](#), who were experienced in warfare, however [the king of Babylon](#) brought them into exile [at Babylon](#).

UST

16 [They also took](#) to [Babylon](#) all seven thousand soldiers and one thousand men who knew how to make and repair things that are made from metal. All of these people whom they took [were able to fight in](#) battle.

2 Kings 24:17

Mattaniah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now...made...king
- the king of
- Babylon
- his name
- into Zedekiah

Translation Words - UST

- Then the king
- of Babylon
- of Babylon
- Mattaniah's name
- to Zedekiah

ULT

¹⁷ Now the king of Babylon made Mattaniah, his uncle, king in his place, and he turned his name into Zedekiah.

UST

¹⁷ Then the king of Babylon appointed Jehoiachin's uncle, Mattaniah, to be the king of Judah, and he changed Mattaniah's name to Zedekiah.

2 Kings 24:18

twenty-one ... eleven

"21...11" (See: [Numbers](#))

Hamutal

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeremiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Libnah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [was a son of](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Zedekiah](#)
- [was twenty](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [of a man named Jeremiah](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [Zedekiah](#) was a son of 21 years upon his beginning to reign and he reigned 11 years [in Jerusalem](#). Now the name of his mother was Hamutal, the daughter of [Jeremiah](#) from Libnah.

UST

¹⁸ [When Zedekiah](#) was twenty-one years old, he became king, and he ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for eleven years. His mother's name was Hamutal. She was the daughter [of a man named Jeremiah](#) from the city of Libnah.

2 Kings 24:19

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [what was evil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Now he did [what was evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#) like everything that [Jehoiakim](#) had done.

UST

¹⁹ But Zedekiah did many things [that](#) [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), just as [Jehoiakim](#) had done.

2 Kings 24:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- in Jerusalem
- his faces
- Zedekiah
- Then...rebelled
- against the king of
- Babylon

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- of Jerusalem
- This is what happened when Zedekiah
- rebelled
- against the
- king
- of Babylon

ULT

²⁰ For because of the anger of Yahweh it happened in Jerusalem and in Judah, until he cast them out away from his faces. Then Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

24:3 ^[1].

UST

²⁰ Because Yahweh was very angry, he finally drove the people out of Jerusalem and the other places in Judah and sent them to Babylon. This is what happened when Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

2 Kings 25

2 Kings 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the final defeat of Judah and the beginning of their exile to Babylon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Zedekiah's revolt

Zedekiah revolted against the Babylonians, so they came and completely destroyed Jerusalem. They tore down the city walls and took the rest of the people to Babylon as slaves, except the very poorest people remained.

2 Kings 25:1

in the ninth year

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month

This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the end of December on Western calendars. This is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

came with all his army against Jerusalem

The name "Jerusalem" is a metonym for the people who lived in it. Alternate translation: "came with his whole army to fight against the people of Jerusalem" or "came with his whole army to conquer Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of his reign
- Nebuchadnezzar
- the king of
- Babylon
- his army
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- ruling
- King Nebuchadnezzar
- with his whole army
- They surrounded
- Jerusalem
- Against the walls of

ULT

¹ Now it happened in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, on the tenth of the month, Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon came, he along with all his army against Jerusalem. Then he encamped around it, and they built a siege wall up to it all around.

UST

¹ After Zedekiah had been ruling for nine years, on the tenth day of the tenth month of that year, King Nebuchadnezzar arrived with his whole army. They surrounded Jerusalem. Against the walls of the city, they built ramps made of earth, so that they could climb up and attack the city.

2 Kings 25:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the king
- Zedekiah

Translation Words - UST

- It took them two years
- It took them two years

ULT

² Thus the city came under the seige until the eleventh year of the king Zedekiah.

UST

² It took them two years to do that.

2 Kings 25:3

the ninth day of the fourth month

This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. The ninth day is near the end of June on Western calendars. This is during the dry season when there is very little or no rain. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

the people of the land

These are the inhabitants of Jerusalem, including refugees from the surrounding villages that fled to Jerusalem when the war started.

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- for the people of
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- people's
- people's
- food

ULT

³ On the ninth of the month, then the famine took hold in the city so there was not [bread for the people of the land](#).

UST

³ After Zedekiah had been ruling for eleven years, by the ninth day of the fourth month of that year, the famine had become very bad. All the [people's food](#) was gone.

2 Kings 25:4

Then the city was broken into

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then the Babylonian army broke into the city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all the fighting men

Alternate translation: "all the warriors"

by the way of the gate

Alternate translation: "by using the gate"

the Chaldeans

Some translations use "Chaldeans" and others use "Babylonians." Both terms refer to the same people group.

The king went in the direction of

Alternate translation: "King Zedekiah also fled and he went toward"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a gate](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the Arabah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the gate](#)
- [the king's park](#)
- [down to the plain along the Jordan River](#)

ULT

⁴ Then the city was breached, and all the men of the battle during the night were at a path at [a gate](#) between the two walls, that were along the garden of [the king](#). Now Chaldeans were upon the city all around, yet he went the way of [the Arabah](#).

UST

⁴ Then the Babylonian soldiers broke through part of the city wall, and that enabled them to enter the city. All the soldiers of Judah tried to escape. But the Babylonian soldiers surrounded the city, so the king and the soldiers of Judah waited until it was nighttime. Then they fled through [the gate](#) that was between the two walls near [the king's park](#). They ran across the fields and started to go [down to the plain along the Jordan River](#).

2 Kings 25:5

All his army was scattered away from him

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "His whole army ran away from him" or "The Chaldeans chased away his whole army" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the army of
- his army
- Chaldeans
- the king
- Jericho

Translation Words - UST

- But the Babylonian soldiers
- the king
- when he was by himself
- soldiers
- Jericho

ULT

⁵ However [the army of Chaldeans](#) pursued after [the king](#) and they overtook him in the desert-plain near [Jericho](#), as a result all [his army](#) was scattered away from him.

UST

⁵ But the Babylonian soldiers chased after them. They caught [the king when he was by himself](#) in the plains of [Jericho](#). He was by himself because all his [soldiers](#) had abandoned him.

2 Kings 25:6

Riblah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

passed sentence on him

Alternate translation: “decided what they would do to punish him”

Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- the king of
- Babylon
- judgment

Translation Words - UST

- King Zedekiah
- There the king
- of Babylon
- to punish

ULT

⁶ Thus they seized [the king](#) and they brought him up to [the king of Babylon](#) at Riblah, and they pronounced [judgment](#) upon him.

UST

⁶ The Babylonian soldiers took [King Zedekiah](#) to the city of Riblah in Babylonia. [There the king of Babylon](#) decided what they would do [to punish](#) him.

2 Kings 25:7

they slaughtered them before his eyes

The eyes are synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “they forced king Zedekiah to watch them kill his sons” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he put out his eyes

“Nebuchadnezzar put out Zedekiah’s eyes.” It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people might have helped Nebuchadnezzar do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Zedekiah
- Zedekiah
- to Babylon

Translation Words - UST

- The king of Babylon
- forced Zedekiah to watch as
- Zedekiah’s eyes
- the city of Babylon

ULT

⁷ Now they slaughtered [the sons of Zedekiah](#) before his eyes, then he put out the eyes of [Zedekiah](#), and he bound him with two bronze chains, and he brought him [to Babylon](#).

UST

⁷ [The king of Babylon forced Zedekiah to watch as](#) the Babylonian soldiers killed all of Zedekiah’s sons. Then they gouged out [Zedekiah’s eyes](#). They put bronze chains on his hands and feet and took him to [the city of Babylon](#).

2 Kings 25:8

in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month

This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The seventh day is near the end of July on Western calendars. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

the nineteenth year

This is the ordinal form of the number 19. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Nebuzaradan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the king
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon
- Babylon
- the servant of
- to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- after Nebuchadnezzar had been ruling
- He was one of King Nebuchadnezzar's officials
- the king (2)
- in Jerusalem
- He was one of King Nebuchadnezzar's officials
- the king
- He was one of King Nebuchadnezzar's officials
- men who guarded

ULT

⁸ Now in the fifth month, on the seventh of the month, it was in the 19th year, the year [of the king Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon](#), Nebuzaradan, chief of executioners, [the servant of the king of Babylon](#), came to Jerusalem.

UST

⁸ On the seventh day in the fifth month of that year, [after Nebuchadnezzar had been ruling](#) for nineteen years, Nebuzaradan arrived [in Jerusalem](#). [He was one of King Nebuchadnezzar's officials](#); he was in command of the [men who guarded the king](#).

2 Kings 25:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- the house of
- the houses of
- house
- Yahweh
- the king
- Jerusalem
- in the fire

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh's
- temple
- king's palace, and
- the houses
- buildings in the city
- the
- in Jerusalem
- So they burned down

ULT

⁹ Then he burned the house of Yahweh, and the house of the king, and all the houses of Jerusalem, indeed, every great house he burned in the fire.

UST

⁹ He ordered his soldiers to burn down Yahweh's temple, the king's palace, and all the houses in Jerusalem. So they burned down all the important buildings in the city.

2 Kings 25:10

As for all the walls around Jerusalem, all

Alternate translation: "This is what happened to all the walls around Jerusalem: all"

who were under

Alternate translation: "who were following the orders of"

Translation Words - ULT

- the army of
- the Chaldeans
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Then Nebuzaradan supervised the Babylonian
- Then Nebuzaradan supervised the Babylonian
- Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁰ Also all the army of the Chaldeans, who were with the chief of executioners, tore down the walls of Jerusalem all around.

UST

¹⁰ Then Nebuzaradan supervised the Babylonian soldiers as they tore down the walls surrounding Jerusalem.

2 Kings 25:11

As for the rest of the people ... city, those

Alternate translation: "This is what happened to the rest of the people ... city: those"

the rest of the people who were left in the city

Alternate translation: "the people who remained in the city"

deserted to the king

Alternate translation: "left the city and gone to be with the king"

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the king of
- Babylon
- led away into exile

Translation Words - UST

- took
- to Babylon
- the people who
- Babylonian army

ULT

¹¹ Now the rest of the people who had been left in the city, and the fallen ones, who had fallen to the king of Babylon, and the rest of the multitude, Nebuzaradan, chief of executioners, led away into exile.

UST

¹¹ After that, he and his soldiers took to Babylon the people who were still living in the city, the other people who lived in the region of Judah, and the soldiers who had previously surrendered to the Babylonian army.

2 Kings 25:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the land

Translation Words - UST

- in Judah

ULT

¹² But the chief of executioners did let some of the poorest of the land remain for vinedressers and for tillers.

UST

¹² But Nebuzaradan allowed some of the very poor people to stay in Judah to take care of the vineyards and to plant crops in the fields.

2 Kings 25:13

As for the bronze pillars ... Yahweh, the Chaldeans

Alternate translation: "This is what happened to the bronze pillars ... Yahweh: the Chaldeans"

the stands

This refers to the large, moveable bronze stands with bronze wheels and axles. "the moveable bronze stands" or "the bronze stands with wheels"

the bronze sea

Alternate translation: "the large bronze basin"

broke them into pieces

Alternate translation: "cut them into pieces" or "chopped them up into small pieces"

Translation Words - ULT

- the pillars of
- bronze
- bronze
- their bronze
- were in the house of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- were in the house of
- the Chaldeans
- to Babylon

Translation Words - UST

- The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars...all...which were in the
- The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars...all...which were in the
- the bronze
- temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze
- temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze
- temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze
- to Babylon
- The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars...all...which were in the
- The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars...all...which were in the
- temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze

ULT

¹³ Now the pillars of bronze that were in the house of Yahweh, and the pedestals and the sea of bronze that were in the house of Yahweh, the Chaldeans broke into pieces and they carried their bronze to Babylon.

UST

¹³ The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars, the bronze stands with wheels, and the large bronze tank known as "The Sea," all of which were in the temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze to Babylon.

2 Kings 25:14

shovels

A shovel was a tool that was used to clean the altar, typically used to move big piles of dirt, sand, or ashes.

with which the priests had served in the temple

Alternate translation: "which the priests had used in the temple service"

Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- they were ministering

Translation Words - UST

- the other bronze items
- the Israelite priests had used for offering sacrifices in the temple

ULT

¹⁴ Also the pots, and the shovels, and the snuffers, and the spoons, and all the vessels of bronze that they were ministering with them, they took.

UST

¹⁴ They also took the pots, the shovels, the instruments for snuffing out the lamps, the dishes, and all the other bronze items that the Israelite priests had used for offering sacrifices in the temple.

2 Kings 25:15

The pots for removing ashes

You may need to make explicit which ashes are spoken of. Alternate translation: "The pots that were used for removing ashes from the altar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- were...gold
- purest
- were...silver
- purest

Translation Words - UST

- and all the other items made of gold
- and all the other items made of gold
- silver
- silver

ULT

¹⁵ Even the firepans and the bowls that were **purest gold**, and that were **purest silver**, the chief of executioners took.

UST

¹⁵ The soldiers also took away the pans for the ashes of the sacrifices, the basins, **and all the other items made of gold or silver**.

2 Kings 25:16

the sea

“the large bronze basin.” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:13](#).

the stands

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [The...pillars](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The bronze from the two pillars](#)
- [for the temple](#)
- [for the temple](#)
- [when Solomon was the king of Israel](#)

ULT

¹⁶ The two [pillars](#), the one sea, and the pedestals that [Solomon](#) had made [for the house of Yahweh](#), there could not be a weighing on account of the bronze of all these vessels.

UST

¹⁶ [The bronze from the two pillars](#), the bronze stands with wheels, and the huge tank that was called “The Sea,” were all so very heavy that they could not be weighed. These things had been made [for the temple when Solomon was the king of Israel](#).

2 Kings 25:17

eighteen cubits ... three cubits

A cubit was 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “about 8.3 meters ... about 1.4 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

a capital of bronze

Alternate translation: “an artistic, bronze design” or “a bronze piece with designs”

latticework

This was a design made of crossed strips that looked like a net.

all made of bronze

Alternate translation: “completely made of bronze”

Translation Words - ULT

- the...pillar
- were on the...pillar
- was bronze
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- and one-third meters high. The bronze capital
- bronze
- of each pillar
- chains connecting bronze pomegranates

ULT

¹⁷ 18 in cubit was the height of the first pillar, and the capital on it was bronze. Now the height of the capital was three cubits, with latticework and pomegranates on the capital all around, that was entirely bronze. Also just as these were on the second pillar corresponding to the latticework.

UST

¹⁷ Each of the pillars was eight and one-third meters high. The bronze capital of each pillar was one and one-third meters high. They were each decorated all around with something that looked like a net made of bronze chains connecting bronze pomegranates.

2 Kings 25:18

The commander of the bodyguard

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:8](#).

Seraiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second priest

These words refer to Zephaniah. Another possible meaning is “the priest under Seraiah.”

gatekeepers

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the high](#)
- [priest](#)
- [a...priest](#) (2)
- [Zephaniah](#)
- [the...keepers of](#)
- [the threshold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Seraiah, the high priest...his](#)
- [Seraiah, the high priest...his](#)
- [assistant](#) (2)
- [Zephaniah](#)
- [who guarded](#)
- [the entrance](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Also the chief of the executioners took Seraiah [the high priest](#), along with [Zephaniah](#), a second [priest](#), and the three [keepers of the threshold](#).

UST

¹⁸ Nebuzaradan took with him to Babylon [Seraiah, the high priest](#); [Zephaniah, his assistant](#); and the three men [who guarded the entrance](#) to the temple.

2 Kings 25:19

took prisoner

Alternate translation: "captured and kept from escaping"

an officer who was in charge of soldiers

Other translations may read "a eunuch who was in charge of soldiers." A eunuch is a man whose private parts have been removed.

officer responsible for drafting men into the army

This could mean: (1) the officer forced men to become soldiers or (2) the officer wrote down the names of the men who became soldiers.

Translation Words - ULT

- was an officer
- the faces of
- the king
- the scribe
- the prince of
- the people of
- out of the people of
- the land
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- From the people
- join the army, and sixty other important Judean men
- king's
- advisors...to
- the chief
- secretary of the army
- commander
- join the army, and sixty other important Judean men
- join the army, and sixty other important Judean men

ULT

¹⁹ Then from the city he took one eunuch because he **was an officer** over the men of the battle, and five men from those seeing **the faces of the king**, who were found in the city and **the scribe, the prince of** the host, the one who drafted **the people of the land**, and 60, each man **out of the people of the land** who were found in the city.

UST

¹⁹ **From the people** who were still left in Jerusalem, he took one officer from the Judean army, five of the **king's advisors, the chief secretary of the army commander** who was in charge of recruiting men **to join the army, and sixty other important Judean men**.

2 Kings 25:20

Nebuzaradan

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:8](#).

Riblah

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Babylon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then Nebuzaradan, the chief of the executioners, took them and he had them go to [the king of Babylon](#) at Riblah.

UST

²⁰ Nebuzaradan took them all to [the king of Babylon](#) at the city of Riblah.

2 Kings 25:21

put them to death

This is a polite way of saying “killed them.” It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people might have helped the king do this. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

In this way, Judah went out of its land into exile

Alternate translation: “So Judah was taken into exile out of its land”

Judah went out of its land

Judah, the name of the people group, is a metonym for the people themselves. Alternate translation: “the people of Judah went out of their land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Babylon](#)
- [and he put them to death](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)
- [executed](#)
- [That is what happened when the people of](#)

ULT

²¹ However [the king of Babylon](#) struck them down [and he put them to death](#) at Riblah in the land of Hamath. Thus [Judah](#) went into exile out away from its land.

UST

²¹ There at the city of Riblah, in the province of Hamath, [the king of Babylon](#) commanded that they all be [executed](#). [That is what happened when the people of Judah](#) were taken forcefully from their land to Babylon.

2 Kings 25:22

Gedaliah ... Ahikam ... Shaphan

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the people
- Judah
- Nebuchadnezzar
- the king of
- Babylon
- he even appointed
- the son of
- the son of (2)

Translation Words - UST

- King
- King
- Then...Nebuchadnezzar
- to be the governor of the...who...still allowed...Judah
- people
- to live
- Gedaliah was a son of
- of (2)

ULT

²² Now the people who were remaining in the land of Judah, who Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon had allowed to remain, he even appointed Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, over them.

UST

²² Then King Nebuchadnezzar appointed a man named Gedaliah to be the governor of the people who he still allowed to live in Judah. Gedaliah was a son of Ahikam and a grandson of Shaphan.

2 Kings 25:23

Ishmael ... Nethaniah ... Johanan ... Kareah ... Seraiah ... Tanhumeth ... Jaazaniah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Netophathite

This refers to a person who is a descendant of a man named Netophah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakathite

This refers to a person who comes from a place called Maakah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the princes of
- the king of
- Babylon
- had appointed
- at the Mizpah
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of
- the son of (3)

Translation Words - UST

- commanders
- in Judah
- the king of
- Babylon
- at the city of Mizpah
- son of
- son of (2)
- son of
- from the region of Maacah (3)

ULT

²³ When all the [princes of](#) the armies, they and the men, heard that [the king of Babylon had appointed](#) Gedaliah, then they came to Gedaliah [at the Mizpah](#) with Ishmael, [the son of](#) Nethaniah, and Johanan, [the son of](#) Kareah, and Seraiah, [the son of](#) Tanhumeth, the Netophathite, and Jaazaniah, [the son of](#) the Maakathite, they and their men.

UST

²³ When all the army [commanders in Judah](#) and their soldiers found out that [the king of Babylon](#) had appointed Gedaliah to be the governor, they met with him [at the city of Mizpah](#). These commanders were Ishmael [son of](#) Nethaniah; Johanan [son of](#) Kareah; Seraiah [son of](#) Tanhumeth, from the city of Netophah; and Jaazaniah, [from the region of Maacah](#).

2 Kings 25:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...swore an oath
- Do...be afraid
- the king of
- Babylon

Translation Words - UST

- solemnly promised them
- afraid
- the king
- of Babylon

ULT

²⁴ Then Gedaliah **swore an oath** to them and to their men, and he said to them, "Do not **be afraid** of the servants of the Chaldeans. Dwell in the land and serve **the king of Babylon**, and he will be good to you."

UST

²⁴ Gedaliah **solemnly promised them** that the officials from Babylon were not planning to harm them. He said, "You may live in this land without being **afraid**; you should obey **the king of Babylon**. If you do, everything will go well for you."

2 Kings 25:25

the seventh month

This is the seventh month on the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Elishama

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#) (2)
- [from the seed of](#)
- [and as a result he died](#)
- [the Judeans](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whose grandfather Elishama was in the family](#)
- [whose grandfather Elishama was in the family](#)
- [whose grandfather Elishama was in the family](#) (2)
- [and all the men...men from Judah](#)
- [and all the men...men from Judah](#)

ULT

²⁵ But it happened in the seventh month Ishmael, [the son of](#) Nethaniah, [the son of](#) Elishama, [from the seed of](#) the royalty, came with ten men with him and he struck down Gedaliah [and as a result he died](#), along with [the Judeans](#) and the Chaldeans who were with him at the Mizpah.

UST

²⁵ But in the seventh month of that year, Ishmael, [whose grandfather Elishama was in the family](#) descended from King David, went to Mizpah along with ten other men. They assassinated Gedaliah [and all the men](#) with him. There were also [men from Judah](#) and men from Babylon whom they assassinated.

2 Kings 25:26

all the people

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “many people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

from the least to the greatest

This is a merism that means “everyone,” which is a generalization. Alternate translation: “from the least important to the most important” or “everyone” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- and the princes of
- Egypt
- they were afraid
- the Chaldeans

Translation Words - UST

- people and
- commanders
- were very afraid
- of what the Babylonians would do
- Egypt

ULT

²⁶ Then all [the people](#), from least and up to great, [and the princes of](#) the troops, arose and they entered [Egypt](#), because [they were afraid](#) of the faces of [the Chaldeans](#).

UST

²⁶ Then many of the people from Judah, important [people and](#) unimportant ones, and the army [commanders were very afraid of what the Babylonians would do](#) to them, so they fled to [Egypt](#).

2 Kings 25:27

in the thirty-seventh year

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the twelfth month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month

This is the twelfth month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-seventh day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Awel-Marduk

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the...of...king
- king...the...of (2)
- Judah
- Judah
- Babylon
- the head of
- out of the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the king of Babylon
- after King
- the (2)
- of Judah
- the
- to Babylon
- Jehoiachin
- from prison

ULT

²⁷ Now it happened in the 37th year of the exile of Jehoiachin, [the king of Judah](#), in the 12th month, on the 27th of the month, Awel-Marduk, the [king of Babylon](#), lifted up [the head of Jehoiachin](#), the [king of Judah](#), [out of the house of](#) imprisonment, in the year of his beginning to reign.

UST

²⁷ Thirty-seven years [after King Jehoiachin of Judah](#) had been taken [to Babylon](#), Nebuchadnezzar's son Awel-Marduk became [the king of Babylon](#). He was kind to Jehoiachin, and on the twenty-seventh day of [the](#) twelfth month of that same year, he released [Jehoiachin from prison](#).

2 Kings 25:28

a seat more honorable than that of the other kings

Giving a good place at the dining table is a metonym for honoring him. Alternate translation: "more honor than the other kings" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [kindly](#)
- [his seat](#)
- [the seat of](#)
- [the kings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He...honored...more than](#)
- [He...honored...more than](#)
- [kindly](#)
- [the other kings](#)

ULT

²⁸ Then he spoke [kindly](#) with him and he set [his seat](#) higher than [the seat of the kings](#) who were with him in Babylon.

UST

²⁸ [He](#) always spoke [kindly](#) to Jehoiachin and [honored](#) him [more than the other kings](#) who had been taken to Babylon.

2 Kings 25:29

removed Jehoiachin's prison clothes

The act of removing Jehoiachin's prison clothes represents making him a free man. (See: [Metonymy](#))

at the king's table

Alternate translation: "with the king and his officials"

Translation Words - ULT

- [he would eat](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [allowed Jehoiachin](#)
- [to eat](#)

ULT

²⁹ He also changed his garments of imprisonment, and [he would eat bread](#) continually in his presence all the days of his life.

UST

²⁹ He gave Jehoiachin new clothes to replace the clothes that he had been wearing in prison, and he [allowed Jehoiachin to eat](#) at the king's table every day for the rest of his life.

2 Kings 25:30

A regular food allowance was given to him

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The king made sure that he had a regular food allowance" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

A regular food allowance

Alternate translation: "Money to buy food"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The king](#)

ULT

³⁰ Even his meal allowance was a regular meal allowance. A provision of a day in its day was given to him from [the king](#) all the days of his life.

UST

³⁰ The king of Babylon also gave him money every day, so that he could buy the things that he needed. [The king](#) continued to do that until Jehoiachin died.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 29

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:27](#); [10:16](#); [15:5](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [21:16](#); [22:19](#); [23:26](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:18](#); [2:9](#); [2:22](#); [3:17](#); [4:13](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#); [5:17](#); [6:5](#); [6:25](#); [7:1](#); [7:11](#); [7:16](#); [8:23](#); [8:24](#); [8:29](#); [9:7](#); [9:15](#); [9:20](#); [9:27](#); [10:17](#); [10:21](#); [10:24](#); [11:3](#); [11:8](#); [12:3](#); [12:9](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:12](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:11](#); [15:15](#); [15:26](#); [15:31](#); [15:35](#); [16:10](#); [16:19](#); [16:20](#); [18:30](#); [21:17](#); [21:25](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:7](#); [22:13](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:22](#); [23:23](#); [23:28](#); [24:2](#); [24:5](#); [25:4](#); [25:5](#); [25:30](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:2; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:8; 1:9; 1:13; 1:14; 1:16; 1:17; 2:9; 2:14; 2:16; 2:17; 2:19; 3:1; 3:4; 3:7; 3:12; 3:17; 3:19; 3:25; 3:27; 4:4; 4:7; 4:8; 4:13; 4:19; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:27; 4:31; 4:39; 5:5; 5:7; 5:16; 5:17; 5:22; 5:23; 6:2; 6:10; 6:12; 6:15; 6:19; 6:23; 6:31; 6:32; 6:33; 7:1; 7:10; 7:13; 7:14; 8:3; 8:5; 8:6; 8:12; 8:15; 8:16; 8:18; 8:19; 8:21; 8:22; 8:25; 8:27; 9:5; 9:9; 9:10; 9:13; 9:15; 9:24; 9:25; 9:26; 9:29; 9:33; 9:34; 10:5; 10:6; 10:9; 10:19; 10:21; 10:25; 11:1; 11:7; 11:15; 12:3; 12:16; 13:14; 13:17; 13:21; 13:23; 14:3; 14:4; 14:5; 14:14; 15:1; 15:8; 15:12; 15:13; 15:15; 15:17; 15:23; 15:27; 15:29; 15:30; 15:32; 15:37; 16:1; 16:3; 16:18; 18:14; 19:15; 19:28; 20:9; 20:10; 20:11; 20:16; 21:5; 21:6; 22:14; 23:11; 23:14; 23:15; 23:19; 23:20; 24:1; 24:12; 24:13; 25:7; 25:15; 25:21)

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
 - > * Setting includes:
 - > * where the story takes place
 - > * when the story takes place
 - > * who is present when the story begins
 - > * what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said"

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

And Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:21](#); [8:4](#); [9:14](#); [9:16](#); [13:20](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

[Fractions](#)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[¹] two and a half cubits
[²] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:13](#); [25:17](#))

Biblical Money

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

█ The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

█ "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

█ "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

█ "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

█ [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii**,¹ and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

█ ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [18:14](#); [23:33](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only 22 liters³.”

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#); [7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

■ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

■ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

■ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

■ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

■ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

■ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1"

The footnote would look like:

■ [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#))

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown\]\]](#)

Examples From the Bible

Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

- (1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
- (2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
- (3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

.A man's name in Hebrew letters — זְפַנְיָהּ
"Zephaniah" — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah — This is a man's name.
"Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah — If your language does not have the "z," you could use "s." If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f." Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay."
"Sefania"
"Sefanaia"
"Sefanaya"

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:9](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look. here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:8](#); [14:9](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-parts-of-speech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:21](#); [3:14](#); [5:17](#); [10:21](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [24:14](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

"You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

"He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

"... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, "**Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!**
We are perishing!"

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:36](#); [19:16](#); [23:3](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:13](#); [5:17](#); [5:23](#); [6:25](#); [6:32](#); [9:7](#))

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a comment about what happened in the story
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:18](#); [7:19](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

"They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:31](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [8:24](#); [9:8](#); [9:33](#); [10:6](#); [10:11](#); [10:35](#); [13:9](#); [13:13](#); [14:16](#); [14:22](#); [14:29](#); [15:7](#); [15:22](#); [15:38](#); [16:20](#); [21:18](#); [22:20](#); [24:6](#); [25:21](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:15](#); [19:33](#); [22:19](#))

Fractions

Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

... **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
- (2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

... then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

- (2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

... **two-thirds of a shekel** ... (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)

... **eight grams** of silver ... (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

... **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

six quarts of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

(2) Use the names for months that people know.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:25](#); [25:27](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you."

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said,
“For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** ¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:2; 1:3; 3:3; 3:11; 3:25; 4:8; 4:12; 4:42; 5:12; 5:20; 6:13; 6:24; 8:7; 8:8; 8:22; 8:26; 9:1; 9:2; 9:14; 9:21; 9:25; 9:27; 9:31; 9:36; 10:12; 10:15; 10:29; 10:32; 10:33; 10:35; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:18; 12:1; 12:17; 12:20; 12:21; 13:10; 13:17; 13:24; 13:25; 14:2; 14:7; 14:11; 14:13; 14:19; 14:22; 14:25; 15:2; 15:10; 15:13; 15:14; 15:16; 15:19; 15:22; 15:23; 15:25; 15:29; 15:30; 15:33; 15:37; 16:1; 16:5; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 17:1; 17:3; 17:4; 17:6; 17:24; 17:30; 17:31; 18:1; 18:2; 18:4; 18:9; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 18:18; 18:26; 18:34; 18:37; 19:2; 19:8; 19:9; 19:12; 19:13; 19:37; 20:12; 21:1; 21:18; 21:19; 21:26; 22:1; 22:3; 22:4; 22:8; 22:12; 22:14; 23:4; 23:8; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:29; 23:31; 23:33; 23:36; 24:8; 24:17; 24:18; 25:6; 25:8; 25:18; 25:22; 25:23; 25:25; 25:27)

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
 - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
 - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [7:15](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#); [14:21](#); [16:4](#); [17:10](#); [18:24](#); [19:24](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:24](#); [23:2](#); [24:9](#); [24:14](#); [25:26](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

■ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

■ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

■ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

■ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

■ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

■ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

■ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

■ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

■ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

■ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

■ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

■ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [Notes](#); [3:3](#); [3:11](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#); [4:13](#); [4:38](#); [5:22](#); [5:27](#); [6:1](#); [6:11](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:20](#); [6:32](#); [6:33](#); [8:8](#); [8:18](#); [8:27](#); [9:1](#); [9:32](#); [9:34](#); [10:6](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:20](#); [10:22](#); [10:27](#); [10:31](#); [14:10](#); [15:19](#); [18:31](#); [Notes](#); [19:4](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [23:3](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

Examples From the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

And it happened that in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

Now in those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**.
This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**.
This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as "another time," or "someone."

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:1](#); [14:5](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They

emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

(2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-litotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [1:16](#); [5:12](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

"I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God,
"the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:8](#); [23:2](#); [25:26](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.”
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad.** (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick.**

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay.** You are our **potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood.** You are our **carver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string.** You are the **weaver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:13; 1:14; 2:15; 2:21; 3:2; 3:14; 3:18; 5:10; 5:16; 7:2; 7:9; 7:17; 7:19; 8:9; 8:13; 8:18; 8:27; 9:31; 10:5; 10:10; 10:29; 10:30; 10:35; 12:2; 12:18; Notes; 13:2; 13:3; 13:6; 13:11; 13:23; 14:3; 14:9; 14:24; 14:26; 14:27; 15:3; 15:4; 15:5; 15:7; 15:9; 15:14; 15:18; 15:19; 15:22; 15:24; 15:25; 15:28; 15:29; 15:30; 15:34; 15:35; 15:38; 16:2; 16:3; 16:7; 16:9; 16:20; 17:2; 17:8; 17:17; 17:20; 17:21; 17:23; 17:40; 18:3; 18:6; 18:21; 18:31; 18:32; 19:3; 19:4; 19:21; 19:26; 19:28; 19:30; 20:3; 21:2; 21:6; 21:13; 21:16; 21:20; 21:21; 22:2; 22:13; 22:16; 22:17; 22:19; 22:20; 23:3; 23:26; 23:32; 23:37; 24:9; 24:19)

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:9; 2:15; 3:10; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:21; 4:15; 4:24; 4:40; 4:44; 5:1; 5:11; 6:13; 6:17; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:30; 7:9; 7:16; 8:6; 8:12; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:22; 8:27; 9:7; 9:9; 10:1; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:11; 10:15; 10:24; 10:30; 10:31; 11:3; 13:3; 13:5; 13:12; 13:13; 14:11; 14:25; 14:27; 15:9; 15:12; 15:18; 15:19; 15:24; 15:35; 16:3; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 17:6; 17:7; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:36; 18:12; 18:26; 18:29; 18:30; 18:34; 18:35; 19:7; 19:10; 19:22; 19:28; 19:32; 20:1; 20:4; 20:6; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:9; 21:13; 21:16; 22:2; 22:11; 22:17; 22:18; 22:19; 22:20; 23:3; 23:4; 23:5; 23:6; 23:7; 23:8; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:14; 23:22; 23:27; 23:33; 24:3; 24:4; 24:14; 25:1; 25:21; 25:28; 25:29](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9; 1:11; 1:13; 2:7; 2:16; 2:24; 3:4; 3:26; 4:42; 4:43; 5:5; 6:25; 8:9; 8:17; 8:26; 10:1; 10:6; 10:7; 10:14; 10:36; 11:4; 11:9; 11:15; 11:19; 11:21; 12:1; 13:1; 13:10; 14:2; 14:7; 14:13; 14:23; 15:1; 15:8; 15:13; 15:17; 15:19; 15:23; 15:25; 15:27; 15:30; 15:32; 15:33; 16:1; 19:35; 20:6; 22:1; 23:31; 24:16; 24:18](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [3:1](#); [8:16](#); [8:25](#); [9:19](#); [9:29](#); [10:6](#); [10:30](#); [22:3](#); [22:14](#); [25:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:25](#); [25:27](#))

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. “Sees” corresponds to “watches,” “everything...does” corresponds to “all the paths...takes,” and “a person” corresponds to “he.”

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words ‘Praise’ and ‘exalt’ mean the same thing. The words ‘Yahweh’ and ‘him’ refer to the same person. The terms ‘all you nations’ and ‘all you peoples’ refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely,” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet
(Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:14](#); [19:16](#); [19:21](#); [19:32](#); [20:5](#); [20:15](#); [22:20](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:9; 19:21](#))

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “**of**,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
 - The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
 - The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
 - A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
 - The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
 - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
 - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
 - my head — the head that is part of my body
 - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

▮ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.

or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

■ ■ You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you.**

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:12](#); [2:11](#); [3:2](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1 General Notes](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:16](#); [1:18](#); [2:18](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [4:28](#); [4:43](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [5:26](#); [6:11](#); [6:22](#); [6:27](#); [6:32](#); [6:33](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:19](#); [8:13](#); [8:23](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [9:31](#); [10:4](#); [10:9](#); [10:34](#); [12:7](#); [12:19](#); [13:8](#); [13:12](#); [14:10](#); [14:15](#); [14:18](#); [14:28](#); [15:6](#); [15:21](#); [15:36](#); [16:19](#); [18:19](#); [18:20](#); [18:22](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:27](#); [18:33](#); [18:34](#); [18:35](#); [19:11](#); [19:12](#); [19:22](#); [19:25](#); [20:19](#); [20:20](#); [21:17](#); [21:25](#); [23:28](#); [24:5](#))

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [3:2](#); [3:14](#); [3:22](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [5:20](#); [5:27](#); [9:37](#); [13:7](#); [Notes](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [4:37](#); [5:7](#); [6:30](#); [10:15](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [22:11](#); [22:19](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: 2 Kings 3:6; 3:7; 3:9; 3:10; 3:21; 3:23; 3:24; 4:20; 5:2; 5:20; 6:22; 6:24; 7:2; 7:6; 7:19; 8:8; 8:12; 8:28; 8:29; 9:1; 9:8; 9:13; 9:14; 9:15; 10:3; 10:25; 10:32; 12:11; 12:17; 13:25; 14:6; 14:7; 14:8; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:22; 14:27; 15:19; 15:29; 16:5; 16:7; 16:9; 19:23; 20:17; 21:8; 21:14; 22:5; 22:9; 22:13; 22:16; 22:20; 25:7)



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 32

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, [false god](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:3](#); [21:2](#); [21:11](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [Chaldea](#), Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [2 Kings 13:23](#))

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [descendant](#), Eve, image of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:10](#); [19:18](#); [23:14](#); [23:20](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:39](#); [21:14](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:8](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one’s soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:26](#); [21:11](#))

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Baal, [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), kingdom of Israel, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:6
- 2 Kings 9:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:3 Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0256

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:1](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [8:16](#); [8:18](#); [8:25](#); [8:27](#); [8:28](#); [8:29](#); [9:7](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [9:25](#); [9:29](#); [10:1](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [10:30](#); [21:3](#); [21:13](#))

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:1
- 2 Kings 16:20
- Hosea 1:1
- Isaiah 1:1
- Isaiah 7:4
- Matthew 1:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0271

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:38](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:19](#); [16:20](#); [17:1](#); [18:1](#); [20:11](#); [23:12](#))

Ahaziah

Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), Joash)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:39-40
- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Kings 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0274

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:18](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [8:29](#); [9:16](#); [9:21](#); [9:23](#); [9:27](#); [9:29](#); [10:13](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [12:18](#); [13:1](#); [14:13](#))

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), Shiloh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 21:21-22
- 1 Samuel 14:19
- 2 Chronicles 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0281

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:9](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:11](#); [11:18](#); [12:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#); [18:22](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [23:9](#); [23:12](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:20](#))

Amaziah

Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

- King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
- He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
- Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
- He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
- He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
- Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joash, Edom)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Chronicles 4:34
- 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
- 2 Kings 14:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0558

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:21](#); [13:12](#); [14:1](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:17](#); [14:18](#); [14:21](#); [14:23](#); [15:1](#); [15:3](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:11](#))

Amoz

Facts:

Amoz was the father of the prophet Isaiah.

- The only times he is mentioned in the Bible are when Isaiah is identified as the “son of Amoz.”
- This name is different from the name of the prophet Amos and should be spelled differently.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Amos, [Isaiah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:2
- Isaiah 37:1-2
- Isaiah 37:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0531

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:2](#); [19:20](#); [20:1](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: 2 Kings 2:12; 3:2; 3:13; 4:18; 4:19; 5:13; 6:21; 8:24; 9:25; 9:28; 10:3; 10:35; 12:18; 12:21; 13:9; 13:13; 13:14; 13:25; 14:3; 14:5; 14:6; 14:16; 14:20; 14:21; 14:22; 14:29; 15:3; 15:7; 15:9; 15:22; 15:34; 15:38; 16:2; 16:20; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:41; 18:3; 19:12; 20:5; 20:17; 20:21; 21:3; 21:8; 21:15; 21:18; 21:20; 21:21; 21:22; 22:2; 22:13; 22:20; 23:30; 23:32; 23:34; 23:37; 24:6; 24:9)

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:7](#); [2:20](#); [3:6](#); [3:14](#); [4:10](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [4:34](#); [5:16](#); [5:24](#); [6:31](#); [8:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:17](#); [9:30](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:7](#); [10:27](#); [11:14](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [12:17](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:16](#); [15:20](#); [18:14](#); [19:28](#); [20:7](#); [21:7](#); [25:22](#))

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: desert, Sea of Reeds, [Jordan River](#), Canaan, Salt Sea, [Egypt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 2:29
- Jeremiah 2:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1026, H6160

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:25](#); [25:4](#))

Ararat

Facts:

In the Bible, “Ararat” is the name given to a land, a kingdom, and a mountain range.

- The “land of Ararat” was probably located in what is now the northeastern part of the country of Turkey.
- Ararat is best known as the name of the mountain that Noah’s ark came to rest on after the waters of the great flood began to recede.
- In modern times, a mountain called “Mount Ararat” is often thought to be the location of the “mountains of Ararat” in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:35-37
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Isaiah 37:38
- Jeremiah 51:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0780

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:37](#))

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), atonement, holy place, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:9](#); [12:10](#))

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), harp, lute, [prophet](#), psalm, [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 2:8
- Psalm 50:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0623

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:18](#); [18:37](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:3](#); [10:20](#); [22:4](#); [22:20](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:19; 15:20; 15:29; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:18; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:23; 17:24; 17:26; 17:27; 18:7; 18:9; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:16; 18:17; 18:19; 18:23; 18:28; 18:30; 18:31; 18:33; 19:4; 19:6; 19:8; 19:10; 19:11; 19:17; 19:20; 19:32; 19:35; 19:36; 20:6; 23:29](#))

Athaliah

Facts:

Athaliah was the evil wife of Jehoram king of Judah. She was the granddaughter of the evil King Omri of Israel.

- Athaliah's son Ahaziah became king after Jehoram died.
- When her son Ahaziah died, Athaliah made a plan to kill all the rest of the king's family.
- But Athaliah's young grandson Joash was hidden by his aunt and saved from being killed. After Athaliah had ruled the land for six years, she was killed and Joash became king.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), Jehoram, Joash, [Omri](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:2
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Kings 11:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6271

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 8:26](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:13](#); [11:14](#); [11:20](#))

Baasha

Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asa, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:17
- 2 Kings 9:9
- Jeremiah 41:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1201

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:9](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:24](#); [17:30](#); [20:12](#); [20:14](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [24:1](#); [24:7](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [24:12](#); [24:15](#); [24:16](#); [24:17](#); [24:20](#); [25:1](#); [25:6](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#); [25:11](#); [25:13](#); [25:20](#); [25:21](#); [25:22](#); [25:23](#); [25:24](#); [25:27](#))

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G29150, G29160

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:42](#); [7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#))

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:13
- Amos 4:1
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 9:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:33](#))

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abimelech, [Abraham](#), Hagar, Ishmael, [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 3:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- Nehemiah 11:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0884

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:1](#); [23:8](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), Canaan, [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), Levite, [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:9
- 1 Samuel 6:9
- Joshua 19:20-22
- Judges 1:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:11](#); [14:13](#))

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:23](#); [10:29](#); [17:28](#); [23:4](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), prison, [servant](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:8](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:29](#); [5:15](#); [10:15](#); [18:31](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:23](#); [9:7](#); [9:26](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [21:16](#); [24:4](#))

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 7:23
- Psalm 51:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G18130

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:13](#))

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [4:37](#); [5:21](#); [7:4](#); [14:10](#); [19:7](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), tabernacle, [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:8](#); [4:42](#); [6:22](#); [18:32](#); [25:3](#); [25:29](#))

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the **man** who will marry the bride (the **woman**).

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:15-16
- John 3:30
- Luke 5:35
- Mark 2:19
- Mark 2:20
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G35660

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:27](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:14](#); [16:15](#); [16:17](#); [18:4](#); [25:13](#); [25:14](#); [25:17](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:6](#); [9:2](#); [10:13](#); [23:9](#))

burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:17](#); [8:9](#); [14:10](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:27](#); [5:17](#); [10:24](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:10](#); [13:21](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:10](#); [3:13](#); [4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:36](#); [8:1](#); [9:1](#); [10:19](#); [22:16](#); [23:16](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:21
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 3:4
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:9](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylon for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:22](#))

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0730

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:23](#))

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:2](#); [25:5](#); [25:10](#); [25:13](#); [25:26](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#); [23:11](#))

cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:15](#))

chief, leader

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [head](#), chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:5](#); [11:10](#); [24:14](#); [25:18](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:18](#); [4:34](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:10](#))

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [false god](#), image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:14](#); [23:3](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [25:17](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3; 2:21; 2:24; 3:6; 4:18; 4:21; 4:37; 4:39; 5:27; 6:15; 7:12; 7:16; 7:17; 8:3; 9:21; 9:24; 9:34; 10:9; 10:19; 10:22; 10:26; 11:5; 11:9; 11:12; 11:15; 12:11; 13:5; 14:6; 15:20; 16:15; 16:16; 17:13; 17:15; 17:16; 17:19; 17:27; 17:34; 17:35; 18:6; 18:12; 18:18; 18:31; 18:36; 19:27; 19:35; 20:1; 21:8; 22:12; 23:3; 23:4; 23:6; 23:21; 24:12; 24:13; 25:23](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:15; 23:3](#))

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:20](#); [12:18](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Kings 13:17](#); [13:19](#))

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:26](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, [king](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [2 Kings 20:4](#); [21:5](#); [23:12](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:4](#); [11:17](#); [13:23](#); [17:15](#); [17:35](#); [18:12](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:21](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:17](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead, [pray](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [4:1](#); [4:40](#); [6:26](#); [8:5](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:24](#); [3:18](#))

cut off, cut down

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:8](#); [11:4](#); [11:17](#); [17:15](#); [17:35](#); [17:38](#); [18:4](#); [19:23](#); [23:3](#); [23:14](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:19](#); [8:24](#); [9:28](#); [11:10](#); [12:21](#); [14:20](#); [15:7](#); [15:38](#); [16:20](#); [17:21](#); [18:3](#); [19:34](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [21:7](#); [22:2](#))

deceive, lie, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:29; 19:10](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:22](#); [4:36](#); [5:11](#); [6:11](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [10:20](#); [11:14](#); [12:7](#); [14:7](#); [18:4](#); [18:18](#); [18:28](#); [19:14](#); [20:11](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [23:2](#); [23:17](#))

deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:26](#); [6:27](#); [13:5](#); [14:27](#); [16:7](#); [19:19](#); [19:30](#))

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:25](#))

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, [Egypt](#), firstborn, [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:8](#); [11:1](#); [19:18](#); [24:2](#))

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: [consume](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [4:41](#); [4:42](#); [4:43](#); [4:44](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:28](#); [6:29](#); [7:2](#); [7:8](#); [7:19](#); [9:10](#); [9:34](#); [9:36](#); [18:31](#); [19:29](#); [23:9](#); [25:29](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), faith, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [4:20](#); [5:7](#); [7:4](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [8:15](#); [9:27](#); [9:31](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [12:21](#); [13:20](#); [13:24](#); [14:19](#); [15:10](#); [15:14](#); [15:25](#); [15:30](#); [17:25](#); [20:1](#); [21:23](#); [23:29](#); [23:34](#); [25:21](#); [25:25](#))

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#); [7:7](#))

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 7:16-18
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:15](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#); [3:20](#); [4:37](#); [5:15](#); [5:19](#); [8:1](#); [8:6](#); [10:10](#); [10:33](#); [11:3](#); [11:14](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [13:18](#); [15:5](#); [15:19](#); [15:29](#); [16:15](#); [17:5](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [18:25](#); [18:32](#); [18:33](#); [18:35](#); [19:11](#); [19:15](#); [19:17](#); [19:19](#); [19:37](#); [21:24](#); [23:30](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [24:14](#); [24:15](#); [25:3](#); [25:12](#); [25:19](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:6](#); [17:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:36](#); [18:21](#); [18:24](#); [21:15](#); [23:29](#); [23:34](#); [24:7](#); [25:26](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:32](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [19:2](#); [23:1](#))

Eliakim

Facts:

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
- Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
- Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hezekiah, [Jehoiakim](#), [Josiah](#), Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18
- 2 Kings 18:26
- 2 Kings 18:37
- 2 Kings 23:34-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0471, G16620

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:18](#); [18:26](#); [18:37](#); [19:2](#); [23:34](#))

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:3-4
- James 5:16-18
- John 1:19-21
- John 1:24-25
- Mark 9:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:2 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:3** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:4** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:7** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:3** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0452, G22430

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [3:11](#); [9:36](#); [10:10](#); [10:17](#))

Elisha

Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Naaman](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:15-16
- 2 Kings 3:15
- 2 Kings 5:8
- Luke 4:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0477

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:9](#); [2:12](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:8](#); [4:17](#); [4:32](#); [4:38](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [5:20](#); [5:25](#); [6:1](#); [6:12](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [7:1](#); [8:1](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:7](#); [8:10](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [9:1](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joseph, Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:22](#); [14:13](#))

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cush, [Egypt](#), eunuch, Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:27
- Acts 8:30
- Acts 8:32-33
- Acts 8:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 3:9
- Zephaniah 3:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: G01280

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:9](#))

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:29](#); [24:7](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:19](#); [3:2](#); [4:41](#); [6:33](#); [Notes](#); [8:12](#); [8:18](#); [8:27](#); [13:2](#); [13:11](#); [14:10](#); [14:24](#); [Notes](#); [15:9](#); [15:18](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [Notes](#); [17:2](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [17:17](#); [Notes](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:12](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:20](#); [22:16](#); [22:20](#); [23:32](#); [23:37](#); [24:9](#); [24:19](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Israel](#), lamb, [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:4](#); [24:15](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), glory, boast, [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:13](#))

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 2:25-26
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G39270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:11](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [17:28](#); [17:33](#); [25:11](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:14](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [5:1](#); [8:11](#); [8:15](#); [9:32](#); [9:37](#); [12:17](#); [13:4](#); [13:14](#); [13:23](#); [14:8](#); [14:11](#); [16:14](#); [17:18](#); [17:23](#); [18:24](#); [20:2](#); [21:13](#); [23:13](#); [23:27](#); [24:3](#); [24:20](#); [25:19](#))

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:14](#); [Notes](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#))

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:18](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:15](#); [4:1](#); [6:16](#); [10:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:25](#); [17:28](#); [17:32](#); [17:33](#); [17:34](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#); [17:37](#); [17:38](#); [17:39](#); [17:41](#); [19:6](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:16](#); [4:17](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:31](#); [20:7](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [2:11](#); [6:17](#); [8:12](#); [16:3](#); [17:17](#); [17:31](#); [19:18](#); [21:6](#); [23:10](#); [23:11](#); [25:9](#))

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:42](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:34](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#); [6:30](#); [9:36](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [4:30](#); [8:6](#); [14:26](#); [22:17](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), grape, Holy Spirit, [vine](#), womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:29](#); [19:30](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, minister, [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10 General Notes](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:1](#); [7:3](#); [7:11](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:20](#); [9:31](#); [10:8](#); [11:6](#); [11:19](#); [14:13](#); [15:35](#); [18:16](#); [23:8](#); [25:4](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:33](#); [15:29](#))

Gilgal

Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Elisha](#), [Jericho](#), [Jordan River](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 7:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:1-2
- Hosea 4:15
- Judges 2:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:1](#); [4:38](#))

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:21](#); [4:29](#); [7:10](#); [9:1](#); [9:21](#))

glean, gleanings

Definition:

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, [grain](#), [harvest](#), Ruth)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:6
- Ruth 2:2
- Ruth 2:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:39](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:2; 1:3; 1:6; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:16; 2:14; 4:7; 4:9; 4:16; 4:21; 4:22; 4:25; 4:27; 4:40; 4:42; 5:8; 5:11; 5:14; 5:15; 5:17; 5:20; 6:6; 6:9; 6:10; 6:15; 6:31; 7:2; 7:17; 7:18; 7:19; 8:2; 8:4; 8:7; 8:8; 8:11; 9:6; 10:31; 13:19; 14:25; 16:2; 17:7; 17:9; 17:14; 17:16; 17:19; 17:26; 17:27; 17:29; 17:31; 17:33; 17:35; 17:37; 17:38; 17:39; 18:5; 18:12; 18:22; 18:33; 18:34; 18:35; 19:4; 19:10; 19:12; 19:15; 19:16; 19:18; 19:19; 19:20; 19:37; 20:5; 21:12; 21:22; 22:15; 22:17; 22:18; 23:16; 23:17; 23:21)

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [7:8](#); [10:29](#); [12:13](#); [12:18](#); [14:14](#); [16:8](#); [18:14](#); [20:13](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [24:13](#); [25:15](#))

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:19](#); [3:19](#); [3:25](#); [5:12](#); [8:9](#); [10:3](#); [10:5](#); [20:13](#); [20:19](#); [25:28](#))

govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, [king](#), power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:24](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:20](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [20:12](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:32](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [2 Kings 22:20](#); [23:6](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, right hand, honor, [bless](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: 2 Kings 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 3:15; 3:18; 4:29; 4:34; 5:5; 5:11; 5:18; 5:20; 5:24; 6:7; 7:2; 7:17; 8:8; 8:9; 8:20; 8:22; 9:1; 9:7; 9:23; 9:24; 9:36; 10:10; 10:15; 10:24; 11:8; 11:11; 11:12; 11:16; 12:11; 12:15; 13:3; 13:5; 13:16; 13:25; 14:5; 14:25; 14:27; 15:19; 16:7; 17:7; 17:13; 17:20; 17:23; 17:39; 18:29; 18:30; 18:33; 18:34; 18:35; 19:10; 19:14; 19:18; 19:19; 19:23; 19:26; 21:10; 21:14; 22:5; 22:7; 22:9; 22:17; 24:2)

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:18](#))

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9](#); [2:3](#); [2:5](#); [4:19](#); [6:25](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:30](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [19:21](#); [25:27](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#); [6:11](#); [9:24](#); [10:15](#); [10:31](#); [12:4](#); [14:10](#); [22:19](#); [23:3](#); [23:25](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [2:1](#); [2:11](#); [Notes](#); [7:2](#); [7:19](#); [14:27](#); [17:16](#); [19:15](#); [21:3](#); [21:5](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#))

Hebrew

Facts:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:26](#); [18:28](#))

Hilkiah

Facts:

Hilkiah was the high priest during the reign of King Josiah.

- When the temple was being repaired, Hilkiah the high priest found the Book of the Law and ordered that it be brought to King Josiah.
- After the Book of the Law was read to him, Josiah was grieved and caused the people of Judah to worship Yahweh again and obey his laws.
- Another man named Hilkiah was the son of Eliakim and worked in the palace during the time of King Hezekiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Eliakim](#), Hezekiah, high priest, [Josiah](#), Judah, law, [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2518

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:18](#); [18:26](#); [18:37](#); [22:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:14](#); [23:4](#); [23:24](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, foreigner, Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:6](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:9](#); [12:4](#); [12:18](#); [19:22](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:32](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: [chariot](#), [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:11](#); [5:9](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:17](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:10](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [9:16](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:28](#); [9:33](#); [10:2](#); [10:16](#); [11:16](#); [13:16](#); [14:20](#); [18:23](#); [23:11](#); [23:30](#))

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G24600

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [13:14](#))

Hoshea

Facts:

Hoshea was the name of a king of Israel and several other men in the Old Testament.

- Hoshea son of Alah was a king of Israel for nine years during part of the reigns of Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.
- Joshua son of Nun was formerly named Hoshea. Moses changed Hoshea's name to Joshua before sending him and eleven other men to spy out the land of the Canaanites.
- After Moses died, Joshua led the people of Israel to take possession of the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Hoshea was a son of Azariah and was one of the leaders of the Ephraimites.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Canaan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Joshua](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:20
- 2 Kings 15:30
- 2 Kings 17:3
- 2 Kings 18:1
- 2 Kings 18:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:30](#); [17:1](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:6](#); [18:1](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#))

house, household

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [descendant](#), house of God, tabernacle, [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:32; 5:9; 5:18; 6:30; 7:9; 7:11; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:5; 8:18; 8:27; 9:6; 9:7; 9:8; 9:9; 9:27; 10:3; 10:5; 10:10; 10:11; 10:21; 10:23; 10:25; 10:26; 10:27; 10:30; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:11; 11:13; 11:15; 11:16; 11:18; 11:19; 11:20; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:8; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 12:16; 12:18; 12:20; 13:6; 14:14; 15:5; 15:25; 15:35; 16:8; 16:14; 16:18; 17:4; 17:21; 18:15; 18:18; 18:37; 19:1; 19:2; 19:14; 19:30; 19:37; 20:1; 20:5; 20:8;](#)

20:13; 21:5; 21:13; 21:18; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:9; 23:2; 23:6; 23:7; 23:11; 23:12; 23:19; 23:24; 23:27; 24:13; 25:9;
25:13; 25:16; 25:27)

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:24](#); [21:14](#))

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:9](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:16](#); [24:4](#))

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), Christ, Hezekiah, [Jotham](#), Judah, [prophet](#), Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 1:1
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 1:1
- Mark 7:6
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 4:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:2** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:8** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G22680

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:2](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [19:20](#); [20:1](#); [20:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [20:9](#); [20:11](#); [20:14](#); [20:16](#); [20:19](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: Introduction to 2 Kings; 2 Kings 1:1; 1:3; 1:6; 1:16; 1:18; 2:12; 3:1; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:24; 3:27; 5:2; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:12; 5:15; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:21; 6:23; 6:26; 7:6; 7:13; 8:12; 8:16; 8:18; 8:25; 8:26; 9:3; 9:6; 9:8; 9:12; 9:14; 9:21; 10:21; 10:28; 10:29; 10:30; 10:31; 10:32; 10:34; 10:36; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:8; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:16; 13:18; 13:22; 13:25; 14:1; 14:8; 14:9; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:15; 14:16; 14:17; 14:23; 14:24; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 14:28; 14:29; 15:1; 15:8; 15:9; 15:11; 15:12; 15:15; 15:17; 15:18; 15:20; 15:21; 15:23; 15:24; 15:26; 15:27; 15:28; 15:29; 15:31; 15:32; 16:3; 16:5; 16:7; 17:1; 17:2; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:13; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:21; 17:22; 17:23; 17:24; 17:34; 18:1; 18:4; 18:5; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 19:15; 19:20; 19:22; 21:2; 21:3; 21:7; 21:8; 21:9; 21:12; 22:15; 22:18; 23:13; 23:15; 23:19; 23:22; 23:27; 24:13)

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [2 Kings 13:23](#); [17:34](#))

Jehoiada

Facts:

Jehoiada was a priest who helped hide and protect King Ahaziah's son Joash until he was old enough to be declared king.

- Jehoiada arranged for hundreds of bodyguards to protect young Joash as he was proclaimed king by the people in the temple.
- Jehoiada led the people in getting rid of all the altars of the false god Baal.
- For the rest of his life, Jehoiada the priest advised King Joash to help him obey God and rule the people wisely.
- Another man named Jehoiada was the father of Benaiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), Baal, Benaiah, Joash)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 11:4
- 2 Kings 12:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3077

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:4](#); [11:9](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [12:2](#); [12:7](#); [12:9](#))

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- 2 Kings 23:34-35
- 2 Kings 24:1
- Daniel 1:2
- Jeremiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3079

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:34](#); [23:35](#); [23:36](#); [24:1](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [24:19](#))

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:10-12
- 1 Kings 4:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:17
- 2 Samuel 8:15-18
- Matthew 1:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G24980

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [3:1](#); [3:7](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [8:16](#); [9:2](#); [9:14](#); [12:18](#))

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:35
- 1 Kings 16:2
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 10:9
- Hosea 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3058

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [9:22](#); [9:24](#); [9:27](#); [9:30](#); [9:31](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [10:11](#); [10:13](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [10:20](#); [10:21](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [10:28](#); [10:29](#); [10:30](#); [10:31](#); [10:34](#); [10:35](#); [10:36](#); [12:1](#); [13:1](#); [14:8](#); [15:12](#))

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a “fountain of tears,” to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah, [prophet](#), [rebel](#), suffer, well)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 1:2
- Jeremiah 11:1
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:5** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G24080

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:31](#); [24:18](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:15](#); [2:18](#); [25:5](#))

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Kings 3:1-3
- Amos 1:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:9 Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:3](#); [9:9](#); [10:29](#); [10:31](#); [13:2](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [13:13](#); [14:16](#); [14:23](#); [14:24](#); [14:27](#); [14:28](#); [14:29](#); [15:1](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:18](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [23:15](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), Christ, [David](#), Jebusites, Jesus, [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: 2 Kings 8:17; 8:26; 9:28; 12:1; 12:17; 12:18; 14:2; 14:13; 14:19; 14:20; 15:2; 15:33; 16:2; 16:5; 18:2; 18:17; 18:22; 18:35; 19:10; 19:21; 19:31; 21:1; 21:4; 21:7; 21:12; 21:13; 21:16; 21:19; 22:1; 22:14; 23:1; 23:2; 23:4; 23:5; 23:6; 23:9; 23:13; 23:20; 23:23; 23:24; 23:27; 23:30; 23:31; 23:33; 23:36; 24:4; 24:8; 24:10; 24:14; 24:15; 24:18; 24:20; 25:1; 25:8; 25:9; 25:10)

Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:6](#); [25:25](#))

Jezebel

Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 9:7
- 2 Kings 9:31
- Revelation 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0348, G24030

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:7](#); [9:10](#); [9:22](#); [9:30](#); [9:36](#); [9:37](#))

Jonah

Definition:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

- The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
- Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
- God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
- Jonah told the men sailing the ship that he was running away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did that, the storm stopped and the sailors offered a sacrifice to Yahweh.
- Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
- After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and the people stopped acting so violently toward others.
- Jonah became angry at God for not destroying Nineveh, and God used a plant and a worm to teach Jonah a lesson about compassion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: disobey, Nineveh, turn)

Bible References:

- Jonah 1:3
- Luke 11:30
- Matthew 12:39
- Matthew 16:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3124, G24950

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:25](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:13](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [7:15](#); [10:33](#))

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), Promised Land, [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:8](#))

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:3
- Jeremiah 1:3
- Matthew 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G25020

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:24](#); [21:26](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [23:16](#); [23:19](#); [23:23](#); [23:24](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [23:30](#); [23:34](#))

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, [Ahaz](#), Gideon, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:5
- Isaiah 1:1
- Judges 9:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:5](#); [15:7](#); [15:30](#); [15:32](#); [15:36](#); [15:38](#); [16:1](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:14](#); [11:20](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), [Jew](#), [Judea](#), [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:22](#); [14:28](#); [15:37](#); [18:22](#); [21:12](#); [23:17](#); [23:26](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#))

Judea, Judah

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17; 3:1; 3:7; 3:9; 3:14; 8:16; 8:19; 8:20; 8:22; 8:23; 8:25; 8:29; 9:16; 9:21; 9:27; 9:29; 10:13; 12:18; 12:19; 13:1; 13:10; 13:12; 14:1; 14:9; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:15; 14:17; 14:18; 14:21; 14:23; 15:1; 15:6; 15:8; 15:13; 15:17; 15:23; 15:27; 15:32; 15:36; 16:1; 16:19; 17:1; 17:18; 17:19; 18:1; 18:5; 18:13; 18:14; 18:16; 19:10; 19:30; 20:20; 21:11; 21:16; 21:17; 21:25; 22:13; 22:16; 22:18; 23:1; 23:2; 23:5; 23:8; 23:11; 23:12; 23:22; 23:24; 23:27; 23:28; 24:5; 24:12; 25:21; 25:22; 25:27](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:7](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [Notes](#); [23:22](#); [25:6](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:15](#))

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [3:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:21](#); [3:23](#); [3:26](#); [4:13](#); [5:1](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:21](#); [6:24](#); [6:26](#); [6:28](#); [6:30](#); [7:2](#); [7:6](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [8:18](#); [8:20](#); [8:23](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [8:28](#); [8:29](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:21](#); [9:27](#); [9:34](#); [10:4](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:13](#); [10:34](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#);

11:12; 11:14; 11:16; 11:17; 11:19; 11:20; 12:6; 12:7; 12:10; 12:17; 12:18; 12:19; 13:1; 13:3; 13:4; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10;
13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:16; 13:18; 13:22; 13:24; 14:1; 14:5; 14:8; 14:9; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:16; 14:17; 14:18;
14:22; 14:23; 14:28; 14:29; 15:1; 15:5; 15:6; 15:8; 15:11; 15:13; 15:15; 15:17; 15:19; 15:20; 15:21; 15:23; 15:25; 15:26;
15:27; 15:29; 15:31; 15:32; 15:36; 15:37; 16:1; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:12; 16:15; 16:16;
16:17; 16:18; 16:19; 17:1; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:24; 17:26; 17:27; 18:1; 18:5; 18:7; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 18:13;
18:14; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:19; 18:21; 18:23; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 18:33; 18:36; 19:1; 19:4; 19:5; 19:6;
19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:13; 19:17; 19:20; 19:32; 19:36; 20:6; 20:12; 20:14; 20:18; 20:20; 21:3; 21:11; 21:17; 21:23;
21:24; 21:25; 22:3; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 22:12; 22:16; 22:18; 22:20; 23:1; 23:2; 23:3; 23:4; 23:5; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13;
23:19; 23:21; 23:22; 23:23; 23:25; 23:28; 23:29; 24:1; 24:5; 24:7; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:20;
25:1; 25:2; 25:4; 25:5; 25:6; 25:8; 25:9; 25:11; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:27; 25:28; 25:30)

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:15](#); [19:19](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, understand, [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:23](#); [4:1](#); [4:9](#); [4:39](#); [5:2](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:15](#); [7:12](#); [8:12](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:22](#); [10:25](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [11:15](#); [12:12](#); [17:26](#); [18:7](#); [19:9](#); [19:19](#); [19:27](#); [19:31](#); [20:4](#); [20:18](#); [21:15](#))

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:31](#); [14:6](#); [17:13](#); [17:34](#); [21:8](#); [Notes](#); [22:8](#); [22:11](#); [23:24](#); [23:25](#))

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Psalms 29:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:9](#); [19:23](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2; 1:13; 1:14; 2:2; 2:4; 2:6; 3:14; 4:7; 4:16; 4:17; 4:27; 4:30; 5:16; 5:20; 7:4; 7:7; 7:12; 8:1; 8:5; 8:10; 8:14; 9:15; 10:14; 10:19; 10:24; 11:12; 12:4; 13:21; 14:17; 18:32; 19:4; 19:16; 20:1; 20:7; 23:3; 23:25](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), Jesus, ruler, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:16](#); [2:19](#); [4:16](#); [4:28](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [5:18](#); [5:20](#); [5:22](#); [5:25](#); [6:5](#); [6:12](#); [6:15](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:26](#); [6:32](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [8:14](#); [9:7](#); [9:11](#); [9:31](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:6](#); [10:9](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:27](#); [19:4](#); [19:6](#); [19:23](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [5:10](#); [14:8](#); [16:7](#); [17:4](#); [19:9](#); [19:23](#); [19:35](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “mighty” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), power, [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:1](#); [15:20](#); [24:14](#); [24:16](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [Moab](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:23](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:7](#); [3:10](#); [3:13](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [3:26](#); [13:20](#); [23:13](#); [24:2](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:6](#); [18:4](#); [18:6](#); [18:12](#); [21:8](#); [23:25](#))

Naaman

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Jordan River](#), leprosy, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:6-7
- 2 Kings 5:1
- Luke 4:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:6** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G34970

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [5:11](#); [5:17](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [5:23](#); [5:27](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:24](#); [5:11](#); [14:7](#); [14:27](#); [17:34](#); [21:4](#); [21:7](#); [23:27](#); [23:34](#); [24:17](#))

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:29](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Canaan, Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:18](#); [16:3](#); [17:8](#); [17:15](#); [17:26](#); [17:29](#); [17:33](#); [17:41](#); [18:33](#); [19:12](#); [19:17](#); [21:2](#); [21:9](#))

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, [Babylon](#), Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 1:2
- Daniel 4:4
- Ezekiel 26:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:6** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:8** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:9** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:1](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [25:1](#); [25:8](#); [25:22](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:4](#); [25:24](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:32](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [5:26](#); [18:32](#); [20:13](#))

Omri

Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

- King Omri reigned for twelve years in the city of Tirzah.
- Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
- Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Israel](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Tirzah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6018

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:26](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:14](#); [17:33](#); [17:34](#); [17:37](#); [17:40](#))

oversee, overseer, keeper

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term “keeper” means “overseer.”

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:19](#))

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G39570

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:23](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:23](#); [4:26](#); [5:22](#); [9:19](#); [20:19](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:7](#); [4:41](#); [4:42](#); [4:43](#); [6:30](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [8:21](#); [9:6](#); [10:9](#); [10:18](#); [11:13](#); [11:14](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [12:3](#); [12:8](#); [13:7](#); [14:4](#); [14:21](#); [15:4](#); [15:5](#); [15:10](#); [15:35](#); [16:15](#); [18:26](#); [18:36](#); [20:5](#); [21:24](#); [22:4](#); [22:13](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:6](#); [23:21](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [24:14](#); [25:3](#); [25:11](#); [25:19](#); [25:22](#); [25:26](#))

perish

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [13:7](#); [21:3](#))

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:2](#); [8:3](#); [18:8](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:13](#); [4:33](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [19:4](#); [19:15](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [22:19](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:8](#); [2:14](#); [4:8](#); [8:21](#); [14:9](#); [17:17](#); [18:12](#); [21:6](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:15](#); [11:18](#); [12:2](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:16](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [17:27](#); [17:28](#); [17:32](#); [19:2](#); [Notes](#); [22:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:14](#); [23:2](#); [23:4](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:20](#); [23:24](#); [25:18](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [4:13](#); [5:1](#); [8:21](#); [9:5](#); [10:1](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:19](#); [23:8](#); [24:12](#); [25:19](#); [25:23](#); [25:26](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2 General Notes](#); [2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [Notes](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [4:1](#); [4:38](#); [5:3](#); [5:8](#); [5:13](#); [5:22](#); [6:1](#); [6:12](#); [Notes](#); [9:1](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [Notes](#); [10:19](#); [14:25](#); [17:13](#); [17:23](#); [19:2](#); [20:1](#); [20:11](#); [20:14](#); [21:10](#); [22:14](#); [23:18](#); [24:2](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:16](#); [5:1](#); [6:15](#); [7:6](#); [25:1](#); [25:5](#); [25:10](#))

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#); [4:37](#); [5:18](#); [17:16](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#); [18:22](#); [19:37](#); [21:3](#); [21:21](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:6](#))

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:20](#))

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#))

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Benjamin, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 2:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 2:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G44710

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:29](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, [governor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:26](#); [18:7](#); [18:20](#); [24:1](#); [24:20](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [3:1](#); [8:15](#); [8:20](#); [8:24](#); [10:35](#); [11:12](#); [12:21](#); [13:9](#); [13:24](#); [14:16](#); [14:21](#); [14:29](#); [15:7](#); [15:10](#); [15:13](#); [15:14](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:30](#); [15:38](#); [16:20](#); [17:21](#); [19:37](#); [20:21](#); [21:18](#); [21:24](#); [21:26](#); [23:30](#); [23:34](#); [24:6](#); [24:12](#); [24:17](#); [25:1](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:31](#); [21:14](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:5](#); [1:6](#); [2:25](#); [4:38](#); [8:6](#); [9:18](#); [9:20](#); [14:25](#); [14:28](#); [16:6](#); [17:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:24](#); [19:33](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#))

return, turn back

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:5; 1:11; 1:13; 2:13; 2:18; 3:4; 3:27; 4:22; 4:31; 4:35; 5:10; 5:14; 5:15; 7:8; 7:15; 8:3; 8:29; 9:15; 9:36; 13:25; 14:14; 14:22; 15:20; 17:3; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:28; 19:36; 20:11; 21:3; 22:9; 22:20; 23:20; 24:1)

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), obey, [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:9](#))

Rimmon

Facts:

Rimmon was the name of a man and of several places mentioned in the Bible. It was also the name of a false god.

- A man named Rimmon was a Benjamite from the city of Beeroth in Zebulun. This man's sons murdered Ishbosheth, the crippled son of Jonathan.
- Rimmon was a town in the southern part of Judah, in the region occupied by the tribe of Benjamin.
- The "rock of Rimmon" was a place of safety where the Benjamites went to escape from being killed in a battle.
- Rimmon Perez was an unknown location in the Judean wilderness.
- The Syrian commander Naaman spoke of the temple of the false god Rimmon, where the king of Syria worshiped.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Benjamin, [Judea](#), [Naaman](#), Syria, Zebulun)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 4:5-7
- Judges 20:45-46
- Judges 21:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7417

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:18](#))

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:22](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:23](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [16:18](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [ash](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [humble](#), [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

([Go back to: 2 Kings 19:1; 19:2](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [10:24](#); [12:3](#); [14:4](#); [15:4](#); [15:35](#); [16:15](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#))

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), Galilee, [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [2:25](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:24](#); [7:1](#); [7:18](#); [10:1](#); [10:12](#); [10:17](#); [14:14](#); [15:14](#); [17:5](#); [17:6](#); [17:24](#); [17:26](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#); [18:34](#); [21:13](#); [23:19](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:24](#); [19:37](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:10](#); [18:18](#); [18:37](#); [19:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [25:19](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), [descendant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:1](#); [17:20](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:16](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [6:19](#); [22:13](#); [22:18](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), works, obey, [house](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:13](#); [2:16](#); [2:23](#); [4:1](#); [4:12](#); [4:19](#); [4:22](#); [4:24](#); [4:25](#); [4:29](#); [4:30](#); [4:31](#); [4:32](#); [4:35](#); [4:38](#); [4:43](#); [5:2](#); [5:6](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [5:15](#); [5:17](#); [5:18](#); [5:20](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [6:3](#); [6:8](#); [6:11](#); [6:15](#); [6:17](#); [7:12](#); [8:4](#); [8:13](#); [8:19](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [9:11](#);

9:28; 9:36; 10:5; 10:10; 10:18; 10:19; 10:21; 10:22; 10:23; 12:20; 12:21; 14:5; 14:25; 16:7; 17:3; 17:13; 17:23; 17:33;
17:35; 17:41; 18:7; 18:12; 18:24; 18:26; 19:5; 19:6; 19:34; 20:6; 21:8; 21:10; 21:21; 21:23; 22:9; 22:12; 23:30; 24:1; 24:2;
24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 25:8; 25:14)

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, [false god](#), humble, [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:17](#); [8:11](#); [19:22](#); [19:23](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
 - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
 - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), apostle, Christ, [covenant](#), circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [2 Kings 20:8](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:26](#); [6:25](#); [7:8](#); [12:4](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [14:14](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [16:8](#); [18:14](#); [18:15](#); [20:13](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [25:15](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:3](#); [10:29](#); [10:31](#); [13:2](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [14:24](#); [15:9](#); [15:18](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [17:7](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [18:14](#); [Notes](#); [21:11](#); [21:16](#); [21:17](#); [Notes](#); [23:15](#); [Notes](#); [24:3](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:7](#); [10:14](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 1:7-8
- Matthew 6:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:3** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:4** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G46720

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:7](#); [23:13](#); [24:13](#); [25:16](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:17; 2:3; 2:5; 2:7; 2:15; 2:16; 3:1; 3:3; 3:11; 3:27; 4:1; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:7; 4:14; 4:16; 4:17; 4:28; 4:36; 4:37; 4:38; 5:22; 6:1; 6:28; 6:29; 6:31; 6:32; 8:1; 8:5; 8:9; 8:12; 8:16; 8:17; 8:19; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 8:28; 8:29; 9:1; 9:2; 9:9; 9:14; 9:20; 9:26; 9:29; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:13; 10:15; 10:23; 10:29; 10:30; 10:35; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:12; 11:21; 12:21; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:5; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:24; 13:25; 14:1; 14:2; 14:6; 14:8; 14:9; 14:13; 14:14; 14:16; 14:17; 14:21; 14:23; 14:24; 14:25; 14:27; 14:29; 15:1; 15:2; 15:5; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:17; 15:18; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:25; 15:27; 15:28; 15:30; 15:32; 15:33; 15:37; 15:38; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:7; 16:20; 17:1; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:17; 17:21; 17:22; 17:24; 17:31; 17:34; 17:41; 18:1; 18:2; 18:4; 18:9; 18:18; 18:26; 18:37; 19:2; 19:3; 19:12; 19:20; 19:37; 20:1; 20:12; 20:18; 20:21; 21:1; 21:2; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 21:18; 21:19; 21:24; 21:26; 22:1; 22:3; 22:12; 22:14; 23:6; 23:10; 23:13; 23:15; 23:30; 23:31; 23:34; 23:36; 24:2; 24:6; 24:8; 24:18; 25:7; 25:22; 25:23; 25:25)

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:9](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [3:17](#); [Notes](#); [19:7](#); [Notes](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:15](#); [17:37](#))

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), dedicate, [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Psalms 33:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0214, H0618, H0624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G05960

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:13](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:26](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [14:5](#); [17:36](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:26](#); [6:22](#); [8:12](#); [10:25](#); [11:15](#); [11:20](#); [19:7](#); [19:37](#))

temple, house, house of God

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), Holy Spirit, tabernacle, [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [4:35](#); [5:24](#); [6:32](#); [Notes](#); [11:4](#); [11:10](#); [Notes](#); [14:10](#); [15:5](#); [16:18](#); [17:29](#); [17:32](#); [18:16](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [21:4](#); [21:7](#); [21:23](#); [Notes](#); [22:5](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [23:2](#); [23:7](#); [25:13](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:29](#); [17:13](#); [17:15](#); [18:36](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:27](#))

threshold, doorway

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:17-19
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Isaiah 6:4
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:9](#); [22:4](#); [23:4](#); [25:18](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:3](#); [10:30](#); [11:19](#); [13:13](#); [15:12](#); [25:28](#))

Tirzah

Facts:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

- The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
- Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
- Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's granddaughters. They asked to be given a portion of the land since their father had died and he had no sons to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [inherit](#), kingdom of Israel, Manasseh, Shechem)

Bible References:

- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 36:11
- Song of Songs 6:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8656

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:14](#); [15:16](#))

tremble, stagger, shake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:27](#); [19:28](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:18](#); [21:7](#))

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:3](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), obey, [prophet](#), understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:17](#); [20:19](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:13](#); [11:14](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, faith, [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:9](#))

Uriah

Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), Bathsheba, [David](#), [Hittite](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:5
- 2 Samuel 11:3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 3:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0223, G37740

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:39](#); [18:31](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#); [18:32](#); [19:29](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, [Isaiah](#), Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:21](#))

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:12](#); [18:28](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:11](#); [2:16](#); [2:18](#); [3:13](#); [4:3](#); [4:7](#); [4:23](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [5:19](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:13](#); [6:19](#); [7:4](#); [7:9](#); [7:14](#); [8:10](#); [10:16](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [14:8](#); [17:27](#); [20:3](#); [20:9](#); [21:21](#); [21:22](#); [22:13](#); [24:15](#))

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:9](#); [9:14](#); [10:31](#); [12:9](#); [17:19](#); [17:37](#); [21:8](#); [22:4](#); [22:14](#); [23:4](#); [25:18](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:7](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:17](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:3; 1:4; 1:6; 1:15; 1:16; 1:17; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:14; 2:16; 2:21; 2:24; 3:2; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:17; 3:18; 4:1; 4:27; 4:30; 4:33; 4:43; 4:44; 5:1; 5:11; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18; 5:20; 6:17; 6:18; 6:20; 6:27; 6:33; 7:1; 7:2; 7:16; 7:19; 8:1; 8:8; 8:10; 8:13; 8:18; 8:19; 8:27; 9:3; 9:6; 9:7; 9:12; 9:25; 9:26; 9:36; 10:10; 10:16; 10:17; 10:23; 10:30; 10:31; 10:32; 11:3; 11:4; 11:7; 11:10; 11:13; 11:15; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 12:2; 12:4; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 12:16; 12:18; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:11; 13:17; 13:23; 14:3; 14:6; 14:14; 14:24; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 15:3; 15:5; 15:9; 15:12; 15:18; 15:24; 15:28; 15:34; 15:35; 15:37; 16:2; 16:3; 16:8; 16:14; 16:18; 17:2; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:11; 17:12; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:21; 17:23; 17:25; 17:28; 17:32; 17:33; 17:34; 17:35; 17:36; 17:39; 17:41; 18:3; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:22; 18:25; 18:30; 18:32; 18:35; 19:1; 19:4; 19:6; 19:14; 19:15; 19:16; 19:17; 19:19; 19:20; 19:21; 19:31; 19:32; 19:33; 19:35; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:5; 20:8; 20:9; 20:11; 20:16; 20:17; 20:19; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 21:10; 21:12; 21:16; 21:20; 21:22; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:8; 22:9; 22:13; 22:15; 22:16; 22:18; 22:19; 23:2; 23:3; 23:4; 23:6; 23:7; 23:9; 23:11; 23:12; 23:16; 23:21; 23:23; 23:24; 23:25; 23:26; 23:27; 23:32; 23:37; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:9; 24:13; 24:19; 24:20; 25:9; 25:13; 25:16)

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 1:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G45240

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:33](#))

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the tent of meeting during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Darius, Ezra, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jeroboam](#), Nehemiah, Zerubbabel)

Bible References:

- Ezra 5:1-2
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Zechariah 1:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2148

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:29](#); [15:8](#); [15:11](#); [18:2](#))

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), Ezekiel, kingdom of Israel, Jehoiachin, [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#), Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 3:15-16
- Jeremiah 37:1-2
- Jeremiah 39:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6667

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:17](#); [24:18](#); [24:20](#); [25:2](#); [25:7](#))

Zephaniah

Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

- He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
- There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:18
- Jeremiah 52:24-25
- Zechariah 6:9-11
- Zephaniah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6846

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:18](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:21](#); [19:31](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Kailey Gregory
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College
Leonard Smith
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
David Trombold, M. Div.
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)